THE
PREFACE.

The most ancient Historians, those especially that treat of the Original of any Nation, will always preserve their just value among the Curious, however simple and void of ornament their relations of matters may be. And though modern Writers may deliver the same accounts, with greater accuracy of judgment, and such politeness of style, as is more agreeable to the taste of their own times; yet in all matters of testimony, the original and most ancient Historians will constantly be esteemed and referred to as most authentick. The most ancient Writer now extant of the affairs of this nation is undoubtedly Cæsar, who wanted no qualifications that form a perfect Historian, and especially with respect to
to the Majesty, Politeness and Simplicity of his Stile, is not inferior to any Author whatsoever, whether ancient or modern. But as he only relates one particular Transaction in the Course of our Affairs, viz., His attempt to reduce this Island under the Roman Power, and says nothing of any Occurrences here before his own Time, nor of the Original of our People, unless from such uncertain Reports and Conjectures as are not to be depended on, we must look elsewhere for Satisfaction in these Particulars, which indeed most of all excite our Curiosity.

II. The ancientest Book now extant, that pretends to give any regular and continued Account of these Matters, is the History before us; which though writ at a Time when polite Learning did but very little flourish, is notwithstanding entertaining enough, both for the Manner of relating Things, and the Importance of the Matters treated of. And yet for Reasons which I shall hereafter consider, very few English Historians of the last Century, which are now most esteemed and read, have given any Account of the Matters related in it. It is true that from the Time this Book was first published, which is near six hundred Years ago, till about the Beginning of the last Century, all or most of our Writers, not excepting Polydore Virgil himself a great Adversary to this History, who have
have undertaken to trace our Affairs from the first peopling of this Island, have interwoven the Subject of this Book with what Collections they could make from other Authors, in Order to compleat their Histories. But these by Reason of their obsolete Stile, or too great Voluminousness, are now but little looked into by the Generality of Readers. And as for the last Century, no English Historian of any Note, (the Welsh I do not here consider,) has condescended to give any Account of these Affairs, especially of what happened before Caesar's Coming, excepting Milton, Tyrrel, and Sir Bulstrode Whitlock; and they too so very short, and with such Reflections upon the History itself, as rather serves to raise than satisfy ones Curiosity of knowing what it contains. But the Book is now grown so very scarce, that many who have a Desire to read it, cannot; besides that the Stile of the Latin Translation of it by Jeffrey of Monmouth, which is the only one yet published, is barbarous and in many Places obscure. So that excepting our Antiquaries, very few have any Knowledge of this Book; which yet for the most Part is a pleafant, and in many Places a true History of a very brave People, for about two thousand Years together, that is, during the whole Time they were able to maintain their Authority and Government in this Kingdom;
and so far it is properly a Part of the general History of England.

III. Upon these Considerations was the following Translation of it made some Years ago, to gratify some particular Friends at whose Request I first undertook it. In the composing of which I made use of two Editions of Jeffrey of Monmouth's Latin Translation; one of which was published in Quarto by Ascensius at Paris, A. D. 1517, and abounds with Abbreviations of Words which sometimes render their Reading ambiguous; the other in Folio by Commelise at Heidelberg, A. D. 1587, which is much the fairer and correcter Edition, and to which is annexed the Abridgment of the first six Books of this History by Ponticus Virunnius, together with Gildas, Bede, and some other of our ancient Historians. These two, which were printed from different Manuscripts, and are the only Editions that I can find have yet been made, I compared together, that I might better judge of the Errors of each, especially in the Orthography of Persons and Places. And in this Point I found a great Diversity both between the two Editions, and also the several ancient Abridgers of this History, viz. Alfred of Beverley, Radulphus de Diceto, Matthew of Westminster, Higden, Ponticus Virunnius, and others; but have

(a) See Rerum Britannicarum Scriptores vetustiores & recentiores.
have for the most Part followed Commelines 
Edition, and suppressed the Variations I at 
first noted between them, as thinking them 
not material. The first Edition divides the 
whole History into seven Books, the other 
into twelve, though perhaps neither of them 
truly according to the Original Copy, if 
(b) Leland, (c) Pitts and (d) Vossius inform us 
right. s. However judging this Nicety of no 
great Consequence, so long as the History is 
entire, I have followed Commelines Edition 
in the Division both of the Books and Chap-
ters; and that especially because I found it 
warranted by several ancient Manuscripts 
I have seen of this History in the Cottonian 
and other Libraries, and also by the Abridg-
ment of Ponticus Virunnius. Whereas the 
former Edition was (as Commeline observes) 
mangled and changed at the Editors Pleasure.

IV. Merlin's Prophecy, for the Nonsense 
and unintelligible Jargon it contains, should 
have been omitted, but that Jeffrey has so 
connected it with the History, that the 
Thread of the Story would not be entire 
without it. This Prophecy had sometimes 
a considerable Influence upon the Counsels 
of the ancient Britains; and we are told, 
(e) the final Subjection of the Principality of 
Wales to the Crown of England was partly 
owing
owing to it; since Lewellin the last Prince of Wales was, by the Conceit of a Passage in it, viz. that he should be Crowned with the Diadem of Bratus, encouraged to carry on a War against King Edward the first to his own Destruction. The Latin Translation of it by Jeffrey was published not only with this History, but also that of Matthew of Westminster. Alanus de Insulis, who was in his Time a very famous German Divine, dignified by the Schoolmen with the Title of Doctor universalis, published it also with a learned Commentary; (f) and indeed has given as much Light to it as so dark a Subject seems capable of. His Explication was at least of some Use to me in the Translating of it, since it served to Correct some Errors in the other Editions.

V. I am not unsensible that I expose myself to the Censures of some Persons, by publishing this Translation of a Book, which they think had better been suppressed and buried in Oblivion, as being at present generally exploded for a groundless and fabulous Story, such as our modern Historians think not worthy relating, or at least mention with Contempt. And though it is true, several Men, and those of Learning too, censured this Book who have but little considered it, and whose Studies no ways qualify

(f) In Octavo at Frankfort. A. D. 1693.
qualify them to judge of it; yet I own this Consideration has for a long Time deterred me from publishing it; and I should not at last have been able to surmount this Difficulty, without the Importance and Encouragement of others, to whom I owe a singular Regard. I had indeed before I entred upon the Work perused the principal Writers both for and against this History, the Effect of which upon my own Judgment, as to the Swaying it to the one Side more than the other, was but very small; and I must confess, that I find the most learned Antiquaries the most modest in their Opinions concerning it, and that it seems to me to be a Piece of great Rashness, to judge peremptorily upon a Matter, whereof at this great Distance of Time there are no competent Witnesses on either Side. At least I cannot but think it a sufficient Apology for my publishing this Book, to consider only, That though it seems to suffer under a general Prejudice at present, yet it has not long done so; but that upon its first appearing in the World, it met with an universal Approbation, and that too from those who had better Opportunities of examining the Truth of it, as there were then more Monuments extant, and the Traditions more fresh and uncorrupted concerning the ancient British Affairs, than any Criticks of the present Age can pretend.
pretend to; That it had no Adversary before William of Newburgh about the End of the Reign of Richard the First, whose virulent Invective against it, we are told, proceeded from a Revenge he thought he owed the Welsh for an Affront they had given him; That his Opposition was far from shaking the Credit of it with our succeeding Historians, who have most of them, till the Beginning of the last Century, confirmed it with their Testimonies, and copied after it, as often as they had Occasion to treat of the same Affairs; That its Authority was alleged by King Edward the First and all the Nobility of the Kingdom, in a Controversy of the greatest Importance, before Boniface the Eighth; That even in this Learned Age, that is so industrious to detect any Impostures, which through the Credulity of former Times had passed upon the World, the Arguments against this History are not thought so convincing, but that several Men of equal Reputation for Learning and Judgment with its Adversaries, have written in Favour of it; That very few have at last spoken decisively against it, or absolutely condemned it; And that it is still most frequently quoted by our most Learned Historians and Antiquaries. All these Considerations, I say, if they do not amount to an Apology for the History itself, shew at least that it deserves to be better known than
than at present it is; which is sufficient to justify my undertaking the publishing of it.

VI. I will venture to say farther, that we see in this History the Traces of venerable Antiquity, obscured indeed and perplexed with a Mixture of Fable, as are all the profane Histories of those ancient Times. But where we want sufficient Light to Distinguish Truth from Fiction, the Reverence due to one should make us bear with the other, and it can be no warrantable Zeal that would destroy both together. We see here what our Ancestors esteemed a great Glory to this Nation, that it can recount the Series of its Affairs from so high an Epoch; that it can boast such a long and uninterrupted Succession of Glorious Kings; that it produced Heroes in those early Times of Antiquity, whose great Actions intitle them to the highest Place in the List of Fame; and that it can derive its Original from a People as noble and famous as any in ancient Story. But some of our modern Criticks would allow it no share of this Glory; but endeavour to vilify and extinguish its most ancient Traditions and Records; make a blank Table in Chronology of all that passed here in that vast Tract of Time before the coming of Caesar; and instead of that Heroick Beginning which this History ascribes to the British Nation, are better contented
contented to have their own Conjectures pass concerning it; which yet are as opposite to one another, as they are destitute of any Solid Foundation in ancient History. So that they leave their Readers in Perplexity or an absolute Uncertainty about this Matter.

VII. For as to this particular Point concerning the Origin of the British Nation, which is the Thing in this History that is now most of all controverted, it is most certain that whatever Account has been given of it, different from what this History relates, has no other Grounds at best than probable Conjecture; and that will never weigh in the Balance against an Historical Account of it, where there is a greater Probability to support that History. And could we but, as Camden (g) himself also observes, be once satisfied that the History of Brutus were true, there would be no Occasion for any laborious Search into Antiquity after the Original of the British Nation. Now whatever new Light the present Age may boast of, it must be owned our Historians for several Ages together, before the Beginning of the last Century, thought themselves eased of the Trouble of this Enquiry, by acquiescing in, and as much as they were able corroborating this Account.

(g) Britannia published by Gibbon, p. VI.
count. Even William of Newburgh, the first and greatest Adversary of this History, makes no Objection on this Score. Giraldis Cambrensis, who was very learned in the British Antiquities, though upon other Accounts he calls this the fabulous History of Jeffrey, yet every where allows the Story of Brutus, and the Descent of the Britains from the Trojans. It was not opposed by any Body in England before (b) John of Wethamstede, an obscure Writer of the fifteenth Century; and as for any Reflections foreign Writers formerly made upon it, it cannot be sup posed their Knowledge of our Affairs should be equal to that of our own Antiquaries; and perhaps too some little Emulation with Respect to National Glory was the true Ground of their Censures. For indeed the famous Polydore Virgils contempt of it has been (i) shewn to proceed from his Vanity in extolling his Countrymen the Romans, whom he would by no means allow the Britains to rival either in Valour or Nobility of Descent. And as for Buchanans Ob jections, they only shew his Ignorance of the Story he undertakes to confute; though where it makes for the Glory of his own Nation, he can allow some Truth in some other Parts

PREFACE.

Parts of this History, which are notwithstanding by others equally doubted of.

VIII. Now we cannot reasonably object either Ignorance or Credulity to our own Historians and Antiquaries, of those Times, that assert this Story. Every one must readily acknowledge the great Industry, Learning and Judgment of Leland, as well as the singular Opportunities he had by the Encouragement of his Patron King Henry the Eighth, towards setting this and all other Parts of our History and Antiquities in a clear Light: Not to mention Humfrey Lhwyd, Sir John Price, Dr. Caius, Dr. Powel, and many other grave and learned Men, all strenuous Assertors of this Story. Since then its Credit had been for so many Ages and so well established, how comes it that our modern Antiquaries tire themselves in the Labyrinth of Antiquity, with tracing out the Original of the Britains, when they have here a copious, regular, Historical, and not a broken and conjectural Account of it? How comes it that a Story which in former Ages met with so general an Approbation, is now so much condemned and exploded?

IX. This Revolution in Opinion, one would expect, should be owing, not to a bare Suspicion of the Story, but such an evident Detection of its Falsity as is incontestable. And yet among the many modern Writers that express their Contempt of it,
one shall find but little said by them by Way of Argument to disprove it: And I have Reason to believe, not a few have run it down without Examination, as thinking themselves secure in following the Opinion that is most in Vogue. The most specious Reasons against it, that I can meet with, are offered by (k) Camden, and that with a Candour becoming so great a Man. For he declares for his own Part, that he is so far from labouring to discredit this History, that he assures us he has often strained his Invention to the utmost to support it; and that absolutely to reject it would be to make War against Time, and to fight against a received Opinion. And therefore the Arguments he proposes are not his own, but such as, he says, other Learned and Judicious Men attacked him with, to invalidate this Relation, when he offered to defend it. And at last he even Apologizes, for having laid before Us the Observations and Opinions of other Men towards impairing its Credit. Men of Camden or (l) Seldens Pitch of Learning, must be contented to deliver their Sentiments humbly and modestly concerning it; and it is only for the profounder Judgment of a Dutch (m) Antiquary to pronounce it peremptorily,

The PREFACE.

peremptorily, a great, heavy, long, thick, palpable, and most impudent lie, and that so manifest as to need no Proof; or for a great Statesman (n) to say, That it is a Tale forged at pleasure, by the Wit or Folly of its first Author, and not to be regarded.

X. At the same Time it must be owned, that as Camden has not given any Answers himself to the Objections he mentions against this History, but rather thought them of that Force, as to be Ground enough for him to propose a new (o) Conjecture of his own, concerning the Original of the British Nation, which indeed he has supported with great Learning, we are not to reckon him in the Number of its Advocates. On the contrary, it is more probable, that his speaking of it with such Indifference, has by Reason of the Deference paid to his great Learning and Judgment in these Affairs, been the chief Reason of its losing its former Credit, and of the present general Prejudice against it. And as this History was the great Obstruction in his Way, to the promoting his own Conjecture, we need not much doubt, but that, notwithstanding his Modesty, the Arguments against it were such as he approved of; and that he has presented in all its strength the Sum of what can be said to invalidate

The PREFACE. xv

invalidate this History. Now the Regard that is due to Truth and the Veneration paid to ancient History, may I hope serve for my Apology, if I take upon me to offer some Observations upon the principal Objections against this Story, especially those made Use of by this Learned and Judicious Antiquary. My Design in which is not to thwart the general Opinion of this Age concerning it, but only, for the Sake of Truth, candidly and impartially to represent the Substance of what may be said as well for it as against it. The Sum of what is said to invalidate this Account concerning the Original of the Britains, is that this Book wherein it is delivered, is as to the main of it very fabulous; and that there is Reason to believe, the whole to be nothing else but the Forgery of Jeffrey of Monmouth, the pretended Translator of it. And the regular Method of proceeding in this Dissertation is, First, To examine upon what Grounds Jeffrey is charged with Forgery or Imposture in this Matter; And Secondly, admitting his Innocence, that is, admitting there was a History extant before his Time, giving a regular Account of the Succession of the British Kings from Brutus to Cadwallader, to examine whether that History is altogether so fabulous, as it is now commonly esteemed.

XI. Before
XI. Before I proceed to consider the Objections against Jeffrey's Integrity, it will be requisite for the Readers Information, to relate what he himself and his Advocates say concerning the Publication of this History, which has, in this last Age especially, occasioned so much Controversy among Learned Men. Now the Story as collected from himself, Leland, Bale, and Pitts is, That Walter Mapaus, alias Calenius, Archdeacon of Oxford, who flourished in the Reign of Henry I. and of whom Henry of Huntington and other Historians as well as Jeffrey himself make honourable mention, being a Man very curious in the Study of Antiquity, and a diligent Searcher into ancient Libraries, and especially after the Works of ancient Authors, happened while he was in Armorica to light upon a History of Britain, writ in the British Tongue, and carrying Marks of great Antiquity. And being overjoy'd at it, as if he had found a vast Treasure, he in a short Time after came over to England; where enquiring for a proper Person to translate this curious but hitherto unknown Book, he very opportunely met with Jeffrey of Monmouth, a Man profoundly versed in the History and Antiquities of Britain, excellently skilled in the British Tongue, and withal (considering the Time) an elegant Writer both in Verse and Prose; and so recommended this Task
The PREFACE. xvii

Task to him. Accordingly Jeffrey being incredibly delighted with this ancient Book, undertook the Translating of it into Latin, which he performed with great Diligence, approving himself, according to Matthew Paris, a faithful Translator. At first he divided it into four Books, writ in a plain simple Stile, and dedicated it to Robert Earl of Gloucester, a Copy whereof is (p) said to be at Bennet College in Cambridge, which was never yet published; but afterwards he made some Alterations, and divided it into eight Books, to which he added the Book of Merlin's Prophecies, which he had also translated from British Verse into Latin Prose, prefixing to it a Preface, and a Letter to Alexander Bishop of Lincoln. A great many fabulous and trifling Stories were inserted in the History: But that was not his Fault; his Business as a Translator was to deliver them faithfully such as they were, and leave them to the Judgment of the Learned to be discussed.

XII. To prove the Truth of this Relation, and to answer at once all Objections against Jeffrey's Integrity, one need no other Argument than an Assurance, that the Original Manuscript which Jeffrey translated, of whose Antiquity the Curious are able to judge

(p) Pitts & viff. in loc. supra citatis.
judge in a great Measure by the Character, or any ancient and authentick Copy of it, is yet extant. And indeed Archbishop (q) Usher mentions an old Welsh Chronicle in the Cottonian Library, that formerly was in the Possession of that learned Antiquary Humfrey Lhwyd, which he says is thought to be that which Jeffrey translated. But if that is the Original Manuscript, it must be acknowledged Jeffrey was not merely a Translator, but made some Additions of his own; since as that most learned Prelate informs us, the Account that we have in this History of the British Flamens, and Arch-

flamens, is no where to be found in it. But besides this there are several Copies of it in the Welsh Tongue, mentioned by the late Ingenious and Learned Mr. Lhwyd in his Archæologia Britannica. And I myself have met with a Manuscript History of our British Affairs, writ above a hundred Years ago by Mr. John Lewis, and shortly to be published, wherein the Author says, That he had the Original of the British History in Parchment written in the British Tongue before Jeffrey's Time, as he concludes from this Circumstance, that in his Book Jeffrey's Preface was wanting, and the Preface to his Book was the second Chapter of that published

(q) Brit. Eccles. primordia, Cap. 5.
published by Jeffrey. My Ignorance of the Welsh Tongue renders me unqualified for making any Search into these Matters; and though the Search should be attended with never so much Satisfaction, to those who are able to judge of the Antiquity of Manuscripts: yet to the Generality of Readers other Arguments would perhaps be more convincing.

XIII. Were it true, that Alfred of Beverley made his Abridgment of the British History, from a Copy of it which was different from that published by Jeffrey, and extant before his Time; that alone would be an unanswerable Proof of Jeffrey's Integrity. Mr. Hearne, in his Preface to Alfred's Annals by him lately published, favours this Opinion; for the support of which he alludes, that Alfred never once mentions Jeffrey's Name, but distinguishes the Author of the British History by the feigned Name of Britannicus, and that Jeffrey was a later Writer than he. As to Jeffrey's being a later Writer, that seems grounded upon a Mistake, Camden and other learned Men have run into, concerning the Time of Jeffrey's publishing this History, which I shall hereafter endeavour to rectify. And as to Alfred's Silence of Jeffrey's Name, one can safely conclude no more from that than this, that he perhaps thought him of Regard, as being not the Author, but o
the Translator of the History. To me the
common Opinion of learned Men, viz. that
Alfred's Annals were chiefly Galfredi Deslo-
rationes, seems much better supported. For
before Jeffrey's Translation appeared, the
British History was wholly unknown to the
World, there being no Copy of it extant
but in the British Tongue, and that too but
lately discovered; so that Jeffrey (r) for-
bids his Contemporaries, William of Malmef-
bury, and Henry of Huntington, to treat of
the ancient British Kings, for want of the
Book which Walter brought over from Ar-
morica, and whereof he now published the
Translation. But Alfred says nothing of
its being writ in the British Tongue, nor of
its being so scarce a Book. On the contra-
ry he (f) speaks of it as a Book so well
known, that it was in his Time esteemed a
Mark of rustick Ignorance not to be ac-
quainted with it, and that he himself was
ashamed till he had read this History which
others had even got by Heart. If there-
fore the British History which Alfred abridg-
ed, was different from this published by Jef-
frey, and yet was so generally well known
at that Time; one might very well ask,
what became of it? What Author has
made the least Mention of it? Or in what
Language
Language was it written? If it was in British, it could not have been so generally understood by Englishmen, nor in all Probability by Alfred himself, who yet mentions his Desire of transcribing it: If in Latin, then the Question is, wherein did that History and Jeffrey's pretended Translation differ? For I observe that wherever Alfred does not abridge, but quote the very Words of the British History, he does it Verbatim according to Jeffrey's Translation. Nor does his Abridgment in the least differ from Jeffrey's larger History of the Times before the Coming of Cæsar, saving in the Orthography of some Persons and Places, wherein scarce any Writers since his Time have perfectly agreed, and in a Quotation (t) which he has added out of another Author, concerning the High-ways of Belinus; nor yet in the Times after the Coming of Cæsar, saving in some Additions he made to it, as he himself (u) owns, out of the Roman, English, and other Historians.

XIV. Despairing therefore of clearing Jeffrey's Integrity by this Argument, let us try whether it may not be done, by the Consideration of other Circumstances, and the Answers that may be given to the Objections of his Adversaries. And in the first Place

The PREFACE.

Place it has been thought by Jeffrey's Advocates a very great Hardship, that he has not the Privilege of being believed upon his own Word, viz. That he was only the Translator of the British History, who was in his own Time of that Credit and Esteem, as to be promoted afterwards to the Bishoprick of St. Asaph, and as (x) some relate (though I believe on no good Grounds) to the Dignity of a Cardinal also: When other Authors, who have intermixed with their Histories as gross Fables as any that are here to be found, are yet allowed that Privilege in Matters of greater Importance. And they think this Treatment of him the more injurious, since the Learned Men of his own Time, who had the best Opportunity, and wanted no Abilities to expose the Forgery, had it really been so, were far from questioning his Veracity in this Point. Now as (y) Sir John Price with great Zeal for Jeffrey's Cause urges, no humane Argument is so strong a Support to the Faith of the Gospel as this, that when it was first published to the World, none of its Adversaries were found so impudent, as to endeavour destroying the Belief of the Facts it relates. And so, says he, ought it to be an Argument for our Purpose, that there

there was no Body, when this History was first published, that attempted to disprove it, or assert it to be the Forgery, instead of the Translation of Jeffrey of Monmouth. On the contrary, it was received with general Approbation, and was no sooner published, than Abridgments and Translations were made of it into other Languages.

XV. For Henry of Huntingdon, whom Jeffrey mentions as his contemporary Historian, though he had treated of the Original of the Britains, and of Brutus the Founder of their Race, in the History he had published before he had seen the British History; yet afterwards happening, as he says, to light upon Jeffrey's Translation at the Abbey of Bec in Normandy, he, to compleat his Account of the ancient British Affairs, and as it were to testify to the World his Esteem for the British History when published, made an Abstract of it, which he subjoined as an Appendix to his former History. About the same Time also Alfred of Beverley, whom I mention'd before, and now assert to be a later Writer than Jeffrey, shew'd himself so well satisfied that the British History was genuine, that in his Abridgment of it he has omitted mentioning Jeffrey's Name; which, as

(2) Epist. 2da. ad Warinum. M. S. in Bibliotheca Harleyana.
I have already observed, he in all Probability did for no other Reason, than that he thought him less worthy his Regard, as being no farther concerned in the Work than in the Translating of it; though the Author of it, as being unknown, he calls by the feigned Name of Britannicus. Much about the same Time also Walter Mapesus, who first discovered the Book, and gave it to Jeffrey to translate, did himself translate it out of British into Latin, and in his latter Days out of Latin into British again, that is, as I suppose, into more modern Welsh that it might be more generally understood. And this Walter himself testifies at the Conclusion of his Book, which is still to be seen in the Archives (a) of Jesus Colledge Library in Oxford. Mr. Lhuyd (b) says, that after comparing these Translations with that which was made by Jeffrey, he found Jeffrey’s History more elegant and perfect than the other. There are also several other Manuscript Copies of this History translated into Welsh, but of what Antiquity, or whether all done by the same Hand I have not yet been able to inform myself. And the Learned Bishop of Carlisle (c) mentions an old English Translation of it made by one Lazimon or Lazamone, a Priest

a Priest born at Erculene on the Severn, the
Copy of which being yet extant in the
Cottonian Library, he conjectures must be
near as ancient as Jeffrey's Time. And
though the Translator pretends to have
had the Original from its prime Author,
one Wate, (or Walter) a French Clergyman,
who, as he says, first presented his Latin
Composure to Queen Eleanor, King Henry
the Second's Comfort; yet, says my Lord
d of Carlisle, the Truth is, as Mr. Wanley has
made it very plain to us, this Lazimone's
Book, and Monmouth's are the very same;
and the former seems only to have translated
Jeffrey's Book into Norman English, in which
Condition we have it twice in the Cottonian
Library. It would be tedious to recount
that long Catalogue of English Historians,
who succeeded from the Twelfth to the Six-
teenth Century, and that have either
abridged or enlarged upon the British Hist-
ory, without any Suspicion of Forgery on
Jeffrey's Part, wherewith he now common-
ly stands charged.

XVI. But besides the general Approba-
tion this Book met with at its first appear-
ing abroad, and which it so long preserved,
it may be alleged farther, that there is all
the Improbability of any Cheat on Jeffrey's
Part that can be imagined. For he pro-
duces for a Voucher of his Sincerity Walter
Archdeacon of Oxford, from whom he pro-
ffes
seffes to have received the Copy of the Brit- 

ish History; and at the same Time clears 

Walter of Forgery, by mentioning the An-
tiquity of the Book. But admitting they 

were both jointly concerned in this Contri-
vance, which is all that can be objected in 

this Case, it is hardly credible that Jeffrey 

would hazard the exposing of his Character 

so far, as to publish to the World so gross a 

Forgery, and presume to dedicate it to a 

Person so celebrated for his Learning, and 

withal of so great Eminence and Authority 

in the Kingdom, as was at that Time Robert 

Earl of Gloucester, the Natural Son of King 

Henry the First. He had just Reason to fear, 

that a Person of such eminent Quality, and 

so curious in Matters of Learning, and espe-
cially that which so much concerned a 

Statesman, the History of this Kingdom, 

would not bear such a scandalous Impostion 

with his Name at the Head of it, if by any 

Enquiries made into it he could have been 
detected. But besides the Earl of Glouces-
ter, he had the Confidence also to venture im-
posing upon the Credulity of Alexander Bi-

shop of Lincoln, to whom he dedicates Mer-

lin's Prophecies, and mentions his Transla-
tion of the British History. This Prelate is 

also celebrated by Henry of Huntingdon, and 

other Historians, as well as Jeffrey himself, 

for the greatest Patron of Learned Men in 

that Time, and for being himself a great 

Scholar
The PREFACE.

Scholar and Statesman. And if he had any Concern either for Truth or for his own Honour, we cannot doubt but he was well satisfied of Jeffrey's Integrity, when he desired him to translate Merlin's Prophecies, (as Jeffrey says he did,) and had the Opportunity of Discouraging him about the Copy of the British History, the Translation whereof he published at the same Time with them. But farther, let it even be granted, that not only Walter was a Partner in this Contrivance, but also that the Earl of Gloucester and the Bishop of Lincoln were both so regardless of their Honour, as to suffer their Names at the Head of a Translation, without any Scruple or Enquiry whether it was real or pretended; yet it can never with any Reason be thought, but that a History, which gave so surprizing an Account of the ancient British Affairs, and which (as Alfred of Beverley tells us,) was at the Time of its first Appearance very much the Subject of publick Discourse, so that it was then esteemed a Mark of rustick Ignorance for any Person to be unacquainted with it, could have passed without Censure from other Learned Men, had there been the least Grounds for it. And yet, as I have already observed, it passed current with all the Writers of Note in our Country till Camden's Time; and met with no Opposition excepting from William of New-
burgh, who may very well be thought too distant in Time, too much sway'd by Revenge and Prejudice, too full of absurd Stories himself, and to have too little Appearance of Reason on his Side, to be capable of doing it any Injury with an impartial and considerate Reader.

XVII. Notwithstanding both (d) Polydore Virgil, and (e) Camden object the Authority of this Writer, as an Argument against Jeffrey's Integrity, and that too of the greatest Weight of any that they offer upon this Point, which makes it the more worthy our Consideration. Camden, or which is much the same Thing, the learned and judicious Men who attacked him with their Objections, introduces the Argument with great Force, by afferting, that William of Newburgh, in this rough Language, fixed the Charge of Forgery upon Jeffrey, the Compiler of the British History, as soon as ever he had published it. "A certain "Writer started up in our Days, who hath "devised strange and ridiculous Tales con- "cerning the Britains, and with a sort of "impudent Vanity, hath extolled their "Gallantry above that of the Macedonians "or Romans. His Name is Jeffrey, &c." From the Manner in which Camden allows these

(d) Hist. Angl. L. I. (e) Britannia p. VIII.
these learned Men to propose their Object, a Reader would hardly imagine that Newburgh delay'd making this Charge against Jeffrey, till above forty Years after the British History was published; and yet so much it was at least according to the most favourable Supposition: That is, allowing Jeffrey to be living at the Beginning of Henry the Second's Reign, or the Year 1155. For in his Reign Camden (f) says Jeffrey published this History, and it was at least 1197, before Newburgh published his Invective, his History not ending before that Year. But indeed the Mistake is yet much greater. For by some Accounts, I find Jeffrey died two Years before Henry the Second began his Reign; at least it is certain (g) he was made Bishop of St. Asaph in 1151, and that his two Patrons Robert Earl of Gloucester and Alexander Bishop of Lincoln, (to the former of which he dedicates the History he Translated, to the other Merlin's Prophecies,) died the one in the Year 1146, the other the Year following: And it is equally certain, that Jeffrey published his Book before he was made a Bishop, and also before the Death of either of his Patrons. As to the exact Time when this Book was published I cannot be positive; though most probably

(f) Britain. p. V. (g) Mat. Paris Hist. maj. ad An. 1151.
probably it was between the Year 1125, in which Alexander was made Bishop of Lincoln, and 1128 when Alfred of Beverley the Abridger of the History (b) is thought to have died. Langhorn says in his (i) Antiquititates Albionenses that Henry of Huntington saw this History at the Abbey of Bec in Normandy. A. D. 1109. But this certainly is a Mistake, as might be made appear from several Circumstances. Huntington's Second Letter to Warin, which Langhorn quotes on this Occasion, was (as far as I can find) never yet Printed; and the M.S. which I saw of it in the Harleyan Library, says only, that Huntington had met with Jeffrey's History in his Journey to Rome hoc anno: But the Letter has no Date. However one may very justly reckon at least seventy Years between the Publication of this History, and the Appearance of Newburghs Charge against it. And this is such a Distance of Time, that it can hardly be presumed he could be a competent Witness of the Forgery, unless he had given better Reasons for it than he has done.

XVIII. But Jeffrey's Advocates say further, that Newburgh was far from being sincere and impartial in his Charge. It is certain his Accusation made no Impression on any of our own Writers, till near the Beginning of

(b) Hearne Pref. ad Aluredi Annales. p. 28. (i) p. 39.
the last Century. It was in a short Time answered by one (k) Grey, who according to Pitts was Bishop of Norwich and Elect of Canterbury, and dy’d A. D. 1217. and has been generally rejected as a groundless Calumny; so much Virulence, especially against a Person of so venerable a Character as that of a Bishop, not being thought to proceed from any other Cause than Passion and Prejudice. And accordingly (l) some Welsh Authors discover to Us the true secret Reason of this Bitterness, by telling us from their own authentick Histories, That this William Petit, alias Neubrigenfs, whom the Britains call Guillim. Bach, did after the Decease of Jeffrey of Monmouth, make Suit to David ap Owen Gwyned Prince of North-Wales, to succeed in the Bishoprick of St. Asaph; and receiving the Repulse with some Disgrace, had no other Way to vent his foolish Passion and Resentment, than by railing most scurrilously against the deceased Bishop, as if he had been the Author of a Book, of which he was only the Translator, and decrying the History and Antiquities of the Britains, to revenge himself on the Welsh their Descendants. So that Leland says truly of him, (m) Gallofridum Arturium Monumetensiem tam petulanter

petulanter lacefet, tam invidis moribus lacerat, ut conductum ad id facile putes: cujus judicia-
num secutus Polydorus, & sape & libenter Gal-
lofridum vellicat, alieni operis interpretum. Quare mihi uterque ad partes merito vocandus,
nisi essent ex aquo penitioris antiquitatis Brit-
nanæ ignari.

XIX. They think also his Prejudice the more apparent, in that he confidently ob-
jects as a Falsity in this History, what they asserf to be a most notorious Truth. For he
would have the Account here given of the three ancient Metropolitan Sees of the
Britains, viz. London, York, and Legions, pas for an incontestable Proof of the
Falsity of the History, affirming there were no Archbishops in this Island before
Augustin the Monk. And indeed that this is a more confident than true Afserion, any
one may be convinced from Arch-Bishop Ulbers Primordia, who has moft learnedly
discussed this Point, and fhewn all the Authorities that corroborate Jeffrey’s Ac-
count of the Establishment and Succession of the British Archbishops, from the Time
of K. Lucius till Augustins Arrival. But besides they wonder with what Face he
could reproach Jeffrey with fabulous Stories, who himself abounds with Falsities and
Absurdities rather more gross and incredible. For some Liberty has been always allow’d to
Antiquity in these Matters: But this Histori-
an makes a Romance of the History of his own Time, and among many other monstrous Stories, tells us one which nothing in this Book, not the Birth of Merlin, nor the Transformation of Other Pendragon, nor the most Romantick Exploit of K. Arthur, nor Cadwallo's Repast in the Island of Garnareia, will come up to; and will serve very well to shew that this Authors Indignation against Jeffrey, did not proceed from his Aversion to Fables. He says, (n) That in K. Stephen's Time at a Place now called Wolpit near St. Edmunds-Bury in Suffolk, two green Children, a Male and Female, in strange Habits, came out of the Wolf-pitts adjoining, and wandred up and down in the Field in Astonishment, till they were seized by some Reapers, and carried to the Village, whither a great Multitude of People ran together to see them. There they were detained some Days, and refused all manner of Sustenance that was offered them, till at last when near famished they greedily laid hold on some Beans that were accidentally brought them, and lived upon this Food for some Months till they had learned to eat Bread. Their green Colour gradually changed, so that they became in Complexion like other People, learned our c Language,

(n) Neubrig Rerim Angl. L. i. Cap. 27.
Language, and were baptized. The Boy, who seemed the younger, died a little while after; but the Girl survived a long Time, and married a Man at Lynn. Being asked about their Country and the Manner of their coming hither; they answered, That they came from St. Martins Land, which according to their Description, was a Subterraneous Country that had no Sun, but a Light like our Twilight, where notwithstanding the Christian Faith was professed: And that they were convey’d from thence to this upper Region in a sort of Exstasy, occasioned by hearing a Sound like that of a Bell, while they were feeding their Fathers Cattle in the Field. An Author that could relate this Story for a Truth, was a very improper Person to censure Jeffrey of Monmouth’s British History.

XX. Since then neither the Time when Newburgh published this Charge, nor the Impartiality, nor the Credit of the Witness, may be thought to render his Evidence valid; nothing remains to support this heinous Accusation, but the strong Reasons he gives for it. But here they say we are most of all disappointed; for he gives no Reasons at all. The whole Accusation is nothing but scurrilous Railing, without the least Offer of a Proof. He calls Jeffrey (o) a Writer of ridiculous Fictions, who

(o) Neubrig, Proemium Hist.
with an impudent Vanity extolled the Valour of the Britains above that of the Macedonians and Romans; had published for a true History the old British Fables of K. Arthur, with an Addition of his own; had yet with greater Impudence published Merlin's lying Prophecies, very much also enlarged from his own Stock, as true and authentick; and in his whole British History lies every where saucily and impudently. He also calls those either Jeffrey's or other Peoples Fictions, which he relates concerning the great Exploits of the ancient Britains before Caesar's Arrival; as also from Caesar's Time, till the Reign of the Emperour Honorius; and will not allow one Word to be true concerning the succeeding British and Saxon Kings, that is inconsistent with Bedes account of them; and in short affirms the whole Story of Arthur and his Successors is a bare-faced Lie, either of his own or other Peoples making. And in this Language does he proceed to inveigh against him more largely, in Relation to the Exploits of Arthur, his three pretended Archbishops, and the Prophet Merlin; and at last concludes that this Liar with his Fables ought to be forthwith rejected by all. But he does not at last offer to prove, nor so much as to say, that there was no such ancient History ever extant as Jeffrey pretended to translate; nor that Walter Archdeacon of Oxford
The PREFACE.

Oxford never delivered any such Book to him; nor that there was a Combination between Walter and Jeffrey to impose a Forgery upon the World; nor that any Body had detected, or so much as suspected any such Thing. And yet without some Proof of this kind, Jeffrey, notwithstanding all Newburghs ill manner'd Railing, might be a very innocent Man. But to make his Malice yet more apparent, one might very well ask, To what End was all this bitter Invective? Or which way was it pertinent to his Purpose? For Newburghs History begins with William the Conquerer, and has nothing to do with the Affairs of those Times whereof the British History treats. If that had been his Subject, he had been somewhat more excusable, as preparing his Readers to reject the Errors of that History. Whereas he now goes out of his way to vent his Malice against, and endeavour to ruin the Credit of a Prelate of the Church, who had been a long Time dead, who had hitherto enjoyed a fair Character, and (which is the greatest Aggravation) had never that I can find done him the least Injury.

XXI. This is the Man upon whose single Testimony (p) Polydore Virgil grounds his calumnious Reflections on Jeffrey of Monmouth.
mouth, and which some of our modern Writers have countenanced so far, as to place him in the infamous Class with Annius Viterbiensis and other impostors. And yet at last Newburgh does not say that Jeffrey forged the History, but only added to it what he calls doting Tales and Fictions. And this is what Jeffrey's Advocates do not deny, and what he himself seems to have the ingenuity to own. For he (q) owns the Addition of Merlin's Prophecy; and perhaps the Connexion of it with the History, by the Addition of Merlin's Discourse with Vor-tegirn, (which is almost taken verbatim from Nennius) must be imply'd. He (r) owns also some Additions to the Story of K. Arthur, and therefore does not pretend to have ty'd himself up to a strict Translation. And accordingly besides the Story of the Flamens and Archflamens, which Archbishop Usher (s) says was wanting in that which he supposed to be the Original M S ; Dr. Powel (t) says he had seen other Copies, wherein were also wanting those wonderful Transformations of Garlois and his Confidents, besides some other Romantick Tales; which indeed might be Traditions among the Welsh, and such as Jeffrey might think entertaining Stories for the Credulity of those Times.

---

I must not leave this Point, without observing also, (what I have already hinted at) that among all the Lies and Fables Newburgh charges Jeffrey with, he makes not the least mention of the Story of Brutus, or the Descent of the Britains from the Trojans. It seems this Particular, which was the most material of all, was so well established in his Time, that he did not venture to oppose it: For one would hardly think any other Reason hindered him from mentioning it. To what Purpose therefore does Camden produce Newburgh's Testimony against the British History, as long as the Story of Brutus is not injured by it? For let the rest of the History be true or false, his Concern was chiefly about this Part of it, as being repugnant to the Conjecture he was going to propose, concerning the first Inhabitants of this Island.

XXI. It is true, he uses also other Arguments which I proceed to consider: Though his Quotation out of Giral dus Cambrensis I cannot think was intended by him for a Proof of Jeffrey's Forgery, but only in some Measure to weaken the Authority of the British History. As he was very conversant in the Works of this Author, and had published a Part of them, he had certainly more Ingenuity than to wrest the Sense of one particular Passage, contrary to the Tenour and Scope of all Giral dus's Writ.
The PREFACE.

Writings. For though Giraldus is so severe with Jeffrey, about the Opinions he delivers concerning the Etymology of Wales, as to pass this blunt Reflexion, (a) Sicut Fabuloja Gaufredi Arthuri mentitur Historia, which are the Words Camden quotes; yet it is certain he never intended to charge Jeffrey with Forgery or Imposture by them. So far from that, that his Testimonies serve as the greatest Support to this History, in the most material Parts of it. As he was himself a Welshman, and withal very learned in the History and Antiquities of the Britains, contemporary with Jeffrey himself, and an intimate Acquaintance of Walter Archdeacon of Oxford, he had the best Opportunity of any Writer of that Time, for detecting Jeffrey's Imposture: And had he had the least Suspicion, that under Pretence of Translating an ancient British Book, he imposed a Forgery upon the World, he that was so severe upon him for such a Trifle as the Etymology of a Word, would never have conceal'd it. But according to the Opinion of Sir John Price, (w) Giraldus saw the very original Book from whence Jeffrey made his Translation; (so far was he from suspecting him) and only quarrell'd with him about this particular Passage,

The PREFACE.

page, as being one of Jeffrey's Additions. Whereas in the other Parts of his Writings, he has not only approved, but much corroborated the Authority of the British History, as we shall see in its proper Place.

XXIII. To proceed therefore to that which is really designed by Camden as an Argument against Jeffrey's Integrity; he makes his Learned Men assert, (x) "That Jeffrey ap Arthur of Monmouth was the first Person, that gratified the Britains with Brutus for the Founder of their Race, and feign'd him not only of a Trojan, but also of a Divine Extraction: Before which Time, there was never any the least Mention made of such a Man as Brutus." Now this, though it were true, is far from being a direct Argument against Jeffrey's Integrity: Because there might have been a History that lay concealed for some Ages before his Time, containing this new and surprizing Account of the ancient Britains, which it might be his Fortune first to publish. But there is no Occasion to answer the Argument in this Manner: For the Advocates of the British History acquit not only Jeffrey, but also his Author, from Forgery with Respect to this Point, by asserting

(x) Britannia, p. VII.
asserting, in direct Contradiction to Camden, That there had been frequent Mention made of Brutus the Founder of the British Race; by Authors extant long before Jeffrey's Time; and that there had been a constant Tradition either oral or written concerning him, especially among the Britains, even from the first Beginning of the British Nation. And this Camden himself, who was so learned in Antiquity, could not be ignorant of, whatever groundless Objections he suffers his learned Men to offer. For Sir John Price's learned and elegant Defence of the British History was published in Camden's Time, and could hardly avoid being perused by a Person of so great Curiosity in these Affairs. And this Author had sufficiently answer'd this Objection before ever it appear'd in Camden's Britannia.

XXIV. It is certain in the first Place, that Henry of Huntington had published in the Beginning of his History a short Account of Brutus, and made the Britains the Descendants of the Trojans, before he knew any Thing of Jeffrey's British History; as may be gathered from what he says in the above-mention'd second Epistle to Warin, from what Jeffrey himself says at the Conclusion of this History, where he mentions Henry of Huntington, as his contemporary Historian, and also from the different
different Relations of the Story, it fell in some Circumstances: And it is also observable, that he professes to have had this Account from various Authors. Give me Leave to insert the whole Passage in his own Words. (y) Nunc a quibus & quo tempore inhabitata fuerit (Britannia) dicendum est; quod in Beda non autem in aliis authoribus reperiri scripserunt enim a Dardano principium emanasse Britonum. Dardanus autem pater fuit Troj, Troius autem pater Priami & Anchises, Anchises Pater Æneas, Æneas pater Ascanii, Ascanius pater Sylvii. Sylvius autem cum uxorem duxisset, & ea pregnans esset, pradixit magus quidam filium unde, pregnans erat interfecerunt patrem suum. Occisoigitur mago pro vaticinatione illa, natus est filius & vocatus est Bruto. Post mul-tum vero intervallum dum ipse luderet cum puere, igitur sagitta occidit patrem non industria sed casu. Quamobrem expulsum ab Italia pervenit in Galliam, ibique condita civitate Turonorum, quae vocatur Turonis, invasit tractum Armoricanum. De tracia autem Armorico huc adveniens sibi partes insula ingentis vindicavit, & eum nomine suo Britanniam vocavit. Dicunt autem illi autho-res, quod quando Bruto regnabat in Britannia, Heli Sacerdos judicabat Israel, & Post-

(y) Henry Huntington. Hist. L. i.
humus: five Sylvius filius: Aenea regnabat apud Latinos, cujus nepos erat Brutus. But though as Huntington observes, Bede makes no express Mention of Brutus, it cannot be concluded he was ignorant of his Story; it being Foreign from his Purpose to relate it, since he was to write the Ecclesiastical and not the Civil History of this Country. Notwithstanding it is thought by some, that he hints at the Passage of the Trojans or Britains through Gaul, when he says, (z) In primis hac insula Britones solum, a quibus nomen accipit, incolas habuit; qui de traua Armoricano, ut furtur, Britanniam advecti, australis sibi partes illius vindicarunt. For as Sir (a) John Price and (b) Sheringham remark, it is evident from this Testimony, that the ancient Britains did not inhabit Gaul, but only arrived there in their Passage to Britain, agreeable to what the British History relates. For if the Britains had been a People of Gaul, and had given their Name to the Island at their Arrival here, they must have bore this Name first in Gaul. But the Name of Britains is much more ancient in this Island than in Gaul, they having been so called long before Cæsar’s Arrival; whereas it was long after Cæsar’s Time that Armo-

rica came to be called Britain. And that we ought to understand Bede in this Sense is very reasonable, if we consider farther, that it seems to have been the received Tradition of his Countrymen the Saxons, when they first arrived here, that the Britains were originally Trojans; though by Reason of the long Confusion and Distraction of their Affairs, the Ignorance of the Times, and especially the Neglect of the History of Foreign Nations, (among whom they esteem'd the Welsh,) when indeed they have hardly deliver'd that of their own, we cannot expect much Mention made of it by them in those early Days. Notwithstanding the Saxon Verses Wheloc (c) cites out of an ancient Manuscript at Trinity College in Cambridge, are an Instance of the Antiquity of this Notion among them, which I will here add according to his Latin Translation.

Hae unica semina prima
Ante omnes sevis Troiani semina belti.
Hanc Britones dixere Helenam, sed Dardanus ille
Excelsus Bruti pater extitit, unde Britannii
Hercum sumpser genus, fortissimus idem
Hunc orbem primus regere & dominansier aquis.

To

(c) Comment. in Bed. Hift. Eccles. L. i. Cap. i.
The PREFACE. xlv

To which he immediately subjoyns from another Place,

*Infulta diea sicut Brutannia nomine Brutu*.

XXV. But we have a much fuller Testimony concerning *Brutus* from *Sigibertus Gemblacensis*, (d) a French Author somewhat more early than *Jeffrey* or *Henry of Huntington*; for he died, according to *Bellarmine*, in the Year 1112, to which Year he also brings down his *Chronographia*. The whole Passage is too long to be cited here; but the Sum of it is, That according to the Relations given in the History of the Britains, *Ascanius* the Son of *Aeneas* had by his Son *Sylvius* a Grandson named *Brutus*, who occasion'd his Mother's Death by his Birth, and his Father's in Hunting; that being banished into *Greece* he headed the exiled *Trojans*, conquered *Pandrasus*, married his Daughter, and departing from *Greece* came to the *Tyrrenian* Shore, where he joined Company with *Corineus*, and then made War upon the *Gauls*, and built the City of *Tours*, where his Nephew *Turonus* was killed: That from hence he failed to *Britain* called then *Albion*, and inhabited by Giants, and called the People and Country after his

(d, *Chronographia apud Var. Germaniae Script. per Pistorium.*)
his Name, and at last left three Sons to succeed him, after he had reigned twenty four Years. And so he passes summarily over the Affairs of the Britains, agreeable to the British History, till they were driven into Wales by the Saxons. I am not ignorant that this whole Passage in Sigibertus concerning the ancient Britains, is suspected by some Learned Men, as an Interpolation of some later Writer, who might take it from the British History. But this seems to be a Surmise, grounded rather upon their Prejudice to the British History, than any sufficient Reason. The Author, for an Introduction to his Chronographia, professes to treat of the Original of nine Nations, viz. the Romans, Persians, Franks, Britains, &c. and accordingly having dispatched the first three, delivers the Original of the Britains in the Manner I have related. And why this Particular should be an Interpolation more than any of the rest, they ought to shew some better Reason than their Suspicion, or the Omission of it in some one Manuscript, when perhaps all the rest have it. But we need not much insist upon this single Testimony, when there are others more ancient and authentick.

XXVI. For Nennius Abbot of the famous Monastery of Banchor near Chester, who flourished according to some Accounts in
in the seventh Century, or however without all Dispute some Hundreds of Years before Jeffrey's Time, has writ very copiously concerning Brutus, recounting his Genealogy from the Patriarch Noah, and relating the Sum of his Adventures, in a Manner that differs but in a few Circumstances from the British History. And not not only so, but indeed the principal Materials of the British History, where it is not warranted by the Roman Authors, or what we have now remaining of Gildas, are taken from this Author's Treatise, and only related in a more elegant Manner, and augmented with more Circumstances: And we cannot reject the most considerable Part of the British History, without rejecting Nennius also. But to shew from whence he compiled his Account take his own Words. (e) Partim: majorum traditionibus, partim scriptis, partim etiam monumentis veterum Britanniae incolarum, partim & de annalibus Romanorum; insuper & de Chronicis sanctorum Patrum, etl, Jeronymi, Prosperi, Eusebii; necnon & de historiis Scotorum Saxonumque, licet inimicorum, non ut volui sed ut potui, meorum obtemperans jussionibus superiorum, unam hanc historiaunculam undecunque collectam balbutiendo conservavi. This Passage may partly serve to account for the different Relations

(e) Nennii Proem. ad Hist. Britonum.
ons he gives concerning Brutus, making him in (a) one Place a Roman Consul; in (b) another the Son of Hiscicen, who was the Grandson of Rhea Sylvia, and therefore still a Descendent from Aeneas, though in a remoter Degree; and in another the same with the common Account, which he most largely insists upon as the most authentick. At the same Time it may be doubted, whether the two former Accounts were not added by his Interpolator Samuel Britannus, the Copies we have remaining of this Author being very imperfect, and inconsistent with one another, and so acknowledged by (c) Dr. Gale the first Editor of this small History. At least these different Accounts, as they are mention'd by no Author now extant ancients than this, and by him but transiently too, ought not (as they are by (d) Camden) to be urged as any material Objection against the more known, the more generally received, and the much better grounded Tradition, which the British History has delivered concerning Brutus. For if an establish'd Tradition is to be rejected upon these Grounds, there is very little in ancient History, that ought to be received: And even Romulus must quit his Pretensions of being the Founder of

of Rome, because the Levity of some Writers have ascribed this Honour to the Trojans at their first Arrival in Italy; of others, to Evander King of Arcadia. But now since these different Accounts concerning Brutus were first delivered by Nennius, and since he's quoted by (e) Camden (though very unfairly) in this very Discourse concerning Brutus, it is hardly consistent with Camden's professed Ingenuity, that he should let this pass as an Objection, that before Jeffrey's Time there was never the least Mention made of any such Man. Instead of straining his Invention to the utmost to defend the British History, as he pretends to have done; I leave the Reader to judge whether this Conduct does not shew, that he has rather done so to disparage it.

XXVII. But he needed not to have made any profound Search for the Name of Brutus before Jeffrey's Time, since it occurs in Merlin's Prophecy, published with this History, which is of much greater Antiquity than Nennius's Time, since he was contemporary with Vortegirn. Whether there were two nearly contemporary Writers of this Name, the one surnamed Ambrosius, the other Caledonius, as most Authors agree; or but one, according to the

(e) \textit{Ibid.} P. VII.
The PREFACE

the Opinion of the Learned (f) Bishop of Carlisle; is not my Business to enquire. It is sufficient for me to shew, that this Merlin, Ambrosius, whom Nennius calls also (g) Embreis Gleutic, has been represented by a judicious Author, (b) as a Person of extraordinary Wisdom and Learning for the Time he lived in, and that for his Skill in the Mathematicks, many Fables were invented of him, by the Vulgar, some of which are recorded in Nennius, and in the British History. However, as his Compositions were in great Request among the Britains, and especially this Prophecy, one may see from thence the Antiquity of the Name of Brutus, and of the Notion that this Island derived its Name from him. Sir John Price, who understood the Welsh Language, and had perus'd the most ancient Writers now extant of that Country, informs us, (i) that they have also some Verses yet extant of that ancient and (according to his Character) most sublime British Bard Thaliessin, calling the Britains the Remainer of the Trojans, and the Descendants of Brutus. But long before all these, and even contemporary with Claudius the Emperor, flourished Gildas the Poet, distinguished

guished from the Historian by the Surname of Cambricus, who according to Ponticus Virunnius, translated from Greek into Latin, the Verfes at the Beginning of this (k) History, which contain the Prayer of Brutus to Diana, and her Answer to him, and wherein Brutus is expressly named. And though there are not now remaining among us any Copies of the Poems of this Author, yet I see no great Reason to doubt that some of them were preferred in Italy, since Ponticus Virunnius (l) mentions his Poem, entitled Cambreis, and quotes a Verfe out of the fifth Book of his Epigrams, as the genuine Works of Gildas. He is also mention'd by Lilius Gregorius Gyraldus, out of whole fifth Dialogue De Poetarum Historia Leland (m) quotes this Passage; Gildam etiam memini me legere Britannicum Poetam, huius at puto longe antiquiorem, cujus tum mihi Elegiacum carmen mira facilitate conscriptum visum fuit, nec adeo aevernabile; quem postea etiam sitatum reperi in pervertere Britannica Historia. But whatever may be the Judgment of Learned Men concerning this Point, Leland, who was himself contemptible Poet, is very positive Verfes were none of Jeffrey's Compo.
Referunt enim, says he, (n) aurea fluentes vena antiquitatis inimitabilem quandam cum eloquentiam, tum majestatem, qualem Gallofridus poeta suo tempore minime malas, cum admiratione facilius potuit suspicere quam felicius exprimere. And Milton, a Poet of much greater Name than he, (o) owns, “That the Latin Verfes are much better " than for the Age of Jeffrey ap Arthur, " unless perhaps Joseph of Exeter, the only " smooth Poet of those Times befriended " him.” But here Milton was out in his Chronology; for Joseph of Exeter did not flourish before the Reign of Richard the First, which was long after Jeffrey’s Death. Admitting then these Verfes to carry in them a Vein of Antiquity, too elegant and smooth for any Monkish Production, as they certainly do, I see no great Reason to question Virunnius’s Account of them, nor consequently to doubt that the Name of Brutus, the Founder of the British Race, was known in this Island at least a Thousand Years before Jeffrey’s Time.

XXVIII. The Testimonies I have already produced are I think sufficient to confute the Argument of Camden’s Learned Men, that the Name of Brutus was entirely the Invention of Jeffrey of Monmouth.


(n) Vide Sheringham de Angi. genis Orig. p. 387. (o) Milton’s Hist. of Britain, B. I.
Time has made such Destruction of Books and the Records of Antiquity, that I know it will be thought ridiculous to pretend, that any Author before the Time of Claudius mentions the Name of Brutus. It will be in vain therefore to alledge from Pitts, (p) that Nennius the Brother of Celfibellaun, upon Occasion of a Quarrel between him and Lud mention'd in this (q) History, for Fear the Memory of Troy should be lost in this Island, composed a Book in the Language of his Country, which the above-mention'd Nennius Abbot of Bangor translated into Latin, wherein he largely described the Actions of the Britains, and their first Entrance into this Island. And to as little Purpose did the Learned Caius, Founder of Caius College at Cambridge, shew from Stow and Lanquet, (r) that Gurningius the Britifh King, did above three hundred Years before Christ, compose his Desorationes historie Britanniae, from which Jeffreys History was partly compiled. The learned Men of the sixteenth Century might have Credulity enough to deliver such Stories: But it seems some of our more modern Criticks, who have discovered more of Antiquity by their own Sagacity, than

(q) B. I. Ch. 17.  
The PREFACE.

than our learned Ancestors were able to do by Records and Monuments, laugh at these as idle Inventions. Notwithstanding there is no Man can pretend to justify the Catalogue of British Writers' and Books which Bale and Pitts give us, before the Times of the Romans, Pitts begins with Brutus himself for an Author, because of his Epistle to Pandrusus, which is inserted in this History: But as for his Epistles to the banished Trojans, exhorting them to seek some new Place of Settlement, which were pretended to have been translated by Gildas the Poet, from Greek into Latin, and reported to be yet extant in a Manuscript at Baliol College in Oxford; that upon Enquiry is found to be a Mistake. For a learned Friend, whom I desired to make the Enquiry, has inform'd me, That there is indeed a very fine Manuscript of Brutus's Epistles in Latin; but if the Original of them was not altogether spurious, and the Fiction of some Greek Sophist, they must have been written by the Roman and not the Trojan Brutus; the Matter of them shewing, that they were written to the People of Pergamos, to beg their Assistance towards maintaining the Wars in Italy. But what Ruin forever Time may have made of Books, it has not yet been able to destroy the Traditions concerning those ancient Times, and especially concerning the
The PREFACE.

The Memory of this great Founder of the British Nation; as is evident from the general and certain Knowledge the Welsh are still famous for in the Genealogies of their great Families, which they deduce in a continual Series from the most ancient to the present Times. And that this universal Tradition of the Welsh, has a higher Original than the History published by Jeffrey, is evident from Giraldus Cambrensis; who, though contemporary with Jeffrey, says, (f) "That in his Time the Welsh Bards and Singers could repeat by Heart from their ancient and authentick Books, the Genealogy of their Princes from Roderic the Great to Belin the Great, and from him to Sylvius, Aesculapius, and Æneas, and from Æneas lineally carry up their Pedegree to Adam." And accordingly Mr. Wynne in the Appendix to his History of Wales, has given us the Pedegree of King Henry VII, as drawn by the Commissioners appointed by this Prince for that Purpose; wherein they make him the Dependent of Brutus, in the Hundredth Degree, and reckon in the Line of Descent most of the ancient British Kings mention'd in this History, though not

not taken from hence, but (as they profess) from the old Chronicles of Wales.

XXIX. All these Authorities being considered, together with what yet remains to be said concerning the British History itself, will render it needless to say much concerning another Allegation. Camden's learned Men offer against Jeffrey's Integrity, viz. (t) That he seems to have contrived this Founder of the British Nation, in Imitation of Hannibalus, a foolish Writer, who in a barbarous and ignorant Age feigned his Francio a Trojan, and Son of Priamus, to be the Founder of the French Nation. And this they think the more probable, because about the same Time that Brutus was first named, which according to them was not before Jeffrey's Time, other Nations, that they might rival each other in Glory, invented their counterfeit Hero's for their several Founders. For of this, though a specious Allegation to captivate the Reader, it is a sufficient Confutation, to have shewn already that the Name of Brutus the British Founder, was well known and recorded in Books extant several Hundreds of Years before the Time either of Jeffrey or Hannibalus. The Objection in short is no more than this, That

(t) Britan. P. VII.
That as of old, Nations had Recourse to Hercules, in latter Ages to the Trojans for their Originals; and several of them falsely; therefore none of them truly: And I do not see why the Romans may not be deny'd their Pretensions for the same Reason. It might perhaps have been more justly said, that the Fiction of Hunnibaldus's Hero, and of the other counterfeit Hero's Camden mentions, was made in Imitation of what the Britains related concerning their Founder. But it would be entering upon too large a Field of Antiquity, and too much digressing from our Subject, to consider this particularly. This however may be truly said, that the Notion of Brutus has been received with general Approbation in this Island for many Ages together, and but of late questioned, and even yet maintained by several of our most learned Men: Whereas the Fiction of Hunnibaldus was too gross, and carried too many palpable Marks of Forgery, ever to be received by the judicious. And in like Manner if other Nations for Want of Grounds to support their pretended Founders, are now ashamed of them; this is no Reason why the Britains should despise and destroy their most ancient Records, and give up what their Ancestors esteem'd the Honour of their Nation in a meer Compliment to Foreigners. And such were
The PREFACE.

were all the learned Men Camden (u) mentions as Enemies to our British Founder, viz. Boccatius, Vives, Hadrianus Junius, Polydore, Buchanan, Vignieri, Genebrardus, Molinera, Bodinus: But of the Writers of our own Nation, whose Authority in this Point would have been much more considerable, he had none to produce but John of Wethamstede. And he too, notwithstanding his Obscurity in the learned World, yet being the first Person that could raise Objections against the Story of Brutus, must be stiled a Man of excellent Judgment. I might take Notice also how much Camden's learned Men are mistaken in Chronology. For Instance, The Story of Geythelus and Scotia Foundress of the Scotch Nation, may for ought I know be an Invention; but certainly of much ancienier Date than Jeffrey's Time, since it is mentioned by so ancient a Writer as Nennius. (x) But these Things would lead me too far from my Subject.

XXX. If any one shall object against this Book's lying so long concealed, and think it a Ground for suspecting Jeffrey guilty of Forgery, that so curious a History of the British Affairs should meet with no Body to publish it before Jeffrey of Monmouth: Let it be

be considered, that it has been the Fortune of many valuable Books to lay a long Time concealed. One pertinent Instance of this we have in that most polite Historian Quintus Curtius, who was wholly unknown to the learned World, or at least (\( y \)) mentioned by no Author, till near a thousand Years after his own Time. And yet his Book is esteemed both a genuine and faithful History of the Actions of Alexander the Great. And all Circumstances considered, it is no great Wonder, that the History of the Britains lay so long concealed from the English, who till near the Time this Book was published, were so far from being curious about the Original or History of the Britains, that they knew but very little of their own Ancestors the Saxons, saving what they found in Bede. Let it be also considered; that this was an Interval of Time, wherein all kind of Learning was at the lowest Ebb over all Europe; that the Affairs of England were in a very distracted Condition, by the continual Contests between the English and Danes; that the Universities were in the same low State by Reason of the Danish Fury and Barbarity, so that very few Writers appeared; and that upon the Settlement of Affairs after the Conquest, when

(\( y \)) Vide Prefat. in Q. Curt. per Tellier.
when the Study of Letters began somewhat to revive, the British Language was still unknown; and among all those Historians that then at once appeared, viz. Florence of Worcester, William of Malmesbury, Simeon Dunelmensis, Alfred of Beverley, Henry of Huntington, and others, not one of them understood the British Tongue, nor was consequently capable of translating and publishing the British History, when at last it happened to be discovered, beside Jeffrey of Monmouth. And so far ought his Character to be from suffering upon this Score, that according to Leland, he was the only Person, who by his never to be enough commended Diligence, retrieved from Ruin a very considerable Part of the British Antiquity. And after all, though this History might then seem a new Discovery to the English, it was not so to the Welsh, who knew the greatest Part of it before.

XXXI. Upon considering all these Reasons, I will venture to acknowledge it my Opinion, that one Part of the Charge against the British History, viz. That it is wholly the Forgery of Jeffrey of Monmouth, is entirely groundless; and that upon this Score his Character has been very injuriously treated by some late Writers. But in the remaining Part of this Dissertation I will not pretend to engage as a Party. For to
The PREFACE.

use Camden's Words, (z) "Shall one of my mean Capacity presume to give Sentence in a Point of so much Consequence? I refer the Controvery entirely to the whole Body of learned Antiquaries; and leaving every Man freely to the Liberty of his own Judgment, shall not be much concerned at any ones Opinion." I only desire with the same disinterested Freedom, to offer what has been or may be said by Way of Apology for this History, as he does the Reasons of learned Men to invalidate it.

XXXII. And in the first Place, the professed Advocates of this History think it improbable, that the Author of it, whoever he was, intended to obtrude upon the World a Romance for an ancient History, considering how much he has deviated from the Roman Historians, and that in several Particulars, wherein neither the Glory of his Country, nor the setting off and adorning his own Story, could tempt him to any such Conduct. For though it is a very common Thing for Writers, out of Partiality to their Country, to relate Things in a quite different Manner, from what Foreigners, and especially their Enemies (and such were the Romans to the Britains) have done, yet in

(z) Britan. P. VI.
in Matters of Indifference, this Disagreement is less common. Where the Romans or other Historians were silent there might be room for Invention; but elsewhere nothing could have added more Authority to a Feigned History, than to have copied after Authors of established Credit, when there was no Temptation to swerve from them. And therefore this very Disagreement with Roman Authors, which is the chief Argument made Use of against the British History, is rather an Argument for it, that it was extracted more from British than from Roman Authors; which though now lost, were in all Probability extant when this History was compil'd. For if it had been compil'd out of Roman Authors, why should the Historian have varied from them in so indifferent a Matter as the Names of Persons? As Androgens for Mandubratius, Tenuantius for Immanuentius, Labienus for Laberius, Kymbelinus for Canobellinus, and the like; not to mention those Variations that are easily accounted for from the different Orthography and Pronunciation of the Britains and Romans; as Cassivellaun for Cassibellaun, and on the contrary Trinovantum for Trinobantum. Or why should the British Historian make Tenuantius or Immanuentius the Brother, whom Cesar calls the Father of Androgens or Mandubratius? As it is conjectured therefore that the Variation found in these mi-
nute, and indifferent Matters, was; owing chiefly to the Authors copying after British Writers; so those that attempt to reconcile this History with the Roman Historians, make the Difference between the British and Roman Names of Persons and Places, the chief Foundation of their Conjectures towards it.

XXXIII. In other Places where the Difference is irreconcilable, they esteem it too great a Partiality to the Roman Writers, to think them always in the Right, or that whatever is related here inconsistent with their Accounts of Things, must needs be the Authors own Invention. For the chief Intention of the Roman Writers is to celebrate the Exploits of their own People; and that a Fondness for their own Glory has carried them sometimes beyond the Bounds of Truth, should be no difficult Concession. But especially about the Affairs of other Nations, wherein they themselves had no immediate Concerns, they may be allowed to write but very transiently, and often from remote and uncertain Relations. Indeed the Sum of the Story here and in the Roman Writers is the same, though they often vary in the Names, Circumstances, and sometimes Events of Things. Thus with Respect to Cæsar's Attempt upon this Island, we find here the Substance of his own Story, viz. That he made a Descent upon
The PREFACE.

upon Britain; that Cassibellaun was Commander in the War against him; that his first Expedition was unsuccessful; that upon his Return again he found a great Army of the Britains drawn up upon the Banks of the Thames, at the Bottom whereof they had fastened sharp Stakes to render his Passage more difficult; that after this Androgeus desired his Protection against Cassibellaun; and in the Conclusion that Cassibellaun moved by his Revolt offered to surrender, and make the Island tributary. Though in the Circumstances of the Story, several Things are mentioned here which Caesar has omitted; as the Exploits of Nennius, Cassibellaun's Sacrifice, the Quarrel between Hirelgas and Evelinus, the Occasion of the Revolt of Androgeus, and his treacherous Conduct afterwards to his own Countrymen. Some of these he might omit through Ignorance, some as not pertinent to his Story, and others as not for his Honour to mention. But to say they are all feigned because not mentioned by him, is rather an Effect of Prejudice than just Reasoning. The Roman Writers themselves are more impartial. Asinus Pollio, (a) thought his Commentaries writ with little either of Diligence or Truth; and blamed his Credulity in most Things that were transacted

(a) Vid. Sueton. de Vita. J. Caes. Cap. 56.
acted by others, and his erroneous Account, either through Design or Forgetfulness, of what he did himself. And Lucan (b) so far counterances our Author, as to say with him, that Caesar's first Departure from the Island was a downright Flight; a Thing which Caesar himself thought very proper to conceal, and by a long Circuit of artful Words to substitute instead of it, (c) that he hastened his Return to Gaul, on Account of his Ships that had been shattered by a Tempest. And upon the whole Matter, that Caesar's Success in this Island was not near so great as he himself makes it, we have the Testimony of that grave and faithful Historian Tacitus, who says, (d) That he did not conquer Britain, but only shew'd it to the Romans.

XXXIV. But in some other Parts of the History, the Difference is much more wide, wherein the Authority of the Roman Historians is justly preferred. For Instance; what is here said concerning the Sons and Successors of Kymbelius, viz. Guiderius and Arviragus, as also concerning L. Hamo, or of the Exploits of Claudius and his so long Continuance in this Island, or of Arviragus marrying Genuissa the Daughter of Claudius, and the like, ought not to be regarded so much as

(b) Pharsalia. Lib. 2. (c) Caesar de bello Gallico. L. IV. (d) Vita Iulij Agricola.
as what the Roman Writers have delivered, who treat with much more Accuracy about the Transactions of those Times, with which these Accounts are hardly reconcileable. For the immediate Successors of Cunobellinus or Kymbelinus, were no doubt Togodumnus and Caractacus: And those that make Togodumnus the same with Guidierius, Venusius with Arviragus, and Queen Cartismandua with Genuissa, whom they suppose the adopted Daughter of Claudius, seem to be far from explaining this Difficulty. It is a more probable Conjecture, that there were other Sons of Kymbelinus, who might indeed succeed him in the Government, but not immediately, nor till after Claudius returned to Rome: So that there may be some Footsteps of Truth in this Story, but great Errors both in Chronology and other Circumstances mixt with it. But yet there is no Ground to cenfure all this for meer Invention, but rather such an irregular Account as the Britains were able to preserve of those Times of Diffraction and Confusion. In the Reigns of the three following British Kings, viz. Marius, Coillus, and Lucius, our Author goes on undisturbed by the Roman Historians; this being an Interval of Time, where-in the little Knowledge we have remaining of British Affairs, is preserved by him alone. But yet so many Testimonies are given of this Account by other succeeding Writers, both
both of our own and other Countries, and such Hints of it by Bede and others, that may be supposed nearly Contemporary with our Author, as the Reader may see in Archbishop Usber's Primordia, that there can be no great Reason to question the Truth of it. But only here, as in many other Points, Authors considerably differ in Chronology; and the most learned Prelate last mentioned (e) reckons up no less than twenty three Opinions, about that most remarkable Time when Lucius embraced the Christian Faith.

XXXV. But my Design being only to answer general Objections, I shall not attempt to enter into a Comparison of this with other Histories, or to shew particularly in what Instances it may be depended on, and in what not. This is too laborious and difficult a Work, and would make a large Volume; not to mention that, according (f) Dr. Powel's Opinion, it requires a perfect Knowledge of the Welsh Language: Besides that it has been already done in a great Measure in the Historical Collections made by our two most learned Antiquaries, (g) Usber and (h) Stillingfleet; to which if we add Leland's (i) Assertio Arthuris, and what the Learned and Ingenious Sir John Price

(e) Primordia. Cap. 3. (f) Epist. de Hist. Brit. reçê intel
tigenda. (g) Primordia. (h) Origines Britannice. (i) pub-
lished at London, A. D. 1544.
Price has writ, towards the establishing and clearing of (k) Arthur's Story, so far as it is justly defensible, there does not much remain to be said in Apology for the British History, as to what is related after Cæsar's Time. But one general Objection is, That this History seems all along to represent this Island as a Monarchy, subject to a long Succession of British Kings; whereas it is manifest from the joint Testimonies of Cæsar, Tacitus, Dion Cassius, and even Gildas, who was a British Writer himself, and the most ancient of any we have now extant, that the ancient Britains were subject to many Kings, and that the Romans at last reduced a good Part of the Island into the Form of a Province. To which it may be very well answered, that the principal Scope of this Author, is to give an Account of the Lineal Succession of British Kings from Brutus to Cadwallader, without Regard to their Extent of Territory, or the Actions of other Princes, that were not in this direct Succession. And yet at the same Time the Author acknowledges what this Objection contends for, by naming very frequently the Kings of Cornwall, Albania, Demetia, Venedotia, and other Places; though it was foreign to his Design, to relate the Actions or the Succession

The PREFACE.

No account of Princes in those several little Governments; or to mention all the Proprators or Questors, that were from Time to Time sent hither by the Roman Emperors, to govern the Part that was their Province. So that it is no wonder we have here no Account of the Transactions which Dion Cassius, and Tacitus, have largely related, of such British Princes as were not in the Line of Succession. At the same Time we are also to take Notice of a Distinction he frequently makes Use of, viz. That though there were many Princes, there was but one crowned Head, to which the rest were in some Measure subordinate. And this is partly acknowledged by Cæsar, who says, (1) that the supreme Command was by the common Consent of the British Princes given to Cassibellann, the same whom our Author also places in the Line of British Monarchs. Now this is so far from being a contemptible or groundless Distinction, that upon it chiefly did that wise and great Prince King Edward the First, ground his Claim to a Jurisdiction over the Kingdom of Scotland. For he alleged that from all Antiquity, even from the Foundation of the British Monarchy under Brutus, the Kings of Scotland, and all the other Princes of the Island, had been subordinate to the Kings of England;

(1) De bello Gallico. L. V.
XXXVI. Another general Objection, which has been one great Cause of the present Prejudice against this History, is, that it is intermixed with several Stories that are very absurd and incredible. Now this is a Charge which none of its Advocates deny; but they will not allow the Consequence drawn from it, that therefore these Stories, or even any other Part of the History, were the Invention of the Author: And they think it very great Partiality in learned Men, that they are so severe upon this Author for a Fault, which in the other Writers of that Time they so easily pardon. It is very well known that such fabulous and legendary Stories, were very well receiv’d in those credulous Times, and that the gravest Writers are not exempt from them. I have given one Instance of it already in William of Newburgh, and I could produce a vast Number more from Bede, William of Malmesbury, Matthew Paris, and other ancient Historians, which are now in greatest Credit among us. And Alfred of Beverley, who in his Abridgment of this History (m) proposes to leave out all that exceeded Belief, has

(3) Aluredi Annales, L. 1.
has notwithstanding inferred the Birth of Merlin, the Transformation of Uther Pendragon, and several of the most Romantick and incredible Exploits of King Arthur; after which I think he could have no great Reason, besides Brevity, for omitting the rest of this Strain. It is certain these Stories, how gross soever they may appear now, were very current Traditions among the Welsh, and perhaps too of such established Credit, that our Author or the Translator for him, thought he could not well dispense with the Omission of them, without incurring the Displeasure of his Countrymen. Buchanan (n) has told us the Rise or first Occasion of one of these gross Traditions, viz. Uther's Transformation; which was, that he seeing the Infamy reflecting on him by Reason of his Wife Igerna, could not be concealed; to the End he might extenuate it, they broached a Tale not much unlike that which had been acted in Theatres, about Jupiter and Alcmena, That Uther by the Art of Merlin was changed into the Shape of Gorlois, and so had his first Night's Lodging with Igerna. And this Instance alone may suffice to shew, that these Tales were not invented at the Pleasure of the Author,

(n) Hist. rerum Scot. L. V.
Author, as are those in Romances; but such as were then vulgarly believed, and handed down to Posterity.

XXXVII. But after all, the Prejudice this History at present lies under, with Respect to what it relates after the coming of Cæsar, is but inconsiderable, had the former Part of the Story been but omitted; for it is this chiefly that destroys the Credit of all the rest. The Objections of Camden's learned Men are levelled only against this Part; and the chief Intention of this Discourse is to apologize for it. "Their first Objection, says Camden, (o) "they draw from the Age wherein the Things here related, are said to have been done, and peremptorily assert that all is purely fabulous (the sacred Histories excepted) whatsoever is delivered by Historians, as done before the first Olympiad, i.e. the Year 770 before the Birth of our Saviour. Now the Things which are told us, concerning Brutus, precede that Period by above three hundred Years. This Exception they ground upon the Authority of Varro, the most Learned among the Roman Writers, with whom the first Period of Time, which was from the Creation to the Deluge, "bears

(o) Britannia. p. VI.
The PREFACE. lxxiii

"bears the Title of "Ανωτ, i. e. obscure "and uncertain, so called from our Ignorance of the Transactions of those Times. The second which was from the Deluge "to the first Olympiad, he calls Μυθικα, "i. e. fabulous, because most of those His- "tories are fabulous, even of the Greek "and Roman Authors, the learned Part of "the World, much more among a barbarous and unlearned People, such as were "doubtless, in those Times, all the Inhabitants of these Northern Parts." But this Objection unfairly represents Varro's Notion; who (p) does not say, that most of the Histories of the Muthick Age, but only that many Things related in it are fabulous; and much less does he draw such a Consequence or rather Inconsistency from it, as that all is purely fabulous whatsoever is delivered by Historians before the first Olympiad; thus contrary to all the Rules of Logick making the Conclusion more extensive than the Premisses. What he chiefly intended was no Doubt the Fables invented by Greek Poets, concerning their Gods and Hero's, in which notwithstanding are preserved some Lines of true History, and at the same Time are couched (according to the Opinion of very learned Men)

(a) See Censorinus de die natali. Cap. 21.
The PREFACE.

Men) the Mysteries of all Philosophy. But even the true History (letting apart all Fables) of Greece it self is, by the Consent of all Writers, allowed to be much ancierter than the Olympiads; and much ancieter still is what they called the Barbarick History, viz. of the Egyptians, Scythians, Chaldeans, Phenicians, and some other Nations. Otherwise in vain do we set so great a Value upon what Herodotus, Diodorus Siculus, Justin, and others, who would not be thought Writers of Fables, have delivered concerning those ancient Times.

XXXVIII. And as to the Northern Nations, among whom this Objection supposes a greater Barbarity and Ignorance reigned, it is well known that the Swedes, the most Northern of European Nations, and most remote from the ancient Seats of Knowledge, pretend to run up their History to the Deluge, or at least to Eric the First, whom they suppose to have lived within two hundred Years after it. But let it be granted, that the Vanity of Nations in boasting the Antiquity of their Original, may have carried them into an excessive and unwarrantable Credulity; the People of this Nation at least seem to have a plausible Pretence to some Knowledge of their Original, and of the Transactions of those more ancient Times, since (as I shall presently shew) they
they always had among them Men of great Attainments in the most sublime Parts of Knowledge. Admitting also that the Story of those Times is very imperfect, and intermixed with Fables, it is too great a Disregard of Antiquity, to give it up entirely, and represent all that vast Tract of Time as a mere Chaos. For that grave and excellent Historian Livy, though he (q) owns himself in Suspence, and would neither undertake to assert nor confute, what had been deliver'd concerning the Roman History before the Building of Rome, as being Traditions which he saies are founded rather upon Poetical Fables, than any uncorrupt Monuments of the Actions that were done, did not however think it below him to relate them such as they were. But Camden on the contrary (r) builds so much upon the Authority of this misrepresented Notion of Varro, concerning the three distinct Periods of Time, that for our Affairs he has assigned a much shorter Period, and would not have our Historians begin their Histories of this Island any higher than Caesar's Attempt upon it. And thus he not only excludes the whole Lift of ancient British Kings, but also those of Scotland too from the Time of

of King Fergus, who was contemporary with Alexander the Great; a Crime which the Scots will not easily forgive him, who pretend to have very authentick Accounts of their Affairs from the Reign of that Prince, and upon them build (what they so much value themselves upon) the Antiquity of their Royal Line. And though this Advice of Camden has been followed by the Generality of our Historians since his Time; yet Milton gives no contemptible Reasons for his own Conduct in pursuing the old beaten Tract, by alledging (f) that we cannot be easily discharg'd of Brutus and his Line, with the whole Progeny of Kings, to the Entrance of Julius Caesar; since it is a Story supported by Descents of Ancestry, and long continued Laws and Exploits, not plainly seeming to be borrowed or devised, which on the common Belief, have wrought no small Impression; and also defended by many, and deny'd utterly by few. And he concludes with saying, "Those old and inborn Names of successive Kings, never any to have been real Persons, or done in their Lives at least some Part of what hath been so long remembred, cannot be thought without too strict an Incredulity.

XXXIX.

(f) Milton's Hist. of Britain, B. I.
XXXIX. But in the next Place, Camden's learned Men alledge, (t) "That this "Relation, viz. of Brutus and his Suc-"cessors in those ancient Times, is not
"confirmed by the Authority of any pro-"per Writer, which in all History must
"be allow'd to be the Thing most mate-"rial. Now they call those proper Wri-
ters, who have Antiquity and Learning
"agreeable; and in Proportion to thofe
"they give more or lefs Credit. But to
"all this Sort of Authors, as well as to the
"ancient Britains themselves, they confi-
dently aver, that the very Name of
"Brutus was perfectly unknown." And
some have carried this Objection still far-
ther, by representing the ancient Britains
as a rude, simple, and ignorant People,
and consequently uncapable of transmitting
the Memory of their Original, or of the
Transactions of their Times to Posterity.
In Answer to this, I have shewn already,
that the Memory of Brutus was preserved
by a British Writer as ancient as the Days
of Claudius the Emperor; and also have
given Instances of Some other Writers that
are yet extant, by whom it was transmit-
ted to after Ages. And it has been shewn
by the Advocates of the British History,
that

(t) Britann. p. VII.
that it is unreasonable to expect Authors of much greater Antiquity for Vouchers of this Story. For the Beginning of these Transactions was but a few Years after the Destruction of Troy, when Greece itself had none that could be properly call'd Historians, and only a few Poets, who sung the Praises of their Gods and Hero's. And as the Historians of Greece derived their Knowledge of those ancient Times from them; so it is probable the first British Historians, whoever they were, took their first Memoirs from the Songs of their Bards, whose Business, in like Manner as that of the ancient Grecian Poets, was to make Enquiry into the Genealogies and noble Exploits of their great Men, to celebrate them in Heroick Verse, and sing them to their Harps. It would be needless to shew the Antiquity of this Order of Men among the Britains, since it is acknowledged by all: And it has been through all succeeding Ages kept up among them, and not yet quite wore out among the Welsh.

XL. But besides these Songs of the Bards, which all the Welsh Writers agree gave an Account of Brutus and the succeeding British Kings, the Author of this History quotes other Historians, extant before his own Time, for some Part of what he relates. And it is thought the whole History is only a Collection from the Songs of the Bards, the Writings
Writings of Gildas, and other British Historians. And though these Histories are not now to be found, the Author ought no more to be charged with Forgery or Invention upon that Score, than is Herodotus or any other ancient Historian, who at present wants Vouchers as well as he, the former Writers concerning those Times being now lost. And we may upon the same Grounds look upon the History of Alexander the Great as a Romance, because the Writers of it, viz. Curtius, Plutarch and Arrian, did not live till several Hundred Years after his Death, and nothing now remains of those ancient Writers from whom they collected it. That there was such a British Writer as Gildas, who treated of the Contention between Lud and Nennius, who translated the Molmutian Laws out of British into Latin, and also related other Particulars about the Times before the coming of Caesar, and that he was a different Person from Gildas Sapiens, cannot reasonable be doubted. The Words of Nennius already quoted, shew the ancient Britains had both Writings and Traditions concerning their Affairs, and it was from them he extracted his Account of Brutus. Why may it not then be thought, that Gildas was one of those Writers, especially since some of his Pieces now lost are mentioned by Hoveden, Lilius Giraldu, and Virunnius,
Virunnius, and that we have the joint testimonies of Leland, Bale, and Pitts, that the Treatises ascribed to him in this History were his genuine Works? But in Opposition to all this Camden alledges, that the other Gildas, surnamed Sapiens, who was a Britain, and whose small Treatise de Excidio Britanniae is yet extant, (u) "declares himself not well satisfied whether the ancient Britains had any Records or Writings at all, wherein they had transmitted their History and Original to Posterity. And therefore he plainly confesses, (x) That he took all out of Foreign Writers, and not out of any Writings or Records left by his own Countrymen. For if there had been any such, they were in his Time quite lost, having either been burnt by the Enemy at Home, or carried away by the Exiles into Foreign Parts." Now admitting this Testimony of Gildas, what hinders but that even according to him there might have been some Pieces of the ancient British History carried over into Foreign Countries? For this British History it self, though writ after the Time of Gildas, was brought from Armorica, and perhaps originally compiled there

there out of ancienter Writers, which according to this Testimony might have been carried abroad, and most likely of all to Armorica the Seat of the British Exiles. Admitting, again, that on Account of the long Wars and Confusions in Britain, by the Invasions of the Romans, Picts, and Saxons, great Destruction had been made of Books, Records and Monuments, from whence their History might be deduced; must therefore so much Authority be allowed to the Testimony of this one Man, as to conclude there were none extant, only because they did not come to his Knowledge? Though he had not met with any such in Britain, Nennius who was his Junior (y) declares he had. It is farther observable, that this is no positive Evidence: He only doubts whether there had been any such Writings or no; for otherwise why does he talk of their being burnt, or destroy’d, or carry’d off into Foreign Countries? But after all there is no great Stress to be laid upon his Testimony: For Leland’s Character of him seems to me to be very just, (z) That he was indeed a pious Monk, and a learned Divine, but was so far from having a thorough Knowledge of the ancient Affairs of

The PREFACE

of Britain, that he has only inserted in his little Book a few Things, and those short, obscure and confused, and, as it were, taken off from the Surface.

And therefore it is unreasonably objected by (a) Polydore Virgil, and (b) Aylet Sammes, that the former Part of this History relating to Brutus and the British Kings must be groundless, because of the Silence of this Author concerning them. For in the first Place it is plain to any one that reads his Book, that his Design was not so much to write the History, as to relate the Calamities of his Country, the better to expose the Vices and notorious Wickedness of his Countrymen, and to shew how justly they had brought those divine Judgments upon themselves. The chief Subject of his Book, is in short a very severe Inveotive against his own Countrymen, and what is historical in him is but an inconsiderable Part of his small Treatise. But besides he proffes, (c) that he purposely omits mentioning what had passed in Britain before the Time of the Romans, and it is only concerning the State of Britain after the Invasion of the Romans, that he uses the Words Camden quotes out of him;

(a) Anglica Historie. Lib. I. (b) Britannia antiqua illustrata. (c) Gildæ Hist. Cap. 2.
him; from whence therefore no Conclusion can be drawn concerning the Books, the Histories, or the Learning of the Britains before that Time.

XLII. There are however very authentic Testimonies concerning the Learning of the ancient Britains, especially among the Druids. And though the Roman Eloquence and Politeness was not introduced among them till the Time of Julius Agricola, yet it is plain from the Confession of the Roman Writers themselves, that as they were a gallant and brave, so were many of them a wise and knowing People, and had from of old been much celebrated for their Attainments in the most solid and useful Parts of Knowledge. The Account Cæsar gives of the Druids is a sufficient Proof of this; since according to him (d) they were the Interpreters of the Mysteries of Religion, the Instructors of the Youth, the Determiners of all publick and private Controversies, as also of Rewards and Punishments, and great Proficients in the most sublime Parts of Philosophy, being such as could make Discourses to their Scholars, concerning the Stars and their Motions, concerning the Magnitude of the Heaven and the Earth,

(d) Cæsar de bello Gallico. L. VI.
the Nature of Things, and the Power and
Majesty of the immortal Gods. And that
Men so curious and knowing in other Things, should be ignorant of one of the most useful Parts of Learning, the History of their own Affairs, or that they should leave no Kind of Memoirs concerning the Transactions of their Times, cannot with any Colour of Reason be pretended. It is indeed alleged by some from this very Passage of Cæsar, that they did not commit their Knowledge to Writing, so that we can have but oral Tradition at the best for any Knowledge we pretend to of those Times. But the Reader may presently be satisfied of the Insufficiency of this Argument, by consulting the Passage itself; from whence it appears, that indeed the Mysteries of their Religion they did not commit to Writing, but caused their Scholars to learn them by Heart; though in all other Matters both publick and private (among which we may justly reckon the History of their Affairs) they used Greek Characters. And if the Britains were capable, and had the Means of transmitting their History to Posterity, before the Time of the Romans, how much more ought we to conclude this of them afterwards, when the Roman Arts and Eloquence came to be in Vogue among them? So that without pretending to give a Catalogue of their Writers
Writers in those ancient Times, as Leland, Bale, and Pitts, have done, it is sufficient for our present Purpose to have shewn, that in all Probability they had Writers, and those of History, too among them.

XLIII. But then here immediately follows another grand Objection, That if the Memory of Brutus, or of the Britains being originally Trojans, had been thus constantly preferred, it can hardly be supposed, but that so curious and learned a Person as Cæsar, or at least some of the Roman Writers would have made mention of it: Whereas in these Points there is among all of them a profound Silence, and rather an Intimation to the contrary, that the Britains were either Aborigines, or Descendents of the Gauls. As to Cæsar's Silence it is answered, that the Stay he made in Britain was short, and that Time spent in Affairs of greater Importance than such Matters of Curiosity; that he neither understood the Language of the Britains, nor perhaps thought such a People as were then reputed Barbarians, capable of giving any Account of their History or Original, or if they did, had little Regard to it; that he composed his Commentaries a long Time after his leaving Britain, when his Invention was to help him out where his Memory failed him, and so propose his Conjectures (suitable to the Notions of the Pagans) concerning the Original,
original, instead of giving any well grounded History of the Britains; and lastly, that his Commentaries themselves were cenured by Afinius Pollio, as being writ neither with Diligence nor Truth. 'And as to all the other Roman Writers, it does not appear that any of them had ever been in Britain, but that they had taken their Accounts of British Affairs from such Memoirs, as had been from Time to Time transmitted to the Emperors by the chief Officers in this Province, if they even had so good Authority as this for what they writ; and it is not to be presumed that these Officers entertained their Masters with such Curiosities, as the ancient History of the Britains, but only informed them of what immediately concerned the State of their own Affairs. So that where we find the Roman Writers digress so far from their Subject, as to treat of the Original of the Britains, we may conclude they had no other Authority for what they said but their own Conjectures, or at best some very uncertain Reports. We find by the false Accounts (e) Tacitus and (f) Justin have given of the Original and Encrease of the Jews, what little Dependance is to be placed

(e) Historiarum. Lib. 5. (f) Pompeij Trogi Epitome Hist. L. 36.
ced on what they relate concerning distant Countries, when those Relations are foreign to the Subject of their own Affairs. And if so great an Historian as Tacitus committed such Errors concerning the Original of so ancient and famous a Nation as that of the Jews, and that a Time when there were a great Number of that Nation at Rome, by whom he might have been better informed; we cannot reasonably expect from him, and much less from the other Roman Writers, who were of a far lower Class, any authentick Account concerning the more obscure, the more remote, and but lately discovered Nation of the Britains, and whereof very few if any beside Captives and Hostages were in their Times at Rome to give them better Information. Now as we believe the Jews in the Subject of their own Affairs more than the Romans; and since there were among the Britains People as capable of writing their own History as the Romans, what Reason can be given why in British Affairs Roman Authors are now solely consultted, and the Writings and Traditions of the ancient Britains wholly neglected and despised?

XLIV. To this perhaps it will be answered, that the very Foundation of this History, which is the Story of Brutus, is inconsistent with what Roman Writers, f4 (who
The PREFACE.

(who in this Point at least must be allowed a greater Authority,) have delivered concerning the Children and Descendants of Æneas; and consequently, that the Superstructure may be justly suspected. For the Roman Historians, and especially Livy, Messala Corvinus, and Dionysius Halicarnassenus, who have been most exact in their Accounts of those ancient Times, make no Mention of Brutus the Son of Sylvius King of the Latins. And it is the Objection of John of Wethamstede, that (g) Man of excellent Judgment, the first Opposer of the Story of Brutus, that Ascanius, according to several Authors, had no Son whose proper Name was Sylvius. For they give us an Account of but one that ever he had, to wit, Julius, from whom afterward the Julian Family had its Original. But to all this Sir John Price (h) has very well answered, That though the Roman Writers make no mention of Brutus the Son of Sylvius; yet we ought not to pay so much Deference to their Authority, as to argue, that whatever they have passed over in Silence concerning Matters, whereof indeed they do not profess to treat, must be false and groundless. For it being the chief Business

---

Business of those Authors, only to mention those of the Royal Race who succeeded to the Kingdom of Italy, it was foreign to their Purpose to relate what other Children they had. And even this Point itself of the direct Succession of their Princes, was a Matter of so great Antiquity and Obscurity, that they do not agree, whether Sylvius, who, we say, was the Father of Brutus, was the Son or Grandson of Aeneas. And if they were uncertain of the Matter of which they professedly treat, we cannot expect much Light from them concerning Brutus or any other collateral Children, whom they had no Occasion to mention. Notwithstanding this hinders not, but that the Britains might have more carefully transmitted to Posterity the Memory of their illustrious Founder.

XLV. Buchanan's Objections will give us no great Trouble, most of them being Chimerical and foreign to the Subject, though proposed by him with an Air of Triumph. He pretends to confute the Story of Brutus by the Circumstances of it; a very improper Undertaking for one who knew so little of it, and in all Probability (as Sheringham (i) observes) had never read it. Neither do its Advocates contend for the Truth of

of all its Circumstances, some of them allowing that it is set off and adorned with a Mixture of Poetical Fiction, but yet so as that there is a Foundation of Truth, which is even allow'd in most Poems and Romances. He begins with Queries, that evidently shew his Ignorance of the Story; viz. (k) With what Forces, with what Commerce of Language could this Brutus, whom he stiles the Parricide, penetrate so far into Britain? And again, Whether came he by Land or by Sea? The History itself is clear enough in all these Points; and his Business was to confute the Relation as it really is, and not to start Objections against a Story of Brutus, that he had only form'd in his own Imagination. But his Endeavour is to shew how difficult it was for Brutus to cross the Alps, as supposing him to come directly from Italy; how improbable that such a wild sort of People as the Alban Shepherds, whom he fancies to have been Brutus's Followers, would undertake such a bold Attempt, especially when the Affairs of Italy were at so low an Ebb; and how unlikely they should come so soon to forget their native Latin Tongue. Whereas had he but known so much of the Story, as that Brutus had been

(k) Buchanan Rerum Scoticarum Hf. L. 2.
been banished into Greece; that he came from thence attended, not with Alban Shepherds, but the exiled Trojans of that Country; that his Voyage to Britain was by Sea; and that their Language was a Dialect of the Greek, whereof there is a great Mixture in the Welsh Tongue to this Day; all this Trouble would have been saved, and perhaps he would not have thought any Attempt too hazardous for Men in their desperate Circumstances. And this very Consideration would have solved the Difficulty he objects about their coming by Sea, unless he deny'd also the Voyages of Antenor, Aeneas and Ulysses, which last is said by Solinus (l) to have come as far as this Island, as appeared by a Votive Altar in Caledonia inscribed with Greek Letters.

XLVI. He tells us farther, that he will not be nice in Enquiry why the Oracle of Diana was unknown to Posterity, when the Oracles of Faunus, of Sibylla, and the Prænestine Vaticinations were in so great Credit. But Sheringham, (m) who has been nice in Enquiry, has found that the Oracle of Diana was very well known to the Greeks, and that she was a Goddess worshipped by the Trojans, since according to Strabo, she

The PREFACE.

She (n) had an 'Oracle' in Cilicia, as also in (o) Adrafia a Town of Troas; Nay farther, that, according to Pausanias, she directed the banished Trojans which Way to pursue, when they were in Quest of a new Place of Settlement. Again, because Buchanan had found the Prayer of Brutus to Diana and her Answer to him in Latin Verse, he learnedly shews, that this was a Language not then understood in the World; which was all unnecessary Labour, if he had but known, that the Original Composition was Greek, and that according to (p) Virunnius the Verses were translated out of Greek into Latin. But he supposes that when Brutus first arrived, according to the Answer of Diana's Oracle, the Island must have been uninhabited. A very plain Discovery, says he, of the Monks Forgery! For where then, I pray, were those portentous Figments of Gogmagog and Tintagol, and other frightful Names of Men, invented for Terror shall I say, or Laughter rather? But where did he find this frightful Man Tintagol at Brutus's Arrival, or any Time else? The Truth is, this portentous Figment is nothing but the real Name of a Village in Cornwall, and that not mention'd before the

The PREFACE.

The eighth Book of this History. But is not a confident Ignorance which commits such Blunders, much more ridiculous than any Absurdity in this Book? Taking it also for granted in his own Imagination, that the whole Number of Brutus's Followers would scarce make one mean Colony, he is not able to conceive how they should in the Space of twenty Years, people an Island the biggest in the World, and furnish it not only with Villages and Cities, but set up in it three large Kingdoms also, and in a little Time grow so numerous, that Britain could not contain them, but they were forced to transport themselves into the large Country of Germany. But how did he know they were so mean a Colony? The History tells us, that at their setting out from Greece, they made up a Fleet of three hundred and twenty four Sail, and that after this they were joined by Corineus and all his Followers, and that with all their Forces together they were able to oppose the whole Power of Gaul, before their Arrival here. And as for Villages and Cities he speaks of, we find here the Mention of no other City but London, during Brutus's Reign, nor ever any such Account as the Island being forced to disburthen it self when over-stock'd with Inhabitants. And yet, says he at last, that is, notwithstanding all these
thefe fo pertinent and fo strong Objections, credulous fball I fay? or not rather fottifb Persons, do pride themselves with a pretended Eminency of Original, which none of their Neighbours will envy them for.

XLVII. I have now, according to what I proposed, considered the most material Objections of Camden and other learned Men againft this History; in all which (if we may rely on the Judgment of our moft learned Antiquary Sheringham, who has made the deepest Refearch into the Original as well of the British as of the English Nation, and whose Treatife on this Subject is generally allowed to be the very beft Performance of this Kind) there is nothing of any Moment to shake the Credit of the fundamental Part of this History. And as the fame Author farther observes, there ought more Regard to be had to the ancient Histories of the Britains, than to the Dreams and Conjectures of modern Writers. For thofe that oppofe this History, and look upon this Original of the Britains from Brutus and the Trojans, as an unfulportable Fiction of latter Ages, have no other History to substitute in the Room of it, nor affign any Original that is built on any better Foundation than their own Conjectures: Whereas the Original this History pretends to affign the British Nation, is not only a Notion of very great Antiquity,
and supported by the Testimonies of many Ages, and of a vast Number of Authors, but also in itself more probable than any new Conjecture whatsoever, when all Circumstances are considered.

XLVIII. We have the joint Testimonies of many ancient Authors, that the Fame of the Trojan War drew together great Numbers of People from most Nations of the World, either to the Seige, or to the Defence of that renowned City; and that the Trojans themselves upon the Ruin of their State, being forced to quit their native Country, came to be dispersed through several Nations. Some of them joined together in a Body, and followed the Fortunes of their chief Commanders, in Order to find some new Place of Settlement: Others retreated with those Nations that had been their Auxiliaries, and so perhaps incorporated themselves with them: And others again were led Captives by the Enemy. So that it is no Wonder if after this War there were several new Colonies of them in many Nations of the World; and what Pretensions some Part of the Gauls, and even of the English themselves, may have to a Trojan Original, the Reader may see in (q) Sheringham. But the two chief

\(2\) De Angl. gentis Orig. Cap. 6.
Trojan Leaders, that fought for a new Settlement, were Antenor and Aeneas; the former of which was the Founder of the Venetians, the other of the Romans; and that these two Nations justly lay Claim to a Trojan Original, is what very few deny; and yet they have no other Support for it but ancient Poetical Tradition, the Original of History itself, especially among the Romans, being much later than the Times when those Colonies first settled there. And why are not the constant and uninterrupted Traditions of the Bards, as good an Argument for us to believe, that Brutus being banished into Greece, brought from thence into Britain a Colony of the Trojans, that had been kept in Slavery there, especially if we consider the many Circumstances that corroborate these Traditions?

XLIX. Sheringham has very learnedly shewn, that the ancient Britains wrote the same Character, spoke nearly the same Language, had the same Notions of Religion, and the same Manners and Customs, as the Greeks, and consequently as the Trojans, since the Difference between those two Nations in these Particulars was but very small, as all learned Men agree. That the ancient Britains, especially the Druids, used Greek Letters in the Matters they thought fit to communicate, I have already,
already shown from Cæsar. And as to the great Affinity between the British and Greek Language, that is the Subject of a Dictionary, and not of a Discourse of this Nature. The curious Reader may be satisfied in this Point, by consulting Dr. Davies's Dictionary, or Mr. Parry's Essay towards a British Etymologicon. Let it only be observed in general, that as the Author of this History informs us, the Britains at their first Arrival in this Island spoke the Trojan Language, which he calls Græcum curvum, that is, a rough Dialect of the Greek Tongue; so the chief Difference still between a great Number of Words of the Welsh and Greek Language, wherein any Affinity is discovered, consists in this, that those of the former have a more rough or harsh Sound than the latter. As to the Religion of the Britains; the Druids, who were the Ministers of it, derived both their Name and in some Part their Institution from the Greeks. Pliny the Elder acknowledges the Greek Etymology of the Name, telling us (r) how they chose out Groves of Oaks, and performed no Rites of their Religion without Oaken Leaves, so that from hence, according to Greek Interpretation, they seem to have derived the Name of

(r) Published in Mr. Lloyd's Archæologia Britannica. Tit. 8.  
of Druids; the Greek Word for an Oak being Δεῦς, and the British Derwen. And the Institution of Druids resembles very much that of the Nymphs called the Dryades, whom the ancient Greeks supposed the Presidents of Trees and especially Oaks, called for this Reason by the Romans Nympha querquetulana. And not only the Name and Institution, but the Doctrine also of the British Druids, was conformable to that of the Greeks. They had according to Cæsar (u) the same Notions of the Gods, and of their several Offices, and taught in like Manner the Doctrine of the Transmigration of Souls. Britains as well as Greeks had their Poets or Bards, to celebrate in Verse the Exploits, the Marriages, and funeral Exequies of their great Men; and both Nations made Use of military Chariots in their Wars. And Sir John Price (x) observes from Giraldus Cambrensis, that many ancient Names of Trojans and Grecians are preserved among the Welsh to this Day; as Oeneus, Rhesus, Æneas, Hector, Achilles, Heliodorus, Theodorus, Ajax, Evander, Ulysses, Helena, Elissa, Wendolana; to which Sheringham (y) has added Paris, Mynes, Deichius, Hyllus, Cobus, which Answer to Par, Myn, Dich, Hyll, Cob. And these last men-

The PREFACE.

mention'd Names he shews have a great Affinity with the British Language. For Par in British signifies a Spear; Myn a Kid, Dish strong and mighty, Hyll fierce, Cob one that beats or knocks down. And if a Resemblance in these and the like Instances, shall be esteemed too weak an Argument for us to conclude these two Nations were originally the same; let it only be balanced with what Camden (z) has alleged in Support of his Conjecture, viz. That the Britains were originally the same Nation with the Gauls; or with what Bochart and Aylet Sammes have with much lefs Shew of Reason pretended, of their being the Descendants of the ancient Phoenicians. These have no other Support for their Conjectures, but a Resemblance in some few Instances of this Kind: Whereas in Confirmation of the Trojan Original, not only the Resemblance of the Britains and Greeks is found greater in itself, but the Thing is also testified so to be in Fact by ancient History and Tradition.

L. But besides these Probabilities and Testimonies concerning this Trojan Original, if we look upon it only as a Conjecture, it is at least not liable to so great an Objection, as is that which Camden proposes,
poses, whatever kind Reception his has met with. For the Britains and Gauls were neighbouring Nations, and main-tained a constant Intercourse and Commerce with each other. The Britains, if we may believe Cæsar, (a) assisted the Gauls in all their Wars; and the Gauls (b) on the other Hand sent their Youth into Britain, to be instructed in the Learning of the Druids, which Order of Men had their Original in Britain, and was from thence carry'd over into Gaul. It is no Wonder therefore if there was found some Affinity in the Customs and Languages of these two Nations. But this is no more an Argument that the Britains and Gauls were originally the same People, than that the English and French were; because they have also the same if not a greater Affinity in their Customs and the Words of their Language. Whereas such an Affinity between two so remote Nations as the Britains and Greeks, must be an Argument, either that they had the same Origin, at least that a considerable Colony of the Greeks or Trojans came hither, and intermixed themselves with the other People of this Island; or that they maintained a Correspondence and Communication toge-ther.

(a) De bello Gall. L. IV. (b) Ibid. L. VI.
Now the Grecians had no Knowledge of the Britains till very late; for the Testimony of Dion Cassius (c) is very full to this Purpose; viz. "That Britain was not so much as discovered by the old Greeks and Romans, and that the Moderns of them question whether it were a Continent or Island; that much was written on both Sides by some who had no certain Knowledge, as having neither seen the Country, nor learned the Nature of it from the Inhabitants, but relying solely on those Conjectures they had made, as they had Time or Diligence to study it." From hence by the Bye we may again observe, what little Dependance is to be placed on the Accounts of Grecian and Roman Authors, concerning the first Inhabitants of this Island. Indeed Leland (d) says, it is manifest from the Testimony of Aristotle in his Book de Mundo, that Britain was at first called Olbion or Albion: And this he alludes in Vindication of the Account given of its ancient Name in the British History. But then we are to conclude also, that the ancient Greeks had some Knowledge of this Island, above three hundred Years before the Roman Invasion. Now Camden will extricate

(c) L. 39. (d) Vide Sheringham de Angl. gent. Orig. p. 385.
extricate us from this Difficulty, since according to him, (e) the Tract \textit{de Mundo}, which goes for Aristotle's, and makes Mention of the Britains of Albion or Hierna, is not so old as Aristotle, but of far later Date, as the Learned think. And though we should admit ancient Greek Authors were entirely ignorant of this Island, and that the Grecians had little or no Communication with the Britains; this is no Reason why a Colony of Trojans might not at first have arrived in Britain from Greece. For neither were the Romans, who were undoubtedly at first a Trojan Colony, known to Herodotus and the ancient Greeks, tho' they lived much nearer them, and were then grown to a great Degree of Power and Eminence among their Neighbours. Nor is it probable that the Britains, if indeed they were originally Trojans, would at first hold any Intercourse with the Grecians who were their mortal Enemies.

I. Now as to the Memory of Brutus, the Leader of the Trojan Colony, and Founder of the British Monarchy, that is still preserved in the Name of Britain. It is certain this was the Name of the Island given it by the Natives themselves, long before the Roman Invasion; and the Britains agree

(e) \textit{Britannia}, p xxxvii. See also Usher's \textit{Primordia}, Cap.16.
agree that it was derived from Brutus their Founder. Let all other Conjectures concerning the Etymology of this Name be examined; and they will be found not only new and unknown to ancient Authors, but indeed of much less Probability than this. Camden himself rejects the Fictions of Foreigners in this Matter as extremely ridiculous, and owns our own Countrymen, as Sir Thomas Eliot, and Humphrey Lhvyd, give us no very satisfactory Account of it. And I leave the learned Reader to judge, whether his own new Account is any Thing more satisfactory, viz. (f) That Britain was so called from Brith, which in the British Language signifieth Painted, and that because the Britains used to paint their Bodies. This Original is disliked both by Somner and Caubon, whose Reasons are briefly given by the learned Dr. Gibson, now Bp. of Lincoln, in his Notes upon this Passage of Camden’s Britannia. Now in like Manner as the Name of Britain preferved the Memory of Brutus, so did Trinovantum that of Troy: And we may observe from Livy, (g) that it was the Custom of the exiled Trojans, upon their Settlement in any Place, to call the first Town they built by the Name of Troy;
The PREFACE.

fo dear was the Memory of that City to them. And again, that Albania was so called, from Albanæc the Son of Brutus, the most ancient (b) Scotch Writers agree, Why should it then be esteemed an Absurdity to conclude, that the other ancient British Names of Places are Indications of those Princes by whom this History declares they were founded, as of Ebraucus, Leil, Leir, Belinus and the rest? We have nothing but the Fancies of modern Authors to oppose to all these Etymologies, which are too weak Reasons to overthrow such ancient and established Traditions. And especially as to the Original of the Name of London, what more probable Reason can be given for the Change of its former Name of Trinovantum for this modern one, than that which is assigned by this (i) History? That the ancient Britains called it Caer-Lud, or the City of Lud, is sufficiently known; and the Change of Lud into Land Dr. Davies (k) easily accounts for from the Nature of the British Language. All ancient Writers agree upon this Original, and the Statue which has been from of old placed upon the Gate that bears the Name of Lud, is an Indication

cation that he was at least the Builder of it, if not the Beautifier of the rest of the City, as this History pretends. And why should so much Honour have been paid to his Memory in particular for so many Ages, unless for the Reason this History assigns? But these Points are more fully discussed by Sir John Price (l) and Sheringham, (m) to which for Brevity's Sake I refer the Reader.

LII. But besides the ancient Names of Places, that serve to perpetuate the Memory of the first Kings of this Island, there are yet remaining other Indications of them. And here to say nothing of the High-Ways of Belinus; whereof there are considerable Remains to this Day, because some modern Writers will have them made by the Romans, though they cannot tell by whom, nor at what Time, nor for what Reason; what can be a more clear Indication that there were such Persons, who reigned among the ancient Britains, as Molmutius and Martia, than the Laws which bear their Names, and are in Force among us to this very Day? Many ancient Writers inform us, that the Laws of Dunwallo Molmutius, were first translated out of British

The PREFACE.

Till into Latin by Gildas; and Leland (n) shews how much they were valued not only by the ancient Britains, and their Descendants the Welsh, even till the Time that their Country was reduced under Subjection to the Crown of England by King Edward the First; but also by the Kings among the Saxons, as Ethelbert King of Kent, Ina and Alfred of the West Saxons, and Edward the third King of that Name among the Saxons; who when they instituted Laws for the publick Good, consulted, by the Assistance of a Latin Translator, the Molmutian Decrees, as most ancient and necessary, and at last enjoined the strict Observation of those they judged convenient, together with other new ones, to the Saxons. But the Diligence of the famous King Alfred was much greater in this Matter, who, according to Higden, translated into Saxon both the Molmutian and Martian Laws, and called them Mercenelaga, adding to them the Laws of the West Saxons, and Danes; and of these three Edward the Confessor composed the common Law of England, which are called King Edward's Laws to this Day. And besides the Testimonies of ancient Writers in this Point, the Thing, says Sheringham, (o) speaks itself. For the many British Words that occur in the Saxon Laws,

Laws, as Murther, Denizon, Rout and several others, are an abundant Confirmation that the British Laws were translated into Saxon. Now all these Things being duly considered, we may I think safely conclude, that notwithstanding the vast Destruction that has been made of the Monuments of Antiquity, by length of Time, and the great Revolutions and Confusions that have so frequently happened in this Island, yet that there are still remaining sufficient Indications of some Things that were transacted before the Roman Invasion, and at least some Foundation of Truth discoverable in the Ruins of this ancient Story of Brutus and his Successors.

LIII. To conclude then this most material Point concerning Brutus, I might now shew the almost universal Content and Confirmation, that both English and Scotch Historians and other learned Men have given to it, from the Time this History was first published till the Beginning of the last Century, and several of the last Century also. But such a long Recital of Testimonies would be very tiresome both to myself and the Reader. Let it suffice therefore in the last Place to shew, that this Story, however contemptible it appears to some at present, has been judged authentick by King Edward the First, and all the Nobility of this Kingdom, and alledged as such
such in a Controversy of the greatest Importance, and that too without any Objection against its Authority by the contrary Party concerned in that Controversy. For upon that most famous Dispute in his Time, concerning the Subjection of the Crown of Scotland to that of England, which was afterwards the Occasion of those long and bloody Wars both Kingdoms were involved in, the King wrote to Pope Boniface the Eighth, to whom the Scots had apply'd for Redress, and alleged in Defence of his Right, that from all Antiquity the direct and superior Dominion of Scotland had always belonged to his Crown; and was in these Allegations seconded by all his Nobility, to which they also set their Seals. So much of the Kings Letter as relates to this History, I shall here insert from Walsingham, (p) translated into English from Latin, in which it was originally composed.

LIV. "About the Time of Eli and Samuel the Prophet, a valiant and famous Man of the Trojan Nation, named Brutus, after the Destruction of Troy, arrived with many of the Trojan Nobility at a certain Island then called Albion, inhabited by Giants, and having routed and slain them with his Forces, he called it after

"after his Name Britain, and his Companions Britons, and built a City which he named Trinovantum, now called London, and afterwards divided his Kingdom between his three Sons; viz. To Locrin his first-born he gave that Part of Britain which is now called England, and to Albanæt his second Son that Part, which was from him named Albania, now Scotland, and to Cambær his youngest Son that Part, which after his Name was called Cambria, now Wales, referring to Locrin the Royal Dignity. Two Years after the Death of Brutus, arrived in Britain a certain King of the Huns named Humber, and flew Albanæt the Brother of Locrin; at which News Locrin King of the Britons pursuèd him, and he in his Flight was drowned in the River, which is called after his Name Humber; and so Albania return'd to Locrin. Also Dunwallæo King of the Britons preferred Sate rus to be King of Scotland, and upon his rebelling caufed both him and his Kingdom to be surrender'd up to him. Also the two Sons of Dunwallæo, Belinus and Brennius, divided their Fathers Kingdom between them, in such fort that Belinus the Elder possessed the Crown of the Island, with Britain, Wales and Cornwall; and Brennius the Younger held the Kingdom of Scotland under him; the Trojan Con-
The PREFACE.

"Constitution requiring, that the Hereditary Dignity should go to the First-born. Also Arthur King of the Britons, a most renowned Prince, subdued Scotland when in Rebellion against him, and almost destroy'd the whole Nation; and afterwards advanced one Anselm to be King of Scotland. And when after this, the same King Arthur made his most famous Feast at the City of Legions, all the Kings that were subject to him were present at it, amongst whom Anselm King of Scotland, doing Homage for the Kingdom of Scotland, carried King Arthurs Sword before him. All the Kings of Scotland have successively been subject to all the Kings of the Britons.

I.V. Sheringham very well (q) remarks upon this Letter, that so prudent a King would not have writ such Things to the Pope, unless they had been delivered in publick and authentick Records, or in Memoirs and Histories of well approved Authority. So great a King would not have made himself the Subject of Laughter for his Enemies, or produced empty Fictions and old Wives Fables for Vouchers of his Right, which could only injure his Cause, and not establish it. It is reasonable to believe, that what

(q) De Angl. gentis Orig. 130.
what he allledged was extracted from authentick Writings, and also such as were known and approved of by the Scots, who might have otherwise rejected them with Scorn and Laughter. But so far were they from this, that the Scotch Historians before Buchanan relate the same Things the Britains do, concerning the Coming of Brutus into this Island, and concerning Scotland being formerly called Albania from Alba nach the second Son of Brutus, as King Edward had pleaded. And even Buchanan, as much an Enemy as he shews himself to the Story of Brutus, does in his History very much confirm, and more largely explain, several Passages in the British History, from the Time of the first Scottish King Fergus, which was 330 Years before Christ, till after the Death of King Arthur. But now according to Camden and his Adherents, King Edward must have made a most ridiculous Plea in this grand Controversy, as alllegend for the first and principal Argument for his Claim, this Story of Brutus, that it seems had no better Foundation than the Invention of an obscure Monk, and no greater Antiquity than about 170 Years at that Time.
A LIST OF THE SUBSCRIBERS TO THIS BOOK.

Subscribers for several Books are distinguished by an Asterisk before their Names, and those for Royal Paper by a Dagger after them.

A.

His Grace the Duke of St. Albans. +
Gilbert Affleck, Esq;
Mr. Alleyn of Queen's College, Oxon.
Rev. Mr. George Antrobus, A. M. Vicar of Kingsbury, Warwicksh.
Mr. Theophilus Armit, Merchant of London.

h Richard
A List of the

Richard Arnold, Esq; †
Rev. Mr. John Appleton, Schoolmaster of Wrexham.
Rev. Dr. Aftrey, Chaplain to the Bishop of London.
Rev. Mr. Atkinson, Fellow of Queen's Coll. Oxon.
Rev. Mr. Bedingfield Atterbury.
Rev. Mr. John Aylworth, A. B. of Wadham College, Oxon.

B.

* Right Hon. Earl of Burlington. †
* Right Hon. Countess of Burlington. †

Right Hon. Lady Brook.
Colonel Lee Backwell
Tyringham Backwell, Esq;
Mrs. —— Backwell.
—— Baily, Esq;
Rev. Mr. Baines, Fellow of University Coll. Oxon.

Mr. Triamor Baldwyn.
Mr. — Bave, of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mrs. Elizabeth Beale, of Brockhall, Northamptonshire.
Rev. Mr. — Bell, Chaplain to the Bishop of London.

Mts. Grace Bennet. †
* Mr. William Bentley.
* John Berkley, Esq;
Subscribers to this Book.

Mr. Robert Bignell.
Mr. Bissett, of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. William Blackstone, Apothecary of London.
Rev. Dr. Blake, Sub-Dean of York.
Sir John Bland, Bar. †
Mrs. Bonnel.
* Mr. Jonah Bowyer, Bookseller of London.
Right Hon. Lady Elizabeth Boyle. †
Right Hon. Lady Juliana Boyle. †
Right Hon. Lady Jane Boyle. †
Right Hon. Lady Harriot Boyle. †
Rev. Mr. Richard Boyse, Rector of Berkswell, Warwickshire.
Mrs. Catherine Branch. †
Edward Brewerton, Esq; †
Mr. Brisco, of Queen's College, Oxon.
Rev. Mr. John Brookes, B. D. Warwickshire.
* Mr. Daniel Brown, Bookseller in London.
Mr. John Brown, Surgeon in London.
* Mr. Jonas Brown, Bookseller in London.
Mr. Brown, Gent. Com. of Trinity College, Oxon.

* Hon. Robert Bruce, Esq; †
Hon. and Rev. Henry Brydges, D. D. †
Josiah Burchet, Esq;
Rev. Thomas Byse, D. D.

C.

HIS Grace the Lord Archbishop of Canterbury. †
Her Grace the Duchess of Cleveland. †

Right.
A List of the

Right Hon. Earl of Carnarvon. †
Right Hon. Viscount Castleton. †
Right Hon. Viscount Chetwynd. †
* Right Hon. Lord Carleton. †
Right Hon. James Craggs, Esq.; Principal Secretary of State. †
Hon. Mrs Calthorp. †
Dugall Campbell, Esq;
Thomas Cartwright, of Ayno in Northamptonshire, Esq; †
Walter Cary, Esq; †
Rev. Mr. William Charnley, Vicar of Harbury, Warwickshire.
Charles Cholmondy, Esq; †
Robert Cholmondly, Esq;
Mr. Stanbrook Cholmley.
Mr. Thomas Churchill.
* Walter Churchill, of the Middle Temple, Esq;
Lady Clarges. †
Sir Thomas Clark, Kt.
Mr. Clarke, of Queen's College, Oxon.
* Mr. Francis Clay, Bookseller in London.
* Mr. Henry Clements, Bookseller in London.
Mr. Robert Cocks, Clark of St. Clements Dines, London.
Mr. Collinwood, Gent. Com. of Queen's Coll. Oxon.
Samuel Comes, Esq;
Rev. Mr. George Comyns.
Rev. Mr. Moses Cotterell, A. M. Vicar of Ayno, Warwickshire.
Mr. Cotterell, of Queen's College, Oxon.

— Cotton,
Subscribers to this Book.

Cotton, Esq; 
Mr. Richard Cotton.
Mr. John Crefwell.

D.

His Grace the Duke of Devonshire.
Her Grace the Dutchess of Devonshire.
* Right Hon. Countess of Dalkeith.
Henry Davenport, Esq; 
Mr. Edward Davis, of Ruddals.
Mr. D'oiley, Gent. Com. of Queen's Coll. Oxon.
Mountague Garrard Drake, Esq; 
Edmund Dunch, Esq; 
* Abraham Dupuis, Esq; 
Mr. Joseph Durdon.

E.

Mr. John Edrige.
Rev. Mr. Elliotson, Fellow of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. Alexander English.
Dr. John English.
Capt. —— Evans.
Sir Redmond Everard, Bar. 
* Joseph Eyles, Esq; 
Mrs. Sarah Eyles. 
Lady Eyles.
Mr. Tobias Eysham, Merchant of London.

* Right
A List of the

F.

Right Hon. Earl of Ferrers.
Right Hon. Countess of Ferrers.
Bryan Fairfax, Esq; †
Rev. Mr. John Felthoufe, Rector of Leigh, Staffordshire.
Mrs. Anne Fenn.
Mr. Henry Fenn.
Mr. Fenton, of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. William Fetherstonehaugh.
Rev. Mr. Fletcher, Fellow of Queen's Coll, Oxon.
Mr. Humphrey Foulks, of Marchieviel.
Sir Andrew Fountain, Kt. †
* Lady Fox.
Mrs. Charlotte Fox.
Henry Fox, Esq;
Stephen Fox, Esq; †
Thomas Frederick, Esq; †
Richard Freeman, of Whilton, Northamptonsh.
Esq;
John Friend, M. D †
Rev. Robert Friend, D. D.
Mr. Henry Furness.

G.

Right Hon. Countess of Grantham. †
Sir Samuel Garth, Kt.
Mr. John George, Rev.
Subscribers to this Book.

Rev. Mr. Isaac Gervais of Lismore in Ireland.
Rev. Dr. Gibson, Provost of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. Richard Glynn, Mathemat. Instrument maker in London.
Mr. John Goddard, Merchant of London. ↑
Major William Godolphin.
John Gore, Esq;
Thomas Gore, Esq;
William Gore, Esq;
* Mr. George Graham, Watchmaker in London. ↑.
Richard Graham, Esq; ↑
James Gray, Esq;
  Martin's in the Fields.
* Rev. Mr. Green, Fellow of Queen's Coll. Oxon.
Rev. Mr. George Greenway, Vicar of Offchurch, Warwickshire.
Rev. Mr. John Greenway, of Chadshunt in Warwickshire.
Hon. Mrs. Elizabeth Grevil.
* Rev. Mr. Robert Grisdaie.
Sir Rowland Gwynn, Bar. ↑

R ight Hon Earl of Hertford.
Right Hon. Countess of Hertford.
* Right Hon. Viscountess Hereford.
Right Hon. Lord Harley ↑

H.
A List of the

Rev. Mr. Hall, Fellow of Queen's College, Oxon.
* Mr. John Hall.
Sir John Harpur, Bar. †
* Hon. Lady Harpur. †
George Harrison, Esq.; †
William Harrison, Esq.;
Right Hon. Lady Anne Harvey. †
Michael Harvey, of Combe, in Surrey, Esq.; †
Robert Harvey, of Stockton, Warwick. Esq.; †
Mr. Charles Hayes. †
Mr. Hellier, of Queen's College, Oxon.
* Rev. Mr. Samuel Hemmings.
Mr. John Higden, Merchant of London.
Mrs. Elizabeth Higgins. †
Rev. Mr. Hill, Fellow of Queen's Coll. Oxon.
Mr. Mark Holeman.
Rev. Mr. Holme, Fellow of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. Fisher Holyoake, Attorney in Southam, Warwickshire.
Andrew Hopgood, Esq.;
Sir Richard How, Bar.
Rev. Mr. George Hudson.
Rev. Dr. Hudson, Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxon.
Capt. Robert Hughes.
Mr. William Hughes, of Wadham Coll. Oxon.
Rev. Charles Humphreys, L L. D.
Rev. Mr. John Hunter, Prebendary of Litchfield.
Mr. Hutchinson.

Thomas
Subscribers to this Book.

Thomas Hutton, Esq.; †
John Hyde, Esq;

I.

Theodore Jacobson, Esq;
Mr. Jacques, of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. John Jeffreys.
Lady Jeffreys. †
Mrs. Anne Jeffreys. †
Mrs. Bridget Jeffreys. †
Edward Jeffreys, Esq. †
Mrs. Elizabeth Jeffreys. †
Mrs. Mary Jeffreys. †
Nicholas Jeffreys, Esq. †
* Walter Jeffreys, Esq. †
Walter Jeffreys, of Brecknock, Esq:
* Mr. John Jenkins, Linnen-Draper in London.
* Edward Jennings, Esq.
Hon. Sir John Jennings, Kt. †
Mr. Richard Johnson †
* Rev. Mr. Anthony Jones, A. M.
Right Hon. Lady Catherine Jones. †
Rev. Mr. Emanuel Jones, School-master of Harbury, Warwicksh.
Roger Jones, of Buckland, in Brecknockshire, Esq. †
Rev. Mr. William Jones, Rector of Hafley, Warwicksh.
Mr. William Jones, F. R. S. †
Rev. Mr. Jones, Vicar of Wrexham.
Mrs. —— Iton.                John
A List of the

K.

John Kent, Esq.
Rev. Mr. James King, t
William Knight, Esq. t
William Knight, Esq.

L.

Right Hon. Viscount Lanesbrough t
Right Hon. Viscountess Lanesbrough.
Right Rev. Lord Bishop of London.
* Right Rev. Lord Bishop of Londonderry,
  late of Carlisle. t
Right Rev. Lord Bishop of Lincoln t
Rev. Mr. Thomas Lamplugh, Prebendary of York.
Rev. Mr. Samuel Lancaster.
Rev. John Landen, L L. D.
Mr. Charles Langstaff.
Mr. Langton of Queen's Coll. Oxon.
Rev. Mr. Laurence Leach.
Mr. John Leaves.
Hon. Charles Leigh, Esq;
William Leigh, Esq; t
* Erasmus Lewis, Esq;
Reverend Mr. Thomas Little, of Harbury, Warwickshire.
Mr. Lock, of Queen's College, Oxon.
Laurence Lord, of Cotesford in Oxfordshire, Esq;
Mr. John Lowndes.

* Right
Subscribers to this Book.

M.

Right Hon. Earl of Montrath. ♦
Mr. John Machin, Astronomy Professor of Gresham College.
Mrs. Anne Manning.
Mr. Thomas Matthew, Draper in Daventry.
Mr. Thomas Middleton.
Mrs. Emma Milbourne.
Richard Miller, Esq;
Mr. John Miller.
Thomas Morse, Esq;
John Morice, of Walthamstow in Essex, Esq;
Major Thomas Morice.
William Morice, Esq; ♦
Mrs. Alice Morice.
Rev. Mr. Thomas Morral, A. M., Warwicksh.
Richard Mostyn, Esq,
Mr. Edward Mountague.
Edward Mountney, Esq;
Reverend Mr. Thomas Myles, A. M.

N.

Sir Isaac Newton, Kt. ♦
Rev. Mr. John Nicoll. ♦
Rev. Mr. Nicolson, Fellow of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. Nicolson, of Queen's College, Oxon.

* Her
A List of the

O.

* HER Grace the Dutchess of Ormonde. †
Right Hon. Countess Dowager of Oxford. †
Rev. Mr. Edward Oliver.

P.

Right Hon. Earl of Pembroke. †
Right Hon. Countess of Pembroke. †
William Palmer, of Ladbroke, Warwick. Esq; †
Mrs. Rebecca Pannel.
* Lady Parker. †
Theophilus Parson, Esq;
Mrs. Anne Paftern. †
Mr. James Pavey.
Rev. Mr. John Peirce, Rector of Cotesbrook, Northamptonshire.
* Rev. John Pelling, D. D. Rector of St. Anne's, Westminster. †
Jeremiah Pemberton, Esq;
William Philips, of Brecknock, Esq; †
Robert Pitt, Esq; †
George Pitts, Esq; †
Mrs. Laura Pitts. †
Mr. James Pringle.
Rowland Pughe, M. D. of Wrexham.
Subscribers to this Book.

R.

Right Rev. Lord Bishop of Rochester. †
Rev. Mr. Richardson, A. M.
Mr. Thomas Ridding.
Mr. Charles Riddle. †
Rev. Mr. John Riland, Rector of Sutton Coldfield, Warwicksh.
Mrs. Priscilla Rolls. †
Edward Rolt, Esq;
Mrs. Anne Rolt.
* Rev. Mr. William Ryman, Vicar of Spelsbury, Oxfordshire. †

S.

HER Grace the Dutchess of Somerset. †
Right Hon. Countess of Sandwich.
Right Hon. Countess of Scarborough. †
Right Hon. Earl of Sussex. †
John Sayer, Esq;
Thomas Sergeant, Esq;
Rev. Mr. Abraham Sharp, Chaplain to the Earl of Burlington. †
Mr. John Sharp.
Mr. Arthur Shepherd.
Rev. Mr. John Sheppard, Rector of Brockhall, Northamptonshire.
John Sherlock, of the Middle Temple, Esq;
Rev. Thomas Sherlock, D. D. Dean of Chichester.
A List of the

Rev. Mr. George Simmonds, A. M. Minister of Knolle, Warwickshire.

Henry Smith, Esq;


Mr. Joshua Smith, Bookseller in Stratford upon Avon.

Rev. Mr. Leonard Smith, Rector of Newbold Pacy, Warwickshire.

Mr. Obadiah Smith, Bookseller in Daventry.

* Ralph Smith, Esq; +


Rev Mr. Charles Snape.

Mr. Arthur Sparks.

* Mr. George Strahan, Bookseller in London.

Hon. General Stuart. +

Mr. William Summers.

Hon. Brigadier Sutton. +

T.

Mr. Gilberta Talbot. +

John Talbot, Esq; +

Rev. Mr. Thomas Taylour, of Keinton, Warwickshire.

Rev. Mr. William Taylour, Minister of Daventry.

Mr. Alban Thomas.

Rev. Mr. Jonathan Thompson, Vicar of Bishops Itchington, Warwickshire. +

Thomas Thornton, of Brockhall in Northamptonshire, Esq; Hon.
Subscribers to this Book.

Hon. Mrs. Thynne. †
* Thomas Tickell, Esq; †
Reverend Dr. Took.
Rev. Mr. Joseph Trapp.
* Reverend Mr. Troughbear, Fellow of Queen's College, Oxon.
Rev. Mr. John Troutbeck.
Richard Tyson, M. D.

Edward Ventris, Esq;
Right Hon. Lady Harriot Vere. †

Right Hon. Viscountess Windsor. †
Right Rev. and Right Hon. Lord Bishop of Winchester. †
John Ward, Esq;
Colonel John Watson.
Rev. Mr. William Welsbman, Vicar of Doddord, Northamptonshire.
Right Hon. Lady Elizabeth Wentworth. †
Mr. Robert Wesley.
Rev. Mr. Humphrey Whyle, Vicar of Welsbourn, Warwickshire.
Rev. Mr. Peter Wiggat.
Mr. Edward Wilcox.
Mr. Roger Williams.
A List, &c.

Mr. Williams, A. B. of Queen's College, Oxon.
Mr. Daniel Wilson.
John Wiseman, Esq.
Mr. Henry Wood.
Mr. William Wyld.
Mr. Howel Wynn.

Y.

His Grace the Lord Archbishop of York.
Mr. Tarborough, A. B. of University College, Oxon.
William Tonge, of Brinyorkin in Flintshire, Esq.
After much and frequent consideration with myself, upon my reading the History of the Kings of Britain, I wonder'd that in the Account that Gildas and Bede in an elegant Treatise had given of them, I found nothing said of those Kings who lived here before the Incarnation of Christ, nor of Arthur.
and many others who succeeded after the Incarnation; when yet their Actions both deserved immortal Fame, and were also celebrated by many People in a pleasant Manner and by Heart, as if they had been written. Being often intent upon these and such like Thoughts, Walter, Archdeacon of Oxford, a Man of great Eloquence, and learned in foreign Histories, offer'd me a very ancient Book in the British Tongue, which in a continued regular Story and elegant Stile, related the Actions of them all, from Brutus the first King of the Britains, down to Cadwallader the Son of Cadwalla. At his Request therefore, though I had not made fine Language my Study, by collecting florid Expressions from other Authors, yet contented with my own homely Stile, I undertook the Translation of that Book into Latin. For if I had swell'd the Pages with Rhetorical Flourishes, I must have tir'd my Readers, by employing their Attention more upon my Words, than upon understanding the History. To you therefore Robert Earl of Glocester, this Work humbly sues for the Favour, of being so corrected by your Advice, that it may not be thought the poor Offspring of Jeffrey of Monmouth, but when polish'd by your refined Wit and Judgment, the Production of him who had Henry the glorious King of England for his Father, and whom we see an accomplish'd Scholar and Philo-
Philosopher, as well as a brave Soldier and expert Commander; so that Britain with Joy acknowledges, that in you she enjoys another Henry.

C H A P. II.

A Description of Britain; who were its first Inhabitants.

Britain, the best of Islands, is situated in the Western Ocean, between France and Ireland, being eight hundred Miles long, and two hundred broad. It produces every Thing that is for the Use of Man, with a Plenty that never fails. It abounds with all Kinds of Metals, and has Champions of large Extent; and Hills fit for the finest Tillage, the Richness of whose Soil affords variety of Fruits at their Seasons. It has also Forests well stor'd with all Kinds of wild Beasts, in the Lawns whereof Cattle find good Change of Pasture, and Bees variety of Flowers for Honey. Under its lofty Mountains lie green Meadows pleasantly situated, in which the gentle Murmurs of Crystal Springs gliding along clear Channels, give those that lye on their Banks an agreeable Invitation to Slumber. It is likewise well water'd with Lakes and Rivers abounding.
with Fife; and besides the narrow Sea which is on the Southern Coast towards France, there are three noble Rivers, which it stretches out like three Arms, viz. the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber; by which foreign Commodities from all Countries are brought into it. It was formerly adorn'd with eight and twenty Cities, of which some are in Ruins and Desolate, others are yet standing, beautify'd with lofty Towers of Churches, wherein is perform'd religious Worship according to the Christian Institution. It is lastly inhabited by five different Nations, the Britains, Romans, Saxons, Picts and Scots; whereof the Britains before the Rest did formerly possess the whole Island from Sea to Sea, till divine Vengeance punishing them for their Pride, made them give Way to the Picts and Saxons. But in what Manner, and from whence they at first arriv'd here, remains now to be relate'd in what follows.

CHAP. III.

Brutus being banish'd after the killing of his Parents, goes into Greece.

After the Trojan War, Aeneas flying with Ascanius from the Destruction of their City, fail'd to Italy. There he was honour-
honourably receiv'd by King Latinus, which rais'd him the Envy of Turnus King of the Rutuli, who thereupon made War against him. Upon their engaging in Battle Æneas got the Victory, and having kill'd Turnus obtain'd the Kingdom of Italy, and with it Lavinia the Daughter of Latinus. After his Death Ascanius succeeding in the Kingdom, built Alba upon the Tyber, and begat a Son named Sylvius, who in pursuit of a private Amour, took to Wife a Neice of Lavinia whom he got with Child. The Father Ascanius coming to the Knowledge of it, commanded his Magicians to consult of what Sex the Damnel had conceiv'd. They satisfy'd of the Event told him she was big of a Boy, who would kill his Father and Mother, and after travelling over many Countries in Banishment, would at last arrive at the highest Pitch of Glory. Nor were they mistaken in their Prediction; for at the Time of Travel the Woman brought forth a Son, and died of his Birth; but the Child was deliver'd to a Nurfe and called Brutus.

At length after fifteen Years were expir'd, the Youth accompany'd his Father in Hunting, and kill'd him undesignedly by the Shot of an Arrow. For as the Servants were driving up the Deer towards them, Brutus in levelling a Shot at them smote his Father under the Breast. Upon his Death
Death he was expell'd Italy, his Kinsmen being enrag'd at him for so heinous a Fact, Thus banish'd he went into Greece, where he found the Posterity of Helenus Son of Priamus, kept in Slavery by Pandrasus King of the Grecians. For after the Destruction of Troy, Pyrrhus the Son of Achilles, had brought hither in Chains Helenus and many others; and to revenge on them the Death of his Father, had given Command for their being held under Captivity. Brutus finding they were by Descent his old Countrymen, took up his Abode among them, and began to distinguish himself by his Conduct and Bravery in War, so as to gain the Affection of Kings and Commanders, above all the young Men of the Country. For he was esteem'd a Person of great Capacity both in Counsel and War, and signaliz'd his Generosity to his Soldiers, by beftowing among them all the Money and Spoil he got. His Fame therefore spreading over all Countries, the Trojans from all Parts began to flock to him, desiring under his Command to be freed from the Servitude of the Grecians; which they affirm'd might easily be done, considering how much their Number was now encreas'd in the Country, being seven thousand strong, besides Women and Children. There was likewise then in Greece a noble Youth named Affaracus, a Favourer of their Cause. For he was descendent on his Mothers
Mothers Side from the Trojans, and had a great Confidence in them, that he might be able by their Assistance to oppose the Designs of the Grecians. For his Brother had a Quarrel with him for attempting to deprive him of three Castles his Father had given him at his Death, on Account of his being only the Son of a Concubine; but as the Brother was a Grecian both by his Father and Mothers Side, he had prevail'd with the King and the Rest of the Grecians to espouse his Cause. Brutus having taken a view of the Number of his Men, and seen how Assaracus's Castles lay open to him, comply'd with their Request.

CHAP. IV.

Brutus's Letter to Pandrasus.

Being therefore chosen their Commander, he assembles the Trojans from all Parts, and fortifies the Towns belonging to Assaracus. But he himself with Assaracus and the whole Body of Men and Women that adher'd to him, retires to the Woods and Hills, and then sends a Letter to the King in these Words.

"Brutus, General of the Remainder of the Trojans, to Pandrasus King of the Grecians,"
"cians, sendeth Greeting. As it was beneath the Dignity of a Nation descended from the illustrious Race of Dardanus, to be treated in your Kingdom otherwise than the Nobility of their Birth require'd; they have betaken themselves to the Coverts of the Woods. For they prefer'd living after the Manner of wild Beasts, upon Flesh and Herbs, with the Enjoyment of Liberty, before the continuing longer in the greatest Luxury, under the Yoke of your Slavery. If this gives your Majesty any Offence, impute it not to them, but pardon it; since it is the common Sentiment of every Captive, to be desirous of regaining his former Dignity. Let Pity therefore move you to bestow on them freely their lost Liberty, and permit them to inhabit the Thickets of the Woods, to which they have retir'd to avoid Slavery. But if you deny them this Favour, then by your Permission and Assistance let them depart into some foreign Country.
Brutus falling upon the Forces of Pandrafus by Surprize, routs them, and takes Antigonus the Brother of Pandrafus, with Anacletus Prisoner.

PANDRASUS perceiving the Purport of the Letter, was beyond Measure surpriz'd at the Boldness of such a Message from those whom he had kept in Slavery; and having called a Council of his Nobles, he determin'd to raise an Army in order to pursuè them. But while he was upon his March to the Deserts, where he thought they were, and to the Town of Sparatinum, Brutus made a Sally forth with three thousand Men, and fell upon him unawares: For having Intelligence of his coming, he had got into the Town the Night before, with a Design to break forth upon them unexpectedly, while unarm'd and marching without Order. The Sally being made, the Trojans briskly attack them, and endeavour to make a great Slaughter. The Grecians astonish'd, immediately give way on all Sides, and with the King at their Head, haften to pass the River Akaion, which run near the Place, but in paf-
fing are in great Danger by the Rapidness of the Stream. Brutus galls them in their Flight, and kills Part of them in the Stream, Part upon the Banks, and running to and fro, rejoices to see them in both Places exposed to Ruin. But Antigonus the Brother of Pandrasus, grievously moved at this Sight, rallied his scatter'd Troops, and made a quick Return upon the furious Trojans; for he rather chose to die making a brave Resistance, than to be drown'd in a muddy Whirlpool by a scandalous Flight. Thus attended with a close Body of Men, he encourag'd them to stand their Ground, and employ'd his whole Force against the Enemy with great Vigour, but to little or no Purpose, for the Trojans had Arms, but the others none; and by that Advantage they were more eager in the Flight, and made a miserable Slaughter, nor gave over the Assault till they had made near a total Destruction, and taken Antigonus and Anacleus his Companion Prisoners.

C H A P. VI.

The Town of Sparatinum Besieged by Pandrasus.

Brutus after the Victory reinforce'd the Town with six hundred Men, and then retir'd to the Woods, where the Trojan People
People were expecting his Protection. In the mean Time Pandrafus grieving at his own Flight and his Brother’s Captivity, endeavour’d that Night to reassemble his broken Forces, and the next Morning went with a Body of his People he had got together to besiege the Town; into which he supposed Brutus had put himself with Antigonus and the rest of the Prisoners he had taken. As soon as he was arriv’d at the Walls, and had view’d the Situation of the Castle, he divided his Army into several Bodies, and placed them in different Stations quite round. One Party had their Charge not to suffer any of the Besieged to go out; another to turn the Courses of the Rivers; a third to beat down the Walls with battering Rams and other Engines. They in Obedience to his Commands, labour’d with their utmost Force to distress the Besieged; and Night coming on, made Choice of their bravest Men to defend their Camp and Tents from the Incursions of the Enemy, while the rest who were fatigued with Labour, refresh’d themselves with Sleep.
CHAP. VII.

The Besieged desire Assistance of Brutus.

But the Besieged standing upon the Top of the Walls, were no less Vigorous to repel the Force of the Enemies Engines, and assault them with their own, and cast forth Darts and Firebrands with an unanimous Resolution to stand upon their Defence: And when a Breach was made through the Wall, they compell'd the Enemy to retire, by throwing upon them Wild Fire and Scalding Water. But being distressed through Scarcity of Provision and daily Labour, they sent a Message to Brutus, being urgent with him to hasten to their Assistance; for they were afraid they might be so weakened as to be oblig'd to quit the Town. Brutus desirous of relieving them was under great Perplexity, as not having Men enough to stand a pitch'd Battel, and therefore makes use of a Stratagem, by which he proposes to enter the Enemies Camp by Night, and having deceiv'd their Watch, to kill them in their Sleep. But because he knew this was impracticable, without the Concurrence and Assistance of some Grecian, he called to him Anacletus, the Compà
Companion of Antigonus, and with a drawn Sword in his Hand, spake to him after this manner.

"Noble Youth, your own and Antigonus's Life is now at an End, unless you will faithfully perform what I command you. This Night I design to invade the Camp of the Grecians, and fall upon them unawares, but am afraid of being hindered in the Attempt by the Watch discovering the Stratagem. Since it will be necessary therefore to have them killed first, I desire to make use of you to deceive them, that I may have the easier Access to the rest. Do you therefore manage this Affair cunningly; at the second Hour of the Night go to the Watch, and with fair Speeches tell them that you have brought away Antigonus from Prison, and that he is come to the Bottom of the Woods, where he lyes hid among the Shrubs, and cannot get any farther, by Reason of the Fetters with which you shall pretend he is bound. Then you shall conduct them to the End of the Wood, as if it were to deliver him, where I shall attend with a Band of Men ready to kill them.

CHAP.
CHAP. VIII.

Anacletus for fear of dying, betrays the Army of the Grecians.

Anacletus seeing the Sword threatening him with immediate Death while these Words were pronouncing, was so terrified as to promise upon Oath, that on Condition he and Antigonus might have longer Life granted them, he would execute his Command. Accordingly the Agreement being confirm'd, at the second Hour of the Night he directs his Way towards the Grecian Camp, and when he was now come near to it, the Watch who were then narrowly viewing all lurking Places, ran out from all Parts to meet him, and demand the Occasion of his coming, and whether it was not to betray the Army. To whom he with a Shew of great Joy, made the following Answer: "I come not to betray my Country, but having made my Escape from the Prison of the Trojans, I fly hither to desire you would go with me to Antigonus, whom I have deliver'd from Brutus's Chains. For being not able to come with me for the Weight of his Fetters, I have a little while ago caused him to lie hid among the Shrubs at the End of the Wood, till I could meet with
"with some whom I might conduct to his " Assistance." While they were in Suspence about the Truth of this Story, there came one who knew him, and after he had saluted him, told them who he was: So that now without any Hesitation, they quickly called their absent Companions and attended him to the Wood, where he had told them Antigonus lay hid. But at length as they were going among the Shrubs, Brutus with his armed Bands springs forth, and falls upon them while under the greatest Astonishment with a most cruel Slaughter. From thence he marches directly to the Siege, and divides his Men into three Bands, assigning to each of them a different Part of the Camp, to which he charged them to go discreetly, and without Noise; and when entred, not to kill any Body till he with his Company should be possed of the King's Tent, and should cause the Trumpet to sound for a Signal.

CHAP. IX.

The taking of Pandaratus.

Then after he had given them their Instructions, they forthwith softly enter the Camp, and taking their appointed Stations,
Stations, expected the promis’d Signal; which Brutus delay’d not to give as soon as he had got before the Tent of Pandrasus, to assault which was the Thing he most desired. At the hearing of the Signal, they forthwith draw their Swords, enter in among the Men in their Sleep, make quick Destruction of them, and allowing no Quarter, in this Manner traverse the Camp. The rest awak’d at the Groans of the dying, and seeing their assailants are dismay’d, as Sheep when seiz’d on a sudden; for they dispair’d of Life, since they had neither Time to take Arms, nor to escape by Flight. They run up and down without Arms among the armed, whithersoever the Fury of the Assault hurried them; but are on all Sides cut down by the Enemy rushing in. Some that could escape away half-dead, were in the Eagerness of Flight dash’d against Rocks, Trees or Shrubs, and increased the Misery of their Death. Others that had only a Shield, or some such Covering for their Defence, in venturing upon the same Rocks to avoid Death, fell down in the Hurry and Darkness of the Night, and broke either Legs or Arms. Others that escap’d both these Disasters, but not knowing whither to fly, were drowned in the adjacent Rivers; and scarce one got away without some unhappy Accident befalling him. Besides the Garrison in the Town, upon Notice of the coming
A Consultation about what is to be asked of the Captive King.

But Brutus (as was said before) having possessed himself of the Kings Tent, made it his Business to keep him a safe Prisoner; for he knew he could more easily attain his Ends by preserving his Life than by killing him: But the Party that was with him allowing no Quarter, made an utter Destruction in that Part they had possessed. The Night being spent in this Manner, and the next Morning discovering to their View so great an Overthrow of the Enemy, Brutus in Transports of Joy, gave full Liberty to his Men to do what they pleased with the Plunder, and then enters the Town with the King, to stay there till they had shared it among them. Which done, he again fortified the Castle, and gave Orders for burying of the Slain, and retired with his Forces to the Woods in great Joy for the Victory. After the Rejoycings of his People on this Occasion, the renowned General summoned the Ancientest of them,
and asked their Advice, what he had best desire of Pandrafus, who being now in their Power, would readily grant whatever they would request of him, in order to regain his Liberty. They according to their different Affections, desired different Things; some moving him to request that a certain Part of the Kingdom might be assigned them for their Habitation; others that he would demand Leave to depart, and to be supply'd with Necessaries for their Voyage. After they had been a long Time in suspense what to do, one of them named Mempricius rose up, and after Silence made, spake to them thus.

"What can be the Occasion of your Suspence, Fathers, in a Matter which I think so much concerns your Safety? The only Thing you can request, with any Prospect of a firm Peace and Security to yourselves and your Posterity, is Liberty to depart. For if you make no better Terms with Pandrafus for his Life, than only to have some Part of the Country assigned you to live among the Grecians, you will never enjoy a lasting Peace while the Brothers, Sons, or Grandsons of those you killed yesterday shall continue to be your Neighbours. So long as the Memory of their Fathers Deaths shall remain, they will be your mortal Enemies,
"Enemies, and upon the least trifling Provocation will endeavour to revenge themselves. Nor will you be Number enough to withstand so great a Multitude of People: And if you shall happen to fall out among yourselves, their Number will daily increase, yours diminish. I propose therefore that you request of him his eldest Daughter Ignoge for a Wife for our General, and with her, Gold, Silver, Corn, and whatever else shall be necessary for our Voyage. If we obtain this, we may with his Leave remove to some other Country.

CHAP. XI.

Pandrærus marries his Daughter Ignoge to Brutus, who after his departing from Greece, falls upon a desert Island, where he is told by the Oracle of Diana what Place he is to inhabit.

When he had ended his Speech in Words to this Effect, the whole Assembly acquiesced in his Advice, and moved that Pandrærus might be brought in among them; and condemned to a most cruel
cruel Death, unless he would grant this Request. Immediately he was brought, and being placed in a Chair above the rest, and informed of the Tortures prepared for him, unless he would do what was commanded him, he made them this Answer.

"Since my ill Fate has delivered me and my Brother Antigonus into your Hands, I can do no other than grant your Petition, lest a Repulse may cost us our Lives, which are now entirely in your Power. In my Opinion the Advantage and Pleasure of Life is preferable to all other Considerations; therefore wonder not that I am willing to redeem it at so great a Price. But though it is against my Inclination that I obey your Commands, yet it seems Matter of Comfort to me, that I am to give my Daughter to so Noble a Youth, whose Descent from the illustrious Race of Priamus and Anchises is clear, both from that Greatness of Mind that appears in him, and the certain Accounts we have had of it. For who else than himself, could have released from their Chains the banished Trojans, when reduced under Slavery to so many and great Princes? Who else could have encouraged them to make Head against the Grecians? or with so small a Body of Men vanquished so numerous and powerful an Army,"
Army, and taken their King Prisoner in the Engagement? And therefore since this noble Youth has gained so much Glory by the Opposition he has made me, I give him my Daughter Ignoge, and also Gold, Silver, Ships, Corn, Wine and Oyl, and whatever you shall find necessary for your Voyage. If you shall alter your Resolution, and think fit to continue among the Grecians, I grant you the third Part of my Kingdom for your Habitation; if not, I will faithfully perform my Promise, and for your greater Security will stay as a Hostage with you till I have made it good.

Accordingly he held a Council, and directed Messengers to all the Shores of Greece, to get Ships together; which done, he delivered them to the Trojans, to the Number of three hundred and twenty four, laden with all manner of Provision, and married his Daughter to Brutus. He made also a Present of Gold and Silver to each Man according to his Quality. When every Thing was performed, the King was set at Liberty; and the Trojans now released from his Power set sail with a fair Wind. But Ignoge standing upon the Stern of the Ship swooned away several Times in Brutus’s Arms, and with many Sighs and Tears lamented the leaving her Parents and Country, nor ever turned
turned her Eyes from the Shore while it was in Sight. Brutus in the mean Time endeavoured to asswage her Grief by kind Words and Embraces intermixed with Kisses, and ceased not from these Blandishments, till she grew weary of crying and fell asleep. During these and other Accidents, the Winds continued fair for two Days and a Night together, when at length they arrived at a certain Island called Leogecia, which had been formerly wasted by the Incursions of Pirates, and was then uninhabited. Brutus not knowing this, sent three hundred armed Men ashore to see who inhabited it; but they finding no Body, killed several kinds of wild Beasts which they met with in the Groves and Woods, and came to a certain desolate City, in which they found a Temple of Diana, and in it a Statue of that Goddess which gave Answers to those that came to consult her. At last loading themselves with the Prey they had taken in hunting, they return to their Ships, and give their Companions an Account of this Country and City. Then they advised their Leader to go to the City, and after offering Sacrifices, to enquire of the Deity of the Place, what Country was allotted them for their Place of Settlement. To this Proposal all consented; so that Brutus attended with Gerion the Augur, and twelve of the ancientest Men, set forward to the Temple, with
with all Things necessary for the Sacrifice. Being arrived at the Place, and presenting themselves before the Shrine with Garlands about their Temples, as the ancient Rites required, they made three Fires to three Deities, viz. Jupiter, Mercury and Diana, and offered Sacrifices to each of them. Brutus himself holding before the Altar of the Goddesses a consecrated Vessel filled with Wine, and the Blood of a white Hart, with his Face looking up to the Image, v.broke Silence in these Words.

Diva potens memorandum, terror Sylvastribus apri s,
   Cui licet amfratibus ire per aeribecor;
Infernalsque domos; terrestria jura resolve,
   Et dis quaesturas nos habitare velit?
Dix certam sedem quis te venerabor in aevum;
   Qua sibi virgines templi dicabo choiris?

Goddess of Woods, tremendous in the Chase
To Mountain Bires, and all the Savage Race!
Wide o'er th'Æthereal Walks extends thy Sway,
And o'er th'Infernal Mansions void of Day!
On thy third Realm look down! unfold our Fate,
And say what Region is our delib'd Seat?
Where shall we next thy lasting Temples raise?
And Choirs of Virgins celebrate thy Praise?

These Words he repeated nine Times, after which he took four Turns round the Altar, poured the Wine into the Fire, and then laid himself down upon the Harts-
which he had spread before the Altar, where at last he fell asleep. About the third Hour of the Night, the usual Time for deep Sleep, the Goddess seemed to present herself before him, and foretell him his future Success as follows.

Brutus sub occasum solis trans Gallica regna
Insula in oceano est undique clausa mari:
Insula in oceano est habitata gigantibus olim,
Nunc deserta quidem, gentibus apsa suis.
Hanc pete, namque tibi Sedes erit illa perennis:
Sic sit matris altera Troja suis.
Sic de prole tua reges nascentur: & ipsa
Totius terra subdita orbis erit.

Brutus there lies beyond the Gallick Bounds...
An Island which the Western Sea surrounds,
By Giants once possess'd; now few remain
To bar thy Entrance, or obstruct thy Reign.
To reach that happy Shore thy Sails employ:
There Fate decrees to raise a second Troy,
And found an Empire in thy Royal Line,
Which Time shall ne'er destroy, nor Bounds confine.

The General awaked by the Vision was for some Time in Doubt with himself, whether what he had seen was a Dream, or a real Appearance of the Goddess herself, foretelling him of the Land to which he was to go. At last he called to his Companions, and related to them in Order the Vision he had in his Sleep, at which they very much rejoiced.
rejoyced, and were urgent to return to their Ships, and while the Wind favour'd them, to haften their Voyage towards the West, in Pursuit of what the Goddess had promis'd. Without delay therefore they return to their Company, and set sail again, and after a Course of thirty Days came to Africa, being ignorant as yet whither to steer. From thence they came to the the Philenian Altars, and to a Place called Salina, and fail'd between Ruscicada and the Mountains of Azara, where they underwent great Danger by Pirates, but notwithstanding vanquish'd them, and enrich'd themselves with their Spoils.

C H A P. XII.

Brutus enters Aquitain with Corineus.

FROM thence passing the River Malua they arrived at Mauritania, where at last for want of Provisions they were oblig'd to go ashore; and dividing themselves into several Bands they laid waste that whole Country. When they had well stor'd their Ships, they steer'd to Hercules's Pillars, where they saw some of those Sea-Monsters, called Syrens, which surroundered their Ships, and
and had very near overturn'd them. How-
ever they made a Shift to escape, and came to the Tyrrhenian Sea, upon the Shores of which they found four several Nations de-
scended from the banish'd Trojans, that had accompanied Antenor in his Flight. The
Name of their Commander was Corineus, a modest Man, in Matters of Council, and ex-
celling in Greatness of Courage and Bold-
ness, who in an Encounter with any Person even of Gigantick Stature, would immediate-
ly overthrow him, as if he engag'd with a
Child. When they understood from whom he was descended, they join'd Company
with him and those under his Government, who from the Name of their Leader were
afterwards called the Cornish People, and in-
deed were more serviceable to Brutus than
the Rest in all his Engagements. From
thence they came to Aquitain, and entring
the Mouth of the Loire cast Anchor. There
they staid seven Days and view'd the Coun-
try. At that Time Gossarius Pictus was
King of Aquitain, who having an Account
brought him of the Arrival of a foreign People with a great Fleet upon his Coasts, sent Ambassadors to them to demand, whe-
ther they brought with them Peace or War.
The Ambassadors therefore in their Way
towards the Fleet met with Corineus, who was come out with two hundred Men to
hunt in the Woods. They demanded of
him,
him, who gave him Leave to enter the King's Forests, and kill his Game; (which by an ancient Law no Body was to do without Leave from the Prince;) Corineus made Answer, That as to that there ought to be no Occasion for Leave; upon which one of them named Imbertus, rushing forward, with a full drawn Bow levelled a Shot at him. Corineus avoids the Arrow and immediately runs up to him, and with his Bow in his Hand breaks his Head. The rest fled after a narrow Escape, and carried the News of this Disaifer to Goffarius. The Picavian General was struck with Sorrow for it, and immediately raised a vast Army, to revenge on them the Death of his Ambassador. Brutus on the other Hand, upon hearing the Rumour of his coming, sends away the Women and Children to the Ships, which he took Care to be well guarded, and commands them to stay there, while he with the Rest that were able to bear Arms should go to meet the Army. At last when an Assault was made a bloody Fight ensued; in which after a great Part of the Day had been spent, Corineus was ashamed to see the Aquitans so bravely stand their Ground, and the Trojans maintaining the Fight without Victory. He takes therefore fresh Courage, and drawing off his Men to the right Wing, breaks in upon the very thickest of the Enemies Ranks, where he made such Slaughter on every
every Side, that at last he pierc'd through the Cohort, and put them all to Flight. In this Encounter he had lost his Sword, but by good Fortune met with a Battle-Ax, with which he clave down to the Waste every one that stood in his Way. Brutus and every Body else both Friends and Enemies were amaz'd at his Courage and Strength, who brandishing about his Battle-Ax among the flying Troops, did not a little terify them with these insulting Words. "Whither fly ye, Cowards? whither fly ye, base Wretches? stand your Ground, that ye may encounter Corineus. What, for shame, do so many Thousands of you fly one Man? However, take this Comfort for your Flight, that you are pursu'd by one, before whom the Tyrrenian Giants could not stand their Ground, but fell down slain in Heaps together.

CHAP. XIII.

Goffarius routed by Brutus.

At these Words one of them, named Subardus, who was a Consul, returns with three hundred Men to assault him: But Corineus with his Shield wardsoff the Blow, and lifting up his Battle-Ax gave him such a
a Stroke upon the Top of his Helmet, that at once he clave him down to the Waft: And then forthwith rushing upon the Rest he made terrible Slaughter by wheeling about his Battle-Ax among them, and running to and fro shew'd no less Bravery in receiving the Blows, than in the Numbers he kill'd of the Enemy. Some had their Hands and Arms, some their very Shoulders, some again their Heads, and others their Legs cut off by him. All fought with him only, and he alone engag'd them all. Brutus seeing him thus beset, out of meer Affection to him runs with a Band of Men to his Assistance: At which the Battle is again renew'd with Vigour and with loud Shouts, and great Numbers slain on both Sides. But now the Trojans presently gain the Victory, and put Goffarius with his Pictavians to flight. The King after a narrow Escape went to several Parts of Gaul, to procure Succours among such Princes as were related or known to him. At that Time Gaul was subject to twelve Princes, who with equal Authority posse'd the Government of that whole Country. These receive him courteously, and promise with one Consent, to expel that foreign Nation from the Coasts of Aquitain.
Brutus after his Victory over Goffarius, destroys Aquitain with Fire and Sword.

Brutus in Joy for the Victory enriches his Men with the Spoils of the Slain, and then dividing them again into several Bodies, marches into the Country with a Design to lay it wholly waste, and lade his Fleet with the Riches of it. With this View he sets the Cities on Fire, seizes the Riches that were hid in them, destroys the Fields, and makes dismal Slaughter among the Citizens and common People, being unwilling to leave so much as one alive of that wretched Nation. While he was making this Destruction over all Aquitain, he came to a Place where the City of Tours now stands, which he afterwards built, as Homer testifies. As soon as he had look'd out a Place convenient for the Purpose, he pitch'd his Camp there, for a Place of safe Retreat, when occasion should require. For he was afraid on Account of Goffarius's Approach with the Kings and Princes of Gaul, and a very great Army, which was now come near the Place, ready to give him Battle. Having therefore finish'd his Camp, he expected
expected to engage with Goffarius in two Days Time, exciting in the Conduct and Courage of the Youth under his Command.

CHAP. XV.

Goffarius's Fight with Brutus.

Goffarius upon Advices that the Trojans were in those Parts, cease'd not to march Day and Night, till he came within a close View of Brutus's Camp; and then with a Stern Look and disdainful Smile, broke out into these Expressions. “Oh wretched Fate! Have these base Exiles made a Camp also in my Kingdom? Arm, Arm, Soldiers, and march through their thickest Ranks: We shall quickly take these pitiful Fellows like Sheep, and send them about our Kingdom for Slaves.” At these Words they prepar'd their Arms, and rang'd in twelve Bodies advance towards the Enemy. Brutus on the other Hand with his Forces drawn up in Order goes out boldly to meet them, and gave his Men Directions for their Conduct, that is, where to Assault and where to be upon the Defensive. At the Beginning of the Attack, the Trojans had the Advantage, and
made a quick Slaughter of the Enemy, of whom there fell near two thousand; which so terrify'd the Rest, that they were just ready to fly. But as the Victory generally falls to that Side which has very much the Superiority in Numbers; so the Gauls being three to one of the other, though over-power'd at first, yet at last joining in a great Body together broke in upon the Trojans; and forc'd them to retire to their Camp with Slaughter. The Victory thus gained, they besieged them in their Camp, with a Design not to suffer them to stir out, before they should either surrender themselves Prisoners in Chains, or be cruelly starv'd to Death with a long Famine.

In the mean Time, Corinæus the Night following entred into Consultation with Brutus, and propos'd to go out that Night by By-ways, and conceal himself in an adjacent Wood till break of Day; and while Brutus should sally forth upon the Enemy in the Morning Twilight, he with his Company would surprize them from behind, and put them to Slaughter. Brutus was pleas'd with this Stratagem of Corinæus; who according to his Engagement got out cunningly with three thousand Men, and put himself under the Covert of the Woods; as soon as it was Day Brutus marshalled his Men and open'd the Camp to go out to Fight. The Gauls quickly meet him and begin the Engage-
Engagement: Many Thousands fall on both Sides, neither Party giving any Quarter. There was present a Trojan, named Turman, the Nephew of Brutus, inferior to none but Corineus in Courage and Strength of Body. He alone with his Sword kill'd six hundred Men, but at last was unfortunately slain himself by the Gauls pouring in upon him. From him did the City of Tours derive its Name, because he was buried there. While both Armies were thus warmly engag'd, Corineus came upon them unawares, and fell fiercely upon the Back of the Enemy: Which put new Courage into their Friends on the other Side, and made them exert themselves with much more Vigour. The Gauls were astonished at the very Shout of Corineus's Men, and thinking their Number to be much greater than it really was, they hastened to quit the Field; but the Trojans pursued them, and killed them in the Pursuit; nor desisted till they had got a compleat Victory. Brutus, though in Joy for the great Success, yet was afflicted to observe the Number of his Forces daily lessened, while that of the Enemy was still more and more. He was in suspense for some Time, whether he had best continue the War any longer; but at last chose to return to his Ships, while the greater Part of his Followers was yet safe, and hitherto victorious; and to go in quest of the Island, which the Goddess
Goddess had foretold him of. So without further delay, he with the Consent of his Company repaired to the Fleet, and lading it with the Riches and precious Spoils he had got, set sail with a fair Wind towards the promised Island; and arrived at the Shore of Totness.

C H A P. XVI.

Albion divided between Brutus and Corineus.

The Island was then called Albion, and was inhabited by none but a few Giants. Notwithstanding the pleasant Situation of Places, the Plenty of Rivers abounding with Fish, and the engaging Prospect of Woods, made Brutus and his Company very desirous to fix their Habitation in it. In their passing therefore through all the Provinces, they force the Giants to fly into the Caves of the Mountains, and divide the Country among them according to the Direction of their Commander. Then they begin to till the Ground, and build Houses, so that in a little Time the Country look'd like a Place that had been long inhabited. At last Brutus calls the Island after his own Name Britain, and his Companions
companions Britains: For by this Derivation of the Name he was desirous to perpetuate his Memory. From whence afterwards the Language of the Nation, which at first bore the Name of Trojan, or rough Greek, was called British. But Corineus, in Imitation of his Leader, called that Part of the Island which fell to his Share, Corinsea, and his People Corineans, after his Name: And though he had his Choice of the Provinces before all the Rest, yet he preferred this Country, which is now called in Latin Cornubia, either from its being in Shape of a Horn, (in Latin Cornu,) or from the Corruption of the said Name. For it was a Diversion to him to encounter with the Giants, which were in greater Number there, than in all the other Provinces, that fell to the Share of his Companions. Among the Rest was one detestable Monster, named Goemagot, in Stature twelve Cubits, and of such prodigious Strength, that at one Shake he pulled up an Oak, as if it had been a Hazel Wand. On a certain Day when Brutus was holding a solemn Festival to the Gods, in the Port where they at first landed, this Giant with twenty more of his Companions came in upon the Britains, among whom he made a dreadful Slaughter. But the Britains at last assembling together in a Body, put them to the Rout, and killed them every one but Goemagot.
Brutus had given Orders to have him preserved alive, out of a Desire to see a Combat between him and Corineus, who took a great Pleasure in such Rencounters. Corineus overjoy'd at this, prepares himself, and throwing aside his Arms, challenged him to wrestle with him. At the Beginning of the Rencounter, Corineus and the Giant standing Front to Front, strongly fetter each other in their Arms, and pant aloud for Breath; but Goemagot presently grasping Corineus with all his Might, broke three of his Ribs, two on his right Side and one on his left. At which Corineus highly enraged, roused up his whole Strength, and snatching him upon his Shoulders, ran with him as fast as he was able for the Weight, to the next Shore, and there getting upon the Top of a high Rock, hurled down the savage Monfier into the Sea; where falling by the Sides of craggy Rocks, he was cruelly tore to Pieces, and coloured the Waves with his Blood. The Place where he fell, taking its Name from the Giants Fall, is called Lam-Goemagot, that is, Goemagot's Leap, to this Day.
BRUTUS having thus at last seen his Kingdom, entered upon a Design of building a City, and in order to it, travelled through the Land to find out a convenient Situation; and coming to the River Thames, he walked along the Shore, and at last pitched upon a Place very fit for his Purpose. Here therefore he built a City, which he called New Troy; under which Name it continued a long Time after, till at last by the Corruption of the Original Word, it came to be called Trinovantium. But afterwards when Lud, the Brother of Cassibellaun, who made War against Julius Caesar, obtained the Government of the Kingdom, he surrounded it with stately Walls, and Towers of admirable Workmanship, and ordered it to be called after his Name, Kær-Lud, that is, the City of Lud. But this very Thing became afterwards the Occasion of a great Quarrel between him and his Brother Nennius, who took very heinously his abolishing the Name of Troy in this Country. Of this Quarrel Gildas the Historian has given a large Account; for which,
which Reason I chuse to pass it over, for fear of debasing by my Account of it, what so great a Writer has so eloquently related.

C H A P. XVIII.

New Troy being built, and Laws made for the Government of it, it is given to the Citizens that were to inhabit it.

After Brutus had finished the Building of the City, he made Choice of the Citizens that were to inhabit it, and prescribed them Laws for their peaceable Government. At this Time Eli the Priest governed in Judea, and the Ark of the Covenant was taken by the Philistines. At the same Time also, the Sons of Hector, after the Expulsion of the Posterity of Antenor, reigned in Troy; as did Sylvius Aeneas in Italy, he being the Son of Aeneas, the Uncle of Brutus, and the third King of the Latins.
After the Death of Brutus, his three Sons succeed him in the Kingdom.

URING these Transactions, Brutus had by his Wife Ignoge three famous Sons, whose Names were Locrin, Albanack and Kamber. These, after their Fathers Death, which happened in the twenty fourth Year after his Arrival, buried him in the City he had built, and divided the Kingdom of Britain among them, and then retired each
to his Government. **Locrin** the eldest possessed the middle part of the Island, called afterwards from his Name, *Loegria*. *Kamber* had that part which lies beyond the River Severn, now called *Wales*, but which was for a long time named *Kambria*; and hence that people still call themselves in their *British* Tongue *Kambri*. *Albanaet*, the younger brother, possessed the Country he called *Albania*, now Scotland. After they had a long time reigned in Peace together, *Humber*, King of the *Huns* arrived in *Albania*, and in Battle, killed *Albanaet*, and forced his People to fly to *Locrin* for Protection.

**CHAP. II.**

**Locrin having routed Humber, falls in Love with Estrildis.**

**LOC R I N** at the hearing of the News, joined with his Brother *Kamber*, and went attended with the whole Strength of the Kingdom to meet the King of the *Huns* near the River now called *Humber*, where he gave him Battle, and put him to the Rout. *Humber* made towards the River in his Flight, and was drowned in it, on which Occasion it has since bore his Name. *Locrin* after the Victory, bestows the Enemies.
Corineus represents Locrins Amour.

He went therefore to the King, and shaking a Battle-Ax in his right hand, vented his rage against him in these words: "Do you thus reward me, " Locrin, for the many wounds which I " have suffered under your Fathers Com-" mand, in his Wars with strange Nati-"
"ons, that you must flight my Daughter,
and debate yourself to marry a Barba-
rian? While there is Strength in this
right Hand, that has been destructive to
so many Giants upon the Tyrrhenian
Coasts, I will never put up this Affront."
And repeating this again and again with a
loud Voice, he shook his Battle-Ax as if he
was going to strike him; till the Friends of
both interposed, who after they had ap-
peased Corineus, obliged Locrin to perform
his Agreement.

C H A P. IV.

Locrin at last marries Guendolæna,
the Daughter of Corineus.

LOC R I N therefore married Corineus's
Daughter, named Guendolæna, yet still
retained his Love for Estrildis, for whom he
made Apartments under Ground, in which
he entertained her, and caused her to be
honourably attended. For he was resolved
at least to carry on a private Amour with
her, since for fear of Corineus he could not
live with her openly. In this Manner he
concealed her, and made frequent Visits to
her for seven Years together, without the
Privity of any, but those who were the most
inti-
intimate of his Domesticks; and all under a Pretence of performing some secret Sacrifices to his Gods; and thus imposed upon the Credulity of every Body. In the mean Time Estrildis became big with Child, and was delivered of a most beautiful Daughter, whom she named Sabre. Guendolana was also with Child, and brought forth a Son, who was named Maddan, and put under the Care of his Grandfather Corineus for his Education.

C H A P. V.

Locrin is killed, and Estrildis with Sabre is thrown into a River.

But in Process of Time when Corineus was dead, Locrin divorced Guendolana, and advanced Estrildis to be Queen. Guendolana provoked beyond Measure at this, retired into Cornwall, where she assembled together all the Forces of that Kingdom, and began to raise Disturbances against Locrin. At last both Armies join Battle near the River Sture, where Locrin was killed by the Shot of an Arrow. After his Death, Guendolana took upon her the Government of the whole Kingdom, retaining her Fathers furious Spirit. For the
the commanded Efrildis and her Daughter Sabre to be thrown into the River now cal-
led Severn, and published an Edict through all Britain, that the River should bear the
Damsels Name, as being desirous to per-
petuate her Memory, and by that the In-
famy of her Husband: So that to this Day
the River is called in the British Tongue Sabren, which by the Corruption of the
Name, is in another Language Sabrina.

CHAP. VI.

Guendolocena delivers up the King-
dom to Maddan her Son, after
whom succeeds Menpricius.

GUENDOLENA reigned fifteen
Years after the Death of Locrin, who
had reigned ten, and then advanced her
Son Maddan (whom she saw now at Matu-
rity) to the Throne, contenting herself
with the Country of Cornwall for the Re-
mainder of her Life. At this Time Samuel
the Prophet governed in Judea, Sylvius
Aeneas was yet living, and Homer was e-
fteemed a famous Orator and Poet. Madd-
an now in Possession of the Crown, had
by his Wife two Sons, Menpricius and Malim,
and ruled the Kingdom in Peace and with Care
Care forty Years. As soon as he was dead, the two Brothers quarrelled for the Kingdom, each being ambitious of the Sovereignty of the whole Island. Menpricius impatient to attain his ambitious Ends, enters into Treaty with Malim, under Colour of making a Composition with him, but by a formed Conspiracy murdered him in the Assembly where their Ambassadors were met. By this Means he obtained the Dominion of the whole Island; over which he exercised such Tyranny, that he scarce left a Nobleman alive in it, and either by Violence or Treachery, oppressed every one that he apprehended might be likely to succeed him, pursuuing his Hatred to his whole Race. He also deferted his own Wife, by whom he had a noble Youth named Ebraucus, and addicted himself to Sodomy, preferring unnatural Lust to the Pleasure of the Conjugal State. At last, in the twentieth Year of his Reign, while he was a Hunting, he retired from his Company into a Valley, where he was surrounded by a great Multitude of ravenous Wolves, and in a horrible Manner devoured by them. Then did Saul reign in Judea, and Euristeus in Lacedemonia.
CHAP. VII.

Ebraucus the Successor of Menpri-
cicuis, conquers the Gauls, and
builds the Towns Kaerebrauc, &c.

MENPRICICUS being dead, Ebraucus
his Son, a Man of great Stature and
wonderful Strength, took upon him the Go-
vernment of Britain, which he held forty
Years. He was the first after Brutus who
invaded Gaul with a Fleet, and distressed
its Provinces by killing their Men and lay-
ing waste their Cities; and having by this
Means enriched himself with an infinite
Mass of Gold and Silver, he returned
Victorious. After this he built a City on
the other Side of Humber, which from his
own Name he called Kaerebrauc, that is the
City of Ebraucus, about the Time that Da-
vid reigned in Judea, and Sylvius Latinus
in Italy, and that Gad, Nathan and Asaph
prophefed in Israel. He also built the City
of Acludo towards Albania, and the Town
of Mount Agned, called at this Time the
Castle of Maidens, or the Mountain of
Sorrow.

C H A F.
CHAP. VIII.

Ebraucus's twenty Sons go to Germany, and his thirty Daughters to Sylvius Alba in Italy.

This Prince had twenty Sons and thirty Daughters by twenty Wives, and with great Valour governed the Kingdom of Britain sixty Years. The Names of his Sons were, Brutus surnamed Greenshield, Maegadud, Sisilium, Regin, Morivid, Bladud, Lagon, Bodloan, Kjncar, Spaden, Gaul, Darden, Eldad, Ivor, Gangu, Hector, Kerin, Rud, Affarach, Buel. The Names of his Daughters were Gtoigni, Ignogni, Oudas, Genuiam, Gaudid, Angarad, Guedoloe, Tangkfiel, Gorgon, Medalan, Methabel, Ourar, Malære, Kambreda, Ragan, Gæl, Ecub, Nest, Cheun, Stadud, Gladud, Ehren, Blagan, Abadlac, Angaes, Galaes, the most celebrated Beauty that was then in Britain or Gaul, Edra, Anaor, Stadial, Egron. All these Daughters their Father sent into Italy to Sylvius Alba, who reigned after Sylvius Latinus, where they were married among the Trojan Nobility, the Latin and Sabine Women refusing to match with them. But the Sons under the Conduct of their Brother Affaracus departed in a Fleet to Germany,
m any, and having with the Assistance of Sylvius Alba subdued the People there, obtained that Kingdom.

C H A P. IX.

After Ebraucus reigns Brutus his Son, after him Leil, and after Leil, Hudibras.

But Brutus surnamed Greenshide, stay'd with his Father, whom he succeeded in the Government, and reigned twelve Years. After him reigned Leil his Son, a peaceable and just Prince, who enjoying a prosperous Reign, built in the North Part of Britain a City called by his Name Kærleil; at the same Time that Solomon began to build the Temple of Jerusalem, and the Queen of Sheba came to hear his Wisdom; at which Time also Sylvius Epitus succeeded his Father Alba in Italy. Leil reigned twenty five Years, but towards the latter End of his Life grew more remiss in his Government, so that his Neglect of Affairs quickly occasioned a civil Distress in the Kingdom. After him reigned his Son Hudibras thirty nine Years, and composed the civil Distress among his People. He built Kærleem or Canterbury, Kærguen
Kærguen or Winchester, and the Town of Mount Palatia, now Shaftesbury. At this Place an Eagle spoke, while the Wall of the Town was building; and indeed I should not have failed transmitting the Speech to Posterity, had I thought it true as the rest of the History. At this Time reigned Capys the Son of Epitus; and Haggai, Amos, Joel, and Azariah were Prophets in Israel.

CHAP. X.

Bladud succeeds Hudibras in the Kingdom, and practises Magical Operations.

NEXT succeeded Bladud his Son, and reigned twenty Years. He built Kærbadus, now Bath, and made hot Baths in it for the Benefit of the Publick, which he dedicated to the Goddess Minerva; in whose Temple he kept Fires that never went out nor consum'd to Ashes, but as soon as they began to decay were turned into Balls of Stone. About this Time the Prophet Elias prayed that it might not rain upon Earth; and it did not reign for three Years and six Months. This Prince was a very ingenious Man, and taught Necromancy in his Kingdom, nor left off pursu-
ing his Magical Operations, till he attempted to fly to the upper Region of the Air with Wings he had prepared, and fell down upon the Temple of Apollo in the City of Trinovantum, where he was dashed to Pieces.

CHAP. XI.

Leir, the Son of Bladud, having no Son, divides his Kingdom among his Daughters.

After this unhappy Fate of Bladud, Leir his Son was advanced to the Throne, and nobly governed his Country sixty Years. He built upon the River Sore a City called in the British Tongue Kaerleir, in the Saxon Leircestr. He was without Male Issue, but had three Daughters whose Names were Gonorilla, Regau, and Cordeilla, of whom he was doatingly fond, but especially of his youngest Cordeilla. When he began to grow old, he had Thoughts of dividing his Kingdom among them, and of bestowing them on such Husbands, as were fit to be advanced to the Government with them. But to make Tryal who was the worthiest of the best Part of his Kingdom, he went to each of them to ask, which of them
them loved him most. The Question being proposed, Gonorilla, the Eldest made Answer, "That she called Heaven to Witness, she loved him more than her own Soul." The Father reply'd, "Since you have preferred my declining Age before your own Life, "I will marry you, my dearest Daughter, to whomsoever you shall make Choice of, "and give with you the third Part of my "Kingdom." Then Regan, the second Daughter, willing after the Example of her Sister, to prevail upon her Fathers good Nature, answered with an Oath, "That she could not otherwise express her Thoughts, "but that she loved him above all Creatures." The credulous Father upon this made her the same Promise that he did to her elder Sister, that is, the Choice of a Husband, with the third Part of his Kingdom. But Gondeilla the youngest, understanding how easily he was satisfied with the flattering Expressions of her Sisters, was desirous to make Trial of his Affection after a different Manner. "My Father, said she, 'Is there any Daughter that can love "her Father more than Duty requires? In "my Opinion, whoever pretends to it, must "disguise her real Sentiments under the "Veil of Flattery. I have always loved "you as a Father, nor do I yet depart from "my purposed Duty; and if you insist to "have something more extorted from me,

D 2
"hear now the Greatness of my Affection, which I always bear you, and take this for a short Answer to all your Questions; Look how much you have, so much is your Value, and so much I love you." The Father supposing that she spoke this out of the Abundance of her Heart, was highly provoked, and immediately reply'd; "Since you have so far despised my Old-age, as not to think me worthy the Love that your Sisters express for me, you shall have from me the like Regard, and shall be excluded from any Share with your Sisters in my Kingdom. Notwithstanding I do not say but that since you are my Daughter, I will marry you to some Foreigner, if Fortune offers you any such Husband; but will never, I do assure you, make it my Business to procure so honourable a Match for you as for your Sisters; because though I have hitherto loved you more than them, you have in Requital thought me less worthy, your Affection than they." And without farther Delay, after Consultation with his Nobility, he bestowed his two other Daughters upon the Dukes of Cornwall and Albania, with half the Island at present, but after his Death, the Inheritance of the whole Monarchy of Britain.

It happened after this, that Agamippus King of the Franks, having heard of the Fame
Fame of Cordeilla’s Beauty, forthwith sent his Ambassadors to the King to desire Cordeilla in Marriage. The Father retaining yet his Anger to her, made Answer; “That he was very willing to bestow his Daughter, but without either Money or Territories, because he had already given away his Kingdom with all his Treasure, to his elder Daughters, Gonorilla and Reugam. ” When this was told Aganippus, he being very much in Love with the Lady, sent again to King Leir, to tell him, “That he had Money and Territories enough, as he possessed the third Part of Gaul, and desired no more than his Daughter only, that he might have Heirs by her.” At last the Match was concluded, and Cordeilla was sent to Gaul, and married to Aganippus.

CHAP. XII.

Leir finding the Ingratitude of his two eldest Daughters, betakes himself to his youngest Cordeilla in Gaul.

A Long Time after this, when Leir came to be infirm through Old-age, the two Dukes, upon whom he had bestowed Britain with his two Daughters, made an
Infurrection against him, and deprived him of his Kingdom, and of all Regal Authority which he had hitherto exercised, with great Power and Glory. But at last they came to an Agreement, and Maglaunus Duke of Albania, one of his Sons-in-Law, was to allow him and sixty Soldiers, who were to be kept for State, a Subsistence at his own House. After two Years Stay with his Son-in-Law, his Daughter Gonovilla grudged at the Number of his Men, who began to upbraid the Ministers of the Court with their scanty Allowance; and having spoke to her Husband about it, gave Orders that the Number of her Fathers Attendants be reduced to thirty, and the rest discharged. The Father resenting this Treatment, left Maglaunus, and went to Henuinus, Duke of Cornwall, to whom he had married his Daughter Regau. Here he met with an honourable Reception, but before the Year was at an End, a Quarrel happened between the two Families, which raised Regau's Indignation; so that she commanded her Father to discharge all his Attendants but five, and to be contented with their Service. This second Affliction was unsupportable to him, and made him return again to his former Daughter, with Hopes that the Misery of his Condition might move in her some Sentiments of Filial Piety, and that he with his Family might find a Subsistence from her. But she not
not forgetting her Resentments, swore by the Gods. He should not stay with her, unless he would dismiss his Retinue, and be contented with the Attendance of one Man; and with bitter Reproaches, told him how ill his Desire of vain-glorious Pomp suited with his Old-age and Poverty. When he found that she was by no Means to be prevailed upon, he was at last forced to comply, and dismissing the Rest, to take up with one Man. But by this Time he began to reflect more sensibly with himself upon the Grandeur from which he had fallen, and the miserable State he was now reduced to, and to enter upon Thoughts of going beyond Sea to his youngest Daughter. Yet he doubted whether he should be able to move her Commiseration, whom (as was related above) he had treated so unworthily. However disdaining to bear any longer such base Usage, he took Shipping to Gaul. In his Passage, he observed he had only the third Place given him among the Princes; that were with him in the Ship, at which with deep Sighs and Tears, he burst forth into the following Complaint.

"O irreversable Decrees of the Fates, that never swerve from your stated Course! Why did you ever advance me to an unstable Felicity, since the Punishment of lost Happines is greater than the Sense of
"Indis present Misery? The Remembrance of the Time when vast Numbers of Men nobly attended me at the taking of Cities and wailing the Enemies Countries, more deeply pierces my Heart, than the View of my present Calamity, which has exposed me to the Derision of those who formerly laid at my Feet. O Rage of Fortune! Shall I ever again see the Day, when I may be able to reward those according to their Deserts who have forsaken me in my Distress? How true was thy Answer, Cordeilla, when I asked thee concerning thy Love to me, As much as you have, so much is your Value, and so much I love you? While I had any Thing to give they valued me, being Friends not to me, but to my Gifts: They loved me then indeed, but my Gifts much more. When my Gifts ceased, my Friends vanished. But with what Face shall I presume to see you my dearest Daughter, since in my Anger I married you upon worse Terms than your Sisters, who, after all the mighty Favours they have received from me, suffer me to be in Banishment and Poverty?

As he was lamenting his Condition in these and the like Expressions, he arrived at Karis', where his Daughter was, and went before the City while he sent a Messenger to inform her of the Misery he was fallen into.
in order to procure her Relief to a Father that suffered both Hunger and Nakedness. Cordeilla was startled at the News, and wept bitterly, and with Tears asked him how many Men her Father had with him. The Messenger answered, he had none but one Man, who had been his Armour-bearer, and was staying with him without the Town. Then she took what Money she thought might be sufficient, and gave it the Messenger, with Orders to him to carry her Father to another City, and there give out that he was Sick, and to provide for him Bathing, Clothes, and all other Nourishment. She likewise gave Orders that he should take into his Service forty Men, well clothed and accoutred, and when all Things were thus prepared that he should then notify his Arrival to King Aganippus and his Daughter. The Messenger, quickly returning carried him to another City, and there kept him concealed, till he had performed every Thing that Cordeilla had commanded.

C H A P. XIII.

He is very honourably received by Cordeilla, and the King of Gaul.

As soon as he was provided with his Royal Apparel, Ornaments and Retinue, he sent Word to Aganippus and his Daughter,
Daughter, that he was driven out of his Kingdom of Britain by his Sons-in-Law, and was come to them to procure their Assistance for the Recovering of his Dominions. Upon which they being attended with their chief Ministers of State and the Nobility of the Kingdom, went out to meet him, and received him honourably, and submitted to his Management the whole Power of Gaul, till such Time as he should be restored to his former Dignity.

C H A P. XIV.

Leir by the Help of his Son-in-Law and Cordiella, being restored to the Kingdom dies.

In the mean Time Aganippus sent Officers over all Gaul to raise an Army, in Order to restore his Father-in-Law to his Kingdom of Britain. Which done, Leir returned to Britain with his Son and Daughter and their Forces they had raised, where he fought with his Sons-in-Law, and routed them. Thus having reduced the whole Kingdom under his Power, he died in the third Year after. Aganippus also died; so that Cordeilla now obtaining the Government of the Kingdom, buried her Father in a certain
tain Vault, which she ordered to be made for him under the River Sore in Leicester. The Subterraneous Place where he was buried, had been built to the Honour of the God Janus. And here all the Workmen of the City, upon the anniversary Solemnity of that Festival, used to begin their yearly Labours.

CHAP. XV.

Cordeilla being imprisoned kills herself. Margan aspiring to the whole Kingdom is killed by Cunedagius.

AFTER a peaceable Possession of the Government for five Years, Cordeilla began to meet with Disturbances from the two Sons of her Sistres, being both young Men of great Spirit, whereof one, named Margan, was born to Maglaunus, and the other, named Cunedagius, to Henuinus. These after the Death of their Fathers succeeding them in their Dukedoms, were incensed to see Britain subject to the Power of a Woman, and raised Forces in Order to make an Insurrection against the Queen; nor desisted from their Hostilities, till after a general Wait of her Countries, and several Battles fought, they at last took her and put her in Prison;
where for Grief at the Loss of her Kingdom she killed herself. After this they divided the Island between them, of which the Part that reaches from the North Side of Humber to Caithness, fell to Margan; the other Part from the same River Westward was Cunedagius's Share. At the End of two Years, some restless Spirits that took Pleasure in the Troubles of the Nation, had Access to Margan, and inspired him with vain Con- ceits by representing to him, how mean and disgraceful it was for him not to govern the whole Island, which was his due by Right of Birth. Stirred up with these and the like Suggestions, he marched with an Army through Cunedagius's Country, and began to burn all before him. A War thus break- ing out, he was met by Cunedagius and all his Forces, and upon an Attack made he killed no small Number of his Men, put Margan to Flight, and pursued him from one Province to another, till at last he killed him in a Town of Cambria, which since his Death has been by the Country People called Margan to this Day. After the Victory, Cunedagius gained the Monarchy of the whole Island, which he governed gloriously for three and thirty Years. At this Time flourished the Prophets Isaiah and Hosea, and Rome was built upon the eleventh of the Calends of May by the two Brothers, Romulus and Remus.
Tbe Successors of Cunedagius in the Kingdom: Ferrex is killed by his Brother Porrex, in a Dispute for the Government.

At last Cunedagius dying, was succeeded by his Son Rivallo, a fortunate Youth, who diligently apply'd himself to the Affairs of the Government. In his Time it rained Blood three Days together, and there fell vast swarms of Flies, which was followed by a great Mortality among the People. After him succeeded Gurgustius his Son; after him Sisillius; after him Jago the Nephew of Gurgustius; after him Kinmarcus the Son of Sisillius; after him Gorbogudo who had two Sons, Ferrex and Porrex. When their Father grew old they began to quarrel about the Succession; but Porrex, fired with a greater Ambition, forms a Design of killing his Brother by Treachery, which the other discovering, escaped, and passed over into Gaul. There he procures Aid from Suard King of the Franks, with which he returned and made War upon his Brother: Coming to an Engagement, Ferrex and all the Forces attending him were killed. When their Mother, whose Names was Widen, came to be
be informed of her Sons Death, she fell into a great Rage, and conceived a mortal Hatred against the other. For she had a greater Affection for the Deceased than for him, so that nothing less would appease her Indignation for his Death, than her revenging it upon her surviving Son. She took therefore her Opportunity when he was asleep, and then fell upon him with her Women assisting her, and tore him to pieces. From that Time a long Civil War oppressed the People, and the Island came to be divided under the Power of five Kings, who mutually harassed one another.

---

**C H A P. XVII.**

Dunwallo Molmutius gains the Sceptre of Britain, from whom came the Molmutine Laws.

BUT at length arose a Youth of great Spirit, named Dunwallo Molmutius, who was the Son of Cloten King of Cornwall, and excelled all the Kings of Britain in Valour and Gracefulness of Person. When his Father was dead, he was no sooner possessed of the Government of that Country, than he made War against Tmner King of Loegria, and killed him in Battle. Hereupon Ruda-
Book II.  The British History.

King of Cambria, and Statarius King of Albania, had a Meeting, wherein they formed an Alliance together, and marched thence with their Armies into Dunwallo's Country to destroy all before them. Dunwallo met them with thirty thousand Men, and gave them Battle: And when a great Part of the Day was spent in the Fight, and the Victory yet dubious, he drew off six hundred of his bravest Men, and commanded them to put on the Armour of the Enemies that were slain, as he himself also did, and threw aside his own. Thus accoures he marched up with speed to the Enemies Ranks, as if he was of their Party, and approaching the very Place where Rudacus and Statarius were, commanded his Men to fall upon them. In this Assault were the two Kings killed and many others with them. But Dunwallo Molarius, fearing left in this Disguise his own Men might fall upon him, returns with his Company, puts off the Enemies Armour, and take his own again; and then encourages them to renew the Assault, which they did with great Vigour, and in a short Time got the Victory, by dispersing and putting to Flight the Enemy. From hence he marches into the Enemies Countries, destroys their Towns and Cities, and reduces the People under his Obedience. When he had made an entire Reduction of the whole Island, he prepared himself a Crown of Gold, and
and restored the Kingdom to its ancient State. This Prince established those which the Britains call the Molsestine Laws, famous among the English to this Day. In these among other Things, of which St. Gildas wrote a long Time after, he enacted, that the Temples of the Gods, as also Cities, should have the Privilege of giving Sanctuary and Protection to any Fugitive or Criminal, that should fly to them from his Enemy. He likewise enacted, that the Ways leading to those Temples and Cities, as also the Husbandmen's Plows, should be allowed the same Privilege. So that in his Days, the Murders and Cruelties committed by Robbers were prevented, and every Body passed safe without any Violence offered him. At last after a Reign of forty Years spent in these and other Acts of Government, he died, and was buried in the City of Trivonvatum near the Temple of Concord, which he himself built at the Establishment of his Laws,
THE
British History.
The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

Brennius breaks Covenant with Belinus his Brother, and in order to make War against him, marries the Daughter of the King of the Norwegians.

After this a violent Quarrel happened between his two Sons Belinus and Brennius, who were both ambitious of succeeding in the Kingdom. The Dispute was, whether of them should have the Honour of wearing the Crown. After a great many sharp Conflicts
flights that passed between them, the Friends of both at last interposed, and brought them to agree upon a Division of the Kingdom on these Terms; That Belinus should enjoy the Crown of the Island, with the Dominions of Loegria, Kambria and Cornwall, as being the First born; and because according to the Trojan Constitution the Right of Inheritance ought to come to him: And Brennus, as being the Younger, should be subject to his Brother, and have for his Share Northumberland, which extended from the River Humber to Cathaesy. The Covenant therefore being confirmed upon these Conditions, they ruled the Country for five Years in Peace and Justice. But such a State of Prosperity could not long stand against the Endeavours of Faction. For now some lying Incendiaries had Access to Brennus, and addressed themselves to him in this Manner.

"What fluggish Spirit has possessed you, that you can bear Subjection to Belinus, to whom by Parentage and Blood you are equal; besides your Experience in military Affairs, which you have gained by several Engagements, when you so often repulsed Cenophilus, General of the Morins, upon his invading our Country, and drove him out of your Kingdom? Be no longer bound by a Treaty which is a Reproach to you, but marry the Daughter of Elfin-King of the Norwegians, that with his Assistance
"Assistance, you may recover your lost Dignity." The Young Man inflamed with these and the like specious Suggestions, hearkened to them, and went to Norway, where he married the King's Daughter, as his Flatterers had instructed him.

CHAP. II.

Brennius's Sea Fight with Guichthlac King of the Dacians. Guichthlac and Brennius's Wife, being driven ashore, are taken by Belinus.

In the mean Time the Brother informed of this, took it heinously, that without his Leave he had presumed to act thus against him. Whereupon he marched into Northumberland, and possessed himself of that Country and the Cities in it, which he garrisoned with his own Men. Brennius upon Notice given him of what his Brother had done, prepares a Fleet to return to Britain with a great Army of Norwegians. But while he was under Sail with a fair Wind, he was overtaken by Guichthlac King of the Dacians, who had pursuued him. This Prince had been deeply in Love with the young Lady that Brennius had married, and out of meet Grief and Vexation for the Loss of her
her, had prepared a Fleet for the Pursuit of Brennius with all Expedition. In the Sea-Fight that happened on this Occasion, he had the Fortune to take the very Ship in which the Lady was, and brought her in among his Companions. But during the Engagement contrary Winds arose on a sudden, which brought on a Storm, and dispersed the Ships and drove them upon different Shores: So that the King of the Dacians being driven up and down, after a five Days Course arrived with the Lady at Northumberland, under dreadful Apprehensions, as not knowing upon what Country this unforeseen Casualty had thrown him. When this came to be known to the Country People, they took them and carried them to Belinus, who was upon the Sea-Coasts expecting the Arrival of his Brother. There were with Guichthlac's Ship three others, one of which had belonged to Brennius's Fleet. As soon as they had declared to the King who they were, he was overjoy'd at this happy Accident, while he was endeavouring to revenge himself on his Brother.
Belinus in a Battle routs Brennius, who thereupon flies to Gaul.

In a few Days after appeared Brennius, with his Fleet got together again, and arrived in Albania; and then receiving Information of the taking of his Wife and others, and that his Brother had seized the Kingdom of Northumberland in his Absence, he sent his Ambassadors to him, to demand the Restitution of his Wife and Kingdom; and if he refused them, to declare that he would destroy the whole Island from Sea to Sea, and kill his Brother whenever he could come to an Engagement with him. On the other Hand Belinus absolutely refused to comply with his Demands, and assembling together the whole Power of the Island, went into Albania to give him Battle. Brennius upon Advice that he had suffered a Repulse, and that his Brother was upon his march against him, advanced to meet him in a Wood called Calaterium, in order to an Attack. When they were arrived upon the Field of Battle, each of them divided his Men into several Bodies, and then approaching towards one another, began the Fight. A great Part of the Day was spent in it, because
cause on both Sides, the bravest Men were engaged; and much Blood was shed, by Reason of the Fury with which they encountered each other. So great was the Slaughter, that the Wounded fell in Heaps, like standing Corn cut down by Reapers. At last the Britains prevailing, the Norwegians fled with their shattered Troops to the Ships, but were pursued by Belinus, and killed without Mercy. In that Battle fell fifteen thousand Men; nor were there a thousand of the Rest that escaped unhurt. Brennius with much Difficulty getting one Ship, went as Fortune drove him to the Coasts of Gaul; but the Rest that had attended him, were forced to sculk up and down wheresoever their Misfortunes led them.

C H A P. IV.

The King of Dacia, with Brennius's Wife, is released out of Prison.

Belinus after this Victory, called a Council of his Nobility, to advise with them what he should do with the King of the Dacians, who had sent a Message to him out of Prison, that he would submit himself and the Kingdom of Dacia to him, and also
pay a yearly Tribute, if he might have
Leave to depart with his Mistress. He of-
ered likewise to confirm this Covenant
with an Oath, and giving of Hostages.
When this Proposal was laid before the No-
bility, they unanimously gave their Assent,
that Belinus should grant Guichthlac his Pe-
tition upon the Terms offered. Accordingly
he did grant it, and Guichthlac was released
from Prison, and returned with his Mistress
into Dacia.

CHAP. V.

BElinus revives and confirms the
Molmutine Laws, especially about
the High-ways.

BELINUS now finding no Body in the
Kingdom of Britain able to make Head
against him, and being possessed of the So-
vereignty of the whole Island from Sea to
Sea, confirmed the Laws his Father had
made, and gave Command for a settled
Execution of Justice through his Kingdom.
But especially he ordered that Cities, and
the Ways leading to them, should enjoy
the same Privilege of Peace that Dunwallo
had established. But there happened to
arise a Controversy about the Ways, be-
cause the Limits determining them were
unknown. The King therefore willing to
clear
clear the Law of all Ambiguities, summoned all the Workmen of the Island together, and commanded them to pave a Causeway of Stone and Mortar, which should run the whole Length of the Island, from the Sea of Cornwall, to the Shore of Caithness, and lead directly to the Cities that lay along that Extent. Another he commanded to be made over the Breadth of the Kingdom, leading from Menevia, that was situated upon the Demetian Sea, to Hamo's Port, and to pass through the interjacent Cities. Other two he also made obliquely through the Island, for a Passage to the rest of the Cities. Then he confirmed to them all Honours and Privileges, and prescribed a Law for the Punishment of any Injury committed upon them. But if any one is curious to know all that he decreed concerning them, let him read the Molmutine Laws, which Gildas the Historian translated from British into Latin, and King Alfred into English.

CHAP. VI.

Brennius being made Duke of the Allobroges, returns to Britain to fight his Brother.

While Belinus was thus reigning in Peace and Tranquillity, his Brother Brennius, who (as we said before) was driven
ven upon the Coasts of Gaul, suffered great Torments of Mind. For it was a great Affliction to him to be banished his Country, and to have no Power of returning to retrieve his Loss. Being ignorant what Course to take, he went among the Princes of Gaul, accompanied only with twelve Men; and when he had related his Misfortune to every one of them, but could procure Assistance from none, he went at last to Seginus, Duke of the Allobroges, from whom he had an honourable Reception. During his Stay here, he contracted such an Intimacy with the Duke, that he became the greatest Favourite in the Court. For in all Affairs both of Peace and War, he shew'd a great Capacity, so that this Prince loved him with a paternal Affection. He was besides of a graceful Aspect, tall and slender in Stature, and expert in Hunting and Fowling, as became his Princely Birth. So great was the Friendship between them, that the Duke resolved to give him his only Daughter in Marriage; and in Case he himself should have no Male Issue, he appointed him and his Daughter to succeed him in his Kingdom of the Allobroges after his Death; But if he should yet have a Son, then he promised his Assistance to advance him to the Kingdom of Britain. Neither was this the Desire of the Duke only, but of all the Nobility of his Court, with whom he had very much
much ingratiated himself. So then without farther Delay, the Marriage was solemnized, and the Princes of the Country paid their Homage to him, as the Successor to the Throne. Scarce was the Year at an End, before the Duke died, and then Brennius took his Opportunity of engaging those Princes of the Country firmly in his Interest, whom before he had obliged with his Friendship. And this he did by bestowing generously upon them the Duke's Treasure, which had been hoarded up from the Times of his Ancestors. But that which the Allobroges most esteemed him for, was his sumptuous Entertainments, and keeping an open House for all.

CHAP. VII.

Belinus and Brennius being made Friends by the Mediation of their Mother, propose the subduing of Gaul.

When he had thus gained an universal Affection, he began to consult with himself, how he might take Revenge upon his Brother Belinus. And when he had signified his Intentions concerning it to his Subjects, they unanimously con-
curred with him, and expressed their Readiness to attend him to whatever Kingdom he pleased to conduct them. Then in a short Time raising a vast Army, he entered into a Treaty with the Gauls, for a free Passage through their Country into Britain; and having fitted out a Fleet upon the Coast of Neustria, he set sail, and with a fair Wind arrived at the Island. Upon hearing the Rumour of his coming, his Brother Belinus, accompanied with the whole Strength of the Kingdom, marched out to engage with him. But when the two Armies were drawn out in Order of Battle, and just ready to begin the Attack, Convenna their Mother, who was yet living, passed in great haste through the Ranks, out of an Impatience to see her Son, whom she had not seen of a long Time. As soon therefore as she had with trembling Steps reached the Place where he stood, she threw her Arms about his Neck, and in Transports kissed him; then uncovering her Bosom, she addressed herself to him, in Words interrupted with Sighs, to this Effect.

"Remember, Son, remember these Breasts you have sucked, and the Womb wherein the Creator of all Things formed you, and from whence he brought you forth into the World, while I endured the
the greatest Anguish. By the Pains then:
I have suffered for you, I intreat you hear
my Request: Pardon your Brother, and
moderate your Anger. You ought not
to revenge yourself upon him that has
done you no Injury. For what you com-
plain of, that you was banished your
Country by him, if you duly consider
the Event of it, cannot in Strictness be
called Injustice. He did not banish you
to make your Condition worse, but for-
ced you to quit a meaner, that you
might attain a higher Dignity. At first
you enjoy'd only a Part of a Kingdom,
and that in Subjection to your Brother:
As soon as you lost that, you became his
Equal, by gaining the Kingdom of the
Allobroges. What has he then done but
promoted you from a Viceroy, to be a
great King? Consider farther, that the
Difference betwixt you began not through
him, but yourself, who with the Assist-
ance of the King of Norway, made Insur-
rection against him.

Moved with these Representations of his
Mother, he obeyed her with a composed
Mind, and putting off his Helmet of his
own Accord, went straight with her to his
Brother. Belinus seeing him approach with
a peaceable Countenance, threw down his
Arms, and ran to embrace him; so that
now
now without any Difficulty, they became
Friends again; and disarming their Forces,
marched with them peaceably together to
Trinovantum. And here after Consultation
what Enterprize to undertake, they prepa-
red to conduct their Confederate Army into
the Provinces of Gaul, and to reduce that
whole Country under their Subjection.

CHAP. VIII.

Belinus and Brennius after the Con-
quest of Gaul, march with their
Army to Rome.

The Year after, they accordingly
passed over into Gaul, and began to
lay waste that Country. The News of
which spreading through those several Na-
tions, all the petty Kings of the Franks en-
tered into a Confederacy, and went out to
fight them. But the Victory falling to
Belinus and Brennius, the Franks fled with
their broken Forces; and the Britains and
Allobroges elevated with their Success, ceased
not to pursue them till they had taken their
Kings, and reduced them under their Pow-
er. Then fortifying the Cities they had ta-
ken, they brought the whole Kingdom un-
der their Subjection in less than a Years
Time.
Time. At last after a Reduction of all the Provinces, they marched with their whole Army towards Rome, and destroyed the Cities and Villages as they passed through Italy.


cH A P. IX.

The Romans make a Covenant with Brennius, but afterwards break it; for which Reason Rome is besieged and taken by Brennius.

The two Consuls of Rome were then Gabius and Porsena, to whose Care the Government of the Country was committed: Who, when they saw that no Nation was able to withstand the Power of Belinius and Brennius, came with the Consent of the Senate to them, to desire Peace and Amity. They likewise offered large Presents of Gold and Silver, and to pay a yearly Tribute, on Condition they might be suffered to enjoy their own in Peace. The two Kings therefore taking Hostages of them yielded to their Petition, and drew back their Forces into Germany. While they were employing their Arms in barrassing that People, the Romans repented of their Agreement, and taking new Courage, went to assist the Germans.

This
This step highly enraged the Kings against them, who concerted Measures how to carry on a War with both Nations. For the Greatness of the Italian Army was a Terror to them. The Result of their Council was, that Belinus with the Britains stay'd in Germany, to engage with the Enemy there; while Brennius and his Army marched to Rome, to revenge on the Romans their Breach of Treaty. As soon as the Italians perceived their Design, they quitted the Germans, and hastened to get before Brennius, in his march to Rome. Belinus had Intelligence of it, and speedily marched back with his Army the same Night, and possessing himself of a Valley through which the Enemy was to pass, there lay hid in expectation of their coming. The next Day the Italians came upon a full March to the same Place; but when they saw the Valley glittering with the Enemy's Armour, they were struck with Confusion, thinking Brennius and the Galli Senones were there. At this favourable Opportunity, Belinus on a sudden rushed forth, and furiously fell upon them: And the Romans on the other Hand, in great Surprize, as quickly fly the Field, since they neither were armed, nor marched in any Order. But Belinus gave them no Quarter, and was only prevented by the Night coming on, from making a total Destruction of them. With this Victory he went
went straight to Brennius, who had now besieged Rome three Days. Then joining their Armies, they assault the City on every Side, and endeavour to level the Walls: And to strike a greater Terror into the Besieged, erected Gallows before the Gates of the City, and threatened to hang up the Hostages they had given, unless they would surrender. But the Romans nothing moved at the Sufferings of their Sons and Relations, continued inflexible, and resolute to defend themselves. And therefore sometimes broke the Force of the Enemies Engines, by other Engines of their own, sometimes repulsed them from the Walls with Showers of Darts. Which so incensed the two Brothers, that they commanded four and twenty of their Noblest Hostages to be hanged in the Sight of their Parents. But the Romans were only more hardened at the Spectacle, and had now received a Message from Gabius and Porfena their Consuls; that they would come the next Day to their Assistance; whereupon they resolved to march out of the City, and give the Enemy Battle. And accordingly just as they were ranging their Troops in Order, appeared the Consuls with their reassembled Forces, marching up to begin the Attack. These therefore advancing, in a close Body, fell on the Britains and Allobroges to their great Surprize, and being joined with the
the Citizens that sally'd forth killed no small Number. The Brothers in great Grief to see such Destruction made of their Fellow Soldiers, began to Spirit up their Men, and then breaking in upon the Enemy several Times, forced them to retire. At last, after the Loss of many Thousands of brave Men on both Sides, the Brothers got the Day, and also took the City, Gabius being first killed and Porcena taken Prisoner: Which done they divided among their Men all the hidden Treasure of the City.

C H A P. X.

Brennus oppresses Italy in a most tyrannical Manner. Belinus returns to Britain.

The Victory thus gained, Brennus stay'd in Italy, where he exercisd unheard of Tyranny over the People. But the rest of his Actions and his Death, seeing they are delivered in the Roman Histories, I shall here pass over, to avoid Proligity and meddling with what others have treated of; which is foreign to my Design. But Belinus returned to Britain, which he governed the Remainder of his Life in Peace. Cities that were falling to Ruin he repaired; and

...
Built many new ones. Among the rest he built one upon the River Uske near the Severn Sea, which was for a long Time called Caerose, and was the Metropolis of Demetia: But after the Coming in of the Romans it lost its first Name, and was called the City of Legions; from the Roman Legions which used to take up their Winter Quarters in it. He also made a Gate of wonderful Structure in Trinovantium, upon the Bank of the Thames, which the Citizens call after his Name Bellinggate to this Day. Over it he built a prodigious large Tower, and under it a Haven or Key for Ships. He was a strict Observer of Justice, and re-established his Fathers Laws everywhere through the Kingdom. In his Days there was so great an Affluence of Riches among the People, that no Age before or after is said to have shewn the like. At last when he had finished his Days, his Body was burnt, and the Ashes put up in a golden Urn, which they placed at Trinovantium with wonderful Art on the Top of the Tower above-mention'd.
CHAP. XI.

Gurgiunt Brabtruc succeeding his Father Belinus, reduces Dacia that was shaking off his Yoke.

He was succeeded by Gurgiunt Brabtruc his Son, a sober prudent Prince, who followed the Example of his Father in all his Actions, and was a Lover of Peace and Justice. When some neighbouring Provinces rebelled against him, he inheriting the Bravery of his Father, repressed their Insolence in several fierce Battles, and so reduced them under a perfect Subjection to him. Among many other Things it happened, that the King of the Dacians, who paid Tribute in his Fathers Time, refused not only Tribute, but all manner of Homage to him: Which he resented heinously, and passed over in a Fleet to Dacia, where he harassed the People with a most cruel War, slew their King, and reduced the Country under its ancient Yoke.
Ireland is given to be inhabited by the Barclenfes, who had been banished out of Spain.

At that Time, as he was returning home from his Conquest through the Orkney Islands, he found thirty Ships fraught with Men and Women; and upon his enquiring of them the Occasion of their coming thither, their Leader named Partholom, approached him in a respectful and submissive Manner, and desired Pardon and Peace. Then he told him, that he had been driven out of Spain, and was failing round those Seas in quest of a Habitation. He also desired some small Part of Britain to dwell in, that they might put an End to their tedious Wandering: For it was now a Year and half since he had been driven out of his Country, all which Time he and his Company had been out at Sea. When Gurgiunt Brabtruc understood that they came from Spain, and were called Barclenfes, he granted their Petition, and sent Men with them to Ireland, which was then wholly uninhabited, and assigned it to them. There they grew up and encreased in Number, and have possessed that Island to this very Day. Gurgiunt Brabtruc
Brabtruc after this ended his Days in Peace, and was buried in the City of Legions, which after his Fathers Death he beautified with Buildings and Walls.

C H A P. XIII.

Guithelin reigning after Gurgiunt Brabtruc, the Martian Law is instituted by Martia a noble Woman.

After him Guithelin wore the Crown, which he enjoy'd all his Life, with Mildness and Affection to his People. He had for his Wife a noble Lady named Martia, accomplished in all kind of Learning. Among many other admirable Productions of her Wit, she was the Author of what the Britains call the Martian Law. This also among other Things King Alfred translated, and called it in the Saxon Tongue PaMarchitie Lage. Upon the Death of Guithelin, the Government of the Kingdom remained in the Hands of this Queen and her Son Sislinus, who was then but seven Years old, and therefore unfit to take the Government upon himself alone.
CHAP. XIV.

Guithelin's Successors in the Kingdom.

For this Reason the Mother had the sole Management of Affairs committed to her, out of a Regard to her great Sense and Judgment. But she dying, Sisilius took the Crown and Government upon himself. After him reigned Kimarus his Son, to whom succeeded Darius his Brother. He dying the Crown came to Morvidus, whom he had by his Concubine Tangufela. He would have made a Prince of extraordinary Worth, had he not been addicted to immoderate Cruelty, so far that in his Anger he spared no Body, if any Weapon was at Hand. He was of a graceful Aspect, extremely liberal, and of such vast Strength as was not to be matched in the whole Kingdom.

CHAP. XV.

Morvidus a most cruel Tyrant, after the Conquest of the King of the Morines, is devoured by a Monster.

In his Time a certain King of the Morines arrived with a great Force in Northumberland, and began to destroy the Country. But
But Morvidus with all the Strength of the Kingdom, marched out against him, and fought him. In this Battle, he alone did more than the greatest Part of his Army, and after the Victory, suffered not one to escape alive. For he commanded them to be brought to him one after another, that he might satisfy his Cruelty in seeing them killed: And when he grew somewhat tired with this, he gave Orders that they should be flead alive and burnt. During these and other monstrous Acts of Cruelty, there happened a Misfortune which put a Period to his Wickedness. There was come from the Coasts of the Irish Sea, a most cruel Monster, that was continually devouring the People upon the Sea-Coasts. As soon as this News came to him, he ventured to go and encounter it alone; but when he had in vain spent all his Darts upon it, the Monster hastened up to him, and with open Jaws swallowed him up like a small Fish.

C H A P. XVI.

Gorbonian a most just King of the Britains.

He had five Sons, whereof the Firstborn, named Gorbonian, ascended the Throne. There was not in his Time a greater
greater Lover of Justice and Equity, or a more careful Ruler of the People. The performing of due Worship to the Gods, and doing Justice to the common People, was his continual Employment. Through all the Cities of Britain, he repaired the Temples of the Gods, and built many more new ones. In all his Days, the Island abounded with all manner of Riches, more than all its neighbouring Countries. For he gave great Encouragement to Husbandmen in their Tillage, by protecting them against any Injury or Oppression of their Lords; and the Soldiers he amply rewarded with Money, so that no one had occasion to do wrong to another. Amidst these and many other Acts of his innate Goodness, he pay'd the Debt of Nature, and was buried at Trinovantium.

C H A P. XVII.

Arthgallo is deposed by the Britains, and is succeeded by Elioture, who restores him again to the Kingdom.

After him Arthgallo his Brother was dignified with the Crown; who in all his Actions was the very Reverse of his
his Brother. The Nobility he every where endeavoured to depress, and advance the baser Sort of the People. The Rich he plundered, and by that Means heaped to himself vast Treasures. But the Nobility disdaining to bear his Tyranny any longer, made an Insurrection against him, and deposed him; and then advanced Elidure his Brother, who was afterwards surname the Pious, on account of his Compassion to him in Distress. For after five Years Possession of the Kingdom, as he happened to be hunting in the Wood Calaterium, he met his Brother that had been deposed. For he had travelled over several Kingdoms, to desire Assistance for the recovering of his lost Dominions, but had procured none. And being now no longer able to bear the Poverty to which he was reduced, he returned back to Britain, attended only with ten Men, with a Design to repair to those who had been formerly his Friends. Therefore just as he was passing through the Wood, his Brother Elidure, who little expected it, got a Sight of him, and forgetting all Injuries, ran to him, and affectionately embraced him. And as he had long lamented his Brothers Affliction, he therefore carried him with him to the City Alcud, where he hid him in his Bed-chamber. After this, he there feigned himself sick, and sent his Messengers over the whole Kingdom,
dom, to signify to all his Prime Nobility that they should come to visit him. Accordingly, when they were all met together at the City where he lay, he gave Orders that they should come into his Chamber one by one, softly, and without Noise: His Pretence for which was, that their Talk would be a Disturbance to his Head, should they all crowd in together. So they in Obedience to his Commands, and without the least Suspicion of any Design, entred his House one after another. But Elidure had given a Charge to his Servants, who were let ready for the Purpose, to take each of them as they entred, and Cut off their Heads, unless they would again submit themselves to Arthgallo his Brother. Thus did he with every one of them apart, and compelled them through Fear, to be reconciled to Arthgallo. At last the Agreement being Ratified, Elidure conducted Arthgallo to Tork, where he took the Crown off his own Head, and put it on his Brothers. From this Act, wherein he shew'd so great Piety to his Brother, he obtained the Surname of Pious. Arthgallo after this reigned ten Years, and now made Amends for his former Male-Administration, by pursuing Measures quite contrary to his first, in depresssing the baser Sort, and advancing Men of good Birth; in sufferers every one to enjoy his own, and exercising strict Justice.
At last Sickness seizing him, he died, and was buried in the City Kaerleir.

CHAP. XVIII.

Elidure is imprisoned by Peredure, after whose Death he is a third Time advanced to the Throne.

Then was Elidure again advanced to the Throne, and restored to his former Dignity. But while in his Government he followed the Example of his eldest Brother Gorbonian, in performing all Acts of Grace; his two remaining Brothers Vigenius and Peredure, raised an Army, and made War against him, in which they proved Victorious; so that they took him Prisoner, and shut him up in the Tower at Trinovantum, where they placed a Guard over him. Then they divided the Kingdom betwixt them, the Part that is from the River Humber Westward, falling to Vigenius's Share, and the Remainder with all Albania to Peredure's. After seven Years Vigenius died, and so the whole Kingdom came to Peredure. Being now honoured with the Crown, he henceforward governed the People with Generosity and Mildness, so that he even excelled his other Brothers that preceded
ceded him, nor was any mention now made of Elidure. But irresistible Fate took him off at last suddenly, and so made Way for Elidure's quick Release from Prison, and Advancement to the Throne the third Time; who as he had finished the Course of his Life in just and virtuous Actions, after his Death left an Example of Piety to be imitated by all his Successors.

C H A P. XIX.

The Names of Elidure's thirty-three Successors.

ELIDURE, being dead, Gorbonian: Son enjoy'd the Crown, and imitated his Uncle's wise and prudent Government. For he abhorred Tyranny, and practised Justice and Mildness towards the People, nor ever swerved from the Rule of Equity. After him reigned Margin, the Son of Arthgallo, who being instructed by the Examples of his immediate Predecessors, held the Government in Peace. Him succeeded Enniaunus his Brother, who took a quite contrary Course in his Reign; in the sixth Year of which he was deposed, for having preferred a tyrannical, before a just and legal Administration. In his Room was placed his Kinsman
Kinsman Ithalo, the Son of Vigenius, who being admonished by Enniusunus's ill Success, became a strict Observer of Justice and Equity. Him succeeded Runno, the Son of Peredure, whose Successor was Geruntius, the Son of Elidure. After him reigned Catellus his Son; after Catellus, Coillus; after Coillus, Porrex; after Porrex, Cherin. This Prince had three Sons, Fulgenius, Eldadus, and Andragius, who all reigned one after another. Then succeeded Urianus, the Son of Andragius; after whom reigned in Order, Elind, Cedauclus, Cletonus, Gurgintius, Merrianus, Belduno, Cap, Oenus, Sispian, Blegabred. This last Prince for Songs and Skill in all Musical Instruments, excelled all the Musicians that had been before him, so as he seemed worthy of the Title of The God of Jesters. After him reigned Arthmail his Brother; after Arthmail, Eldol; whom succeeded in Order Redion, Rederchius, Samuelpenisael, Pir, Capoir, and Cligneillius the Son of Capoir, a Man prudent and mild in all his Actions, and who above all things made it his Business to exercise true Justice among his People.
Heli's three Sons; the first of whom, viz. Lud, gives Name to the City of London.

Next to him succeeded Heli his Son; and reigned forty Years. He had three Sons, Lud, Caffibellum, and Nennius; of whom Lud being the Eldest, succeeded in the Kingdom after his Fathers Death. He became famous for the building of Cities, and for rebuilding the Walls of Trinovantum, which he also surrounded with innumerable Towers. He likewise commanded the Citizens to build Houses, and all other kinds of Structures in it, so that no City in all the Foreign Countries to a great Distance, could shew more beautiful Palaces. He was withal a Warlike Man, and very magnificent in his Feasts and publick Entertainments. And though he had many other Cities, yet he loved this above them all, and resided in it the greater Part of the Year; for which Reason it was afterwards called Kaerlad, and by the Corruption of the Word, Caer-london; and again by change of Languages in Process of Time, London; as also by Foreigners who arrived here, and reduced this Country under their Subjection, Londres. At last he dying, his Body was buried by the
the Gate which to this Time is in the British Tongue called after his Name Parthlud, and in the Saxon, Lodegata. He had two Sons, Androgeus and Tenuantius, who were incapable of Governing on Account of their Age; and therefore their Unkle Cassibellaun was preferred to the Kingdom in their Room. As soon as he was Crowned, he began to display his Generosity and Magnificence to such a Degree, that his Fame reached to distant Kingdoms: Which was the Reason that the Monarchy of the whole Kingdom came to be invested in him, and not in his Nephews. Notwithstanding Cassibellaun, from an Impulse of Piety, would not suffer them to be without their Share in the Kingdom, but assigned a large Part of it to them. For the City Trinovantum, with the Dukedom of Kent, he bestow'd on Androgeus; and the Dukedom of Cornwall on Tenuantius. But he himself, as possessing the Crown, had the Sovereignty over them, and all the Princes of the Island.
THE

British History.

The Fourth Book.

CHAP. I.

Julius Cæsar infects Britain.

In the mean Time it happened, (as is found in the Roman Histories,) that Julius Cæsar having subdued Gaul, came to the Shore of Ruteni. And when from thence he had got a Prospect of the Island of Britain, he enquired of those about him what Country it was, and what People inhabited it. Then fixing his Eyes upon the Ocean, as soon as he was informed of the Name of the Kingdom and the People, he said; "In Truth We Romans and the Britains have the same Origin, ..."
Book IV. The British History.

"Our first Father after the Destruction of Troy, was Aeneas; theirs Brutus, whose Father was Sylvius, the Son of Ascanius, the Son of Aeneas. But I am deceived, if they are not very much degenerated from us, and know nothing of the Art of War, since they live separated by the Ocean from the whole World. They may be easily forced to be our Tributaries, and Subjects to the Roman State. But first we must send them Word, before the Romans offer to invade or assault them, that they pay Tribute as other Nations do, and submit themselves to the Senate; for fear we should violate the ancient Nobility of our Father Priamus, by shedding the Blood of our Kinsmen." All which he accordingly took Care to signify, by writing to Cassibellaunus; who in great Indignation returned him an Answer in the following Letter.

CHAP. II.
Cassibellaunus's Letter to Julius Caesar.

"CASSIBELLAUN, King of the Britains, to Caius Julius Caesar. We cannot but wonder, Caesar, at the Avarice
"Avarice of the Roman People, since their unsatiable Thirst after Money, cannot let us alone whom the Dangers of the Ocean have placed in a manner out of the World; but they must have the Presumption to covet our Substance, which we have hitherto enjoyed in Quiet. Neither is this indeed sufficient: We must also prefer Subjection and Slavery to them, before the Enjoyment of our Native Liberty. Your Demand therefore, Cæsar, is scandalous, since the same Vein of Nobility flows from Aeneas in Britains and Romans, and one and the same Chain of Consanguinity shines in both: Which ought to be a Band of firm Union and Friendship. That was what you should have demanded of us, and not Slavery: We have learned to admit of the one, but never to bear the other. And so much have we been accustomed to Liberty, that we are perfectly ignorant what it is to submit to Slavery. And if even the Gods themselves should attempt to deprive us of our Liberty, we would to the utmost of our Power resist them in Defence of it. Know then, Cæsar, that we are ready to fight for that and our Kingdom, if, as you threaten, you shall attempt to invade Britain.

CHAP.
C H A P. III.

Cæsar is routed by Cassibellaun.

At the Receipt of this Answer, Cæsar makes ready his Fleet, and waits for a fair Wind to execute in Earneit what he had threatened Cassibellaun with. As soon as the Wind stood fair, he hoisted his Sails, and arrived with his Army at the Mouth of the River Thames. The Ships were now just come close to Land, when Cassibellaun with all his Forces appeared on his March against them; and coming to the Town of Dorobellum, he consulted with his Nobility how to thrive out the Enemy. There was present with him Belinus, General of his Army, by whose Counsel the whole Kingdom was governed. There were also his two Nephews, Androgeus Duke of Trinovantum, and Tenuantius Duke of Cornwall, together with three inferior Kings, Cridious King of Albèria, Guenthaeth of Venedotia, and Britael of Demetia, who, as they had encouraged the Rest to fight the Enemy, gave their Advice to march directly to Cæsar’s Camp, and drive them out of the Country before they could take any City or Town. For if he should possess himself of any fortified Places, they said it would be harder to force him out, because he would then know whither to make
make a Retreat with his Men. To this Proposal all agreed, and advanced towards the Shore where Julius Cæsar had pitched his Camp. And now both Armies drew out in order of Battle, and began the Fight, wherein both Bows and Swords were employ'd. Immediately the Wounded fell in Heaps on each Side, and the Ground was drenched with the Blood of the Slain, as much as if it had been washed with the sudden Return of the Tide. While the Armies were thus engaged, it happened that Nennius and Androgeus, with the Citizens of Canterbury and Trinovantum, whom they commanded, had the Fortune to meet with the very Troop where the General himself was present. And upon an Assault made, the Generals Cohort was very near routed by the Britains falling upon them in a close Body. During this Action, Fortune gave Nennius an Opportunity of encountering with Cæsar. Nennius therefore boldly made up to him, and was in great Joy that he could but give so much as one Blow to so great a Man. On the other Hand Cæsar being aware of his Design, stretched out his Shield to receive him, and with all his Might struck him upon the Helmet with his drawn Sword; which he lifted up again with an Intention to finish his first Blow, and make it Mortal; but Nennius carefully prevented him with his Shield, into
into which Caesar's Sword gliding with great force from the Helmet, came to be so hard fastned, that when by the breaking in of the Troops, they could no longer continue the Encounter, the General was not able to draw it out again. Nennius thus becoming Master of Caesar's Sword, threw away his own, and pulling the other out, made haste to employ it against the Enemy. Whomsoever he struck with it, he either cut off his Head, or left him wounded without hopes of recovery. While he was thus exerting himself, he was met by Labienus a Tribune, whom he killed in the very beginning of the Encounter. At last, after the greatest part of the Day was spent, the Britains poured in so fast, and made such vigorous efforts, that by the blessing of God they obtained the Victory, and Caesar with his broken Forces, retired to his Camp and Fleet. The very same Night, as soon as he had got his Men together again, he went on board his Fleet, rejoicing that he had the Sea for his Camp. And upon his Companions dissuading him from pursuing the War any longer, he acquiesced in their Advice, and returned back to Gaul.
CHAP. IV.

Nennius the Brother of Cassibellaun, being wounded in Battle by Cæsar, dies.

Cassibellaun in Joy for this Triumph, returned solemn Thanks to God; and calling the Companions of his Victory together, amply rewarded every one of them, according as they had distinguished themselves. On the other Hand he was very much oppressed with Grief for his Brother Nennius, who lay mortally wounded, and at the very Point of Death. For Cæsar had wounded him in the Encounter, and the Blow he had given, proved uncurable; so that fifteen Days after the Battle he died of it, and was buried at Trinovantum, by the North-Gate. His Funeral Exequies were performed with Regal Pomp, and Cæsar's Sword put into the Tomb with him, which he kept Possession of when struck into his Shield in the Combat. The Name of the Sword was Crocea Mors, Yellow Death, as being mortal to every Body that was wounded with it.
C H A P. V.

Cælars unglorious Return to Gaul.

AFTER this Flight of Cæsar, and his Arrival at the Gallican Coast, the Gauls attempted to rebel and throw off his Yoke. For they thought he was so much weakened, that his Forces could be no longer a Terror to them. Besides, a general Report was spread among them, that Caesar was now out at Sea with a vast Fleet to pursue him in his Flight: On which Account the Gauls growing still more bold, began to think of driving him out of their Coasts. Julius apprehending their Designs, was not willing to engage in a doubtful War with a fierce People, but rather chose to go to all their Prime Nobility with open Treasures, and reconcile them with Presents. To the common People he promises Liberty, to the Dispossessed the Restitution of their Estates, and even to the Slaves their Freedom. Thus he that had insulted them before with the Fierceness of a Lion, and plundered them of all, does now with the Mildness of a Lamb fawn to them with submissive abject Speeches, and is glad to restore all again. These Meanesses was he forced to condescend to, till he had pacified them, and was able to regain his lost Power
Power. In the mean Time not a Day past without reflecting upon his Flight, and the Britain’s Victory.

CHAP. VI.

Cassibellaun forms a Stratagem for drowning Cæsar’s Ships.

AFTER two Years were expired, he prepares to pass the Sea again, and revenge himself on Cassibellaun, who having Intelligence of his Design, everywhere fortified his Cities, repaired the ruined Walls, placed armed Men at all the Ports, and in the River Thames, on which Cæsar intended to sail up to Trinovantum, he caused Iron and Leadén Stakes, each as thick as a Mans Thigh, to be fixed under the Surface of the Water, for Cæsar to split his Ships upon. Then he assembled all the Forces of the Island, and took up his Quarters with them near the Sea-Coasts, in Expectation of the Enemy’s coming.
CHAP. VII.

Caesar a second Time vanquished by the Britains.

JULIUS, after he had furnished himself with all Necessaries, embarked with a vast Army, eager to revenge himself on a People that had defeated him; in which he had undoubtedly succeeded, if he could but have brought his Fleet safe to Land; but this he was not able to do. For in failing up the Thames to Trinovantium, the Ships happened to strike against the Stakes, which so endangered them all on a sudden, that many Thousands of the Men were drowned, while the Ships being bored through sunk down into the River. Caesar upon this employ'd all his Force to shift his Sails, and hastened to get back again to Land. And so those that remained, after a narrow Escape go on Shore with him. Cassibellaun, who was present upon the Bank, with Joy observed the Disaster of the drowned, but grieved at the Escape of the Rest: And upon his giving a Signal to his Men, makes an Attack upon the Romans, who notwithstanding the Danger they had suffered in the River, when landed, bravely withstood the Britains; and having no other Fence to trust to but their own
own Courage, they made no small Slaughter; but yet suffered a greater themselves, than what they were able to give the Enemy. For their Number was considerably diminished by their Loss in the River: Whereas the Britains being hourly increased with new Recruits, were three times their Number, and by that Advantage defeated them. Cæsar seeing he could no longer maintain his Ground, fled with a small Body of Men to his Ships, and made the Sea his safe Retreat; and as the Wind then stood fair, he hoisted his Sails and steered to the Morine Shore. From thence he repaired to a certain Tower, which he had built at a Place called Odsea, before this second Expedition into Britain. For he durst not trust the Instability of the Gauls, who he feared would fall upon him a second Time, as we have said already they did before, after his first Flight that he was forced to make before the Britains. And on that Account he had built this Tower for a Refuge to himself, that he might be able to maintain his Ground against a rebellious People, if they should make Insurrection against him.
C H A P. VIII.

Evelinus kills Hirelglas. Androgeus desires Cælars Assistance against Cassibellaun.

Cassibellaun being elevated with joy for this second Victory, published a Decree, to summon all the Nobility of Britain with their Wives to Trinovantum, in order to perform solemn Sacrifices to their Tutelary Gods, who had given them the Victory over so great a Commander. Accordingly they all readily appeared, and prepared Variety of Sacrifices, for which there was a great Slaughter of Cattle. At this Solemnity they offered forty thousand Cows, and a hundred thousand Sheep, and also Fowls of several Kinds, without Number, besides thirty thousand wild Beasts of several Kinds. As soon as they had performed these solemn Honours to their Gods, they feasted themselves of the Remainder, as was usual at Sacrifices, and spent the rest of the Day and Night in various Plays and Sports. Amidst these Diversions, it happened that two noble Youths, whereof one was Nephew to the King, the other to Duke Androgeus, wrestled together, and afterwards had a Dispute about the Victory.
The Name of the Kings Nephew was Hirigelgas, the other's Evelinus. As they were casting Reproaches at each other, Evelinus snatched up his Sword and cut off the others Head. This sudden Disastuer put the whole Court into a Consternation, upon which the King ordered Evelinus to be brought before him, that he might be ready to undergo such Sentence as the Nobility should pass, and that the Death of Hirigelgas might be revenged upon him, if he was unjustly killed. Androgeus suspecting the Kings Intentions, made Answer, that he had a Court of his own, and that whatever should be alledged against his own Men, ought to be determined there. If therefore he had been resolv'd to demand Justice of Evelinus, he might have had it at Trinovantum, according to ancient Custom. Cassibellanus finding he could not attain his Ends, threaten'd Androgeus to destroy his Country with Fire and Sword, if he would not comply with his Demands. But Androgeus now incensed, scorned all Compliance with him. On the other Hand Cassibellanus in a great Rage hastened to make good his Threatning, and ravage his Country. This forced Androgeus to make use of daily Solicitations to the King, by Means of such as were related to him, or intimate with him, to divert his Rage. But when he found these Methods ineffectual, he began in Earnest to consider
consider how to oppose him. At last, when all other Hopes failed, he resolved to desire Assistance of Cæsar, and write a Letter to him to this Effect.

"Androgeus Duke of Trinovantum, to Caius Julius Cæsar, after Wishes of Death, now wishes Health. I repent that ever I acted against you, when you made War against the King. Had I never been guilty of such Exploits, you would have vanquished Cassibellaun, who is so swoln with Pride, since his Victory, that he is endeavouring to drive me out of his Coasts, who procured him that Triumph. Is this a fit Reward for my Services? I have settled him in an Inheritance: And he endeavours to disinherit me. I have a second Time restored him to the Kingdom: And he endeavours to destroy me: All this I have done for him in fighting against you. I call the Gods to witness I have not deserved his Anger, unless I can be said to deserve it for refusing to deliver my Nephew, whom he would have condemned to die unjustly. Of which that you in your discerning Mind may be better able to judge, take this Account of the Matter. It happened that for Joy of the Victory, we performed solemn Honours to our Tutelary Gods, in which after we had finished our Sacrifices,
"fices, our Youth diverted themselves with
"Sports. Among the rest two of our Ne-
"phews, encouraged by the Example of
"others, entred the Lifts; and when my
"Nephew had got the better, the other
"without any Cause was incensed, and
"just going to strike him; but he avoided
"the Blow, and taking him by the Hand
"that held the Sword, strove to wrest it
"from him. In this Struggle the Kings
"Nephew happened to fall upon the
"Swords Point, and suddenly dy'd upon
"the Spot. When the King was informed
"of it, he commanded me to deliver up the
"Youth, that he might be punished for
"Murder. I refused to do it; whereupon
"he invaded my Provinces with all his
"Forces, and has given me very great
"Disturbance. I therefore flying to your
"Clemency, desire your Assistance, that
"by you I may be restored to my Digni-
"ty, and by me you may gain the Po-
"session of Britain. Let no Doubts of
"Suspicion of Treachery in this Matter
"detain you. Be sway'd by the common
"Motive of Mankind; let past Enmities
"beget a Desire of Friendship; and after
"Flight be more eager for Victory."
CHAP. IX.

Cassibellaun being put to Flight and besieged by Cæsar desires Peace."

CÆSAR having read the Letter, was advised by his Friends not to go into Britain upon a bare verbal Invitation of the Duke, unless he would send such Hostages as might be for his Security. Without delay therefore Androgeus sent his Son Secva with thirty young Noblemen nearly related to him. Upon delivery of the Hostages, Cæsar now free'd from Suspicion reassembles his Forces; and with a fair Wind arrived at the Port of Rutupi. In the mean Time Cassibellaun had begun to besiege Trinovantum and ravage the Country Towns; but finding Cæsar was arrived, he raised the Siege and hastened to meet him. As soon as he entered a Valley near Dorebernia, he saw the Roman Army preparing their Camp: For Androgeus had conducted them to this Place, for the Convenience of making a sudden Assault upon the City. The Romans seeing the Britains advancing towards them, quickly flew to their Arms, and ranged themselves in several Bodies. The Britains also put on their Arms, and placed themselves in their Ranks. But Androgeus with five thousand Men lay hid in a Wood hard by, to be ready
ready to assist Caesar, and spring forth on a sudden upon Caffibellaun and his Party. Both Armies now approached to begin the Fight, some with Bows and Arrows, some with Swords, so that much Blood was shed on both Sides, and the Wounded fell down like Leaves in Autumn. While they were thus engaged, Androgens sally's forth of the Wood, and falls upon the Reer of Caffibellaun's Army, upon which the Hopes of the Battle entirely depended. And now what with the Breach the Romans had made through them just before, what with the furious Irruption of their own Countrymen, they were no longer able to stand their Ground, but were obliged with their broken Forces to quit the Field. Hard by the Place there stood a rocky Mountain, on the Top of which was a thick Hazel Wood. Hither Caffibellaun flies with his Men after he had found himself worsted; and having climbed up to the very Top of the Mountain, bravely defend ed himself and killed the pursuing Enemy. For the Roman Forces with those of Androgens pursued him to disperse his flying Troops, and climbing up the Mountain after them made many Assaults, but all to little Pur pose; for the Rockiness of the Mountain and great Height of its Top was a Defence to the Britains, and the Advantage of higher Ground gave them an Opportunity of killing great Numbers of the Enemy. Caesar hereupon
hereupon besieged the Mountain that whole Night, which had now overtaken them, and shut up all the Avenues to it; intending to reduce the King by Famine, since he could not do it by Force of Arms. Such was the wonderful Valour of the British Nation in those Times, that they were able to put the Conquerer of the World twice to Flight. Whom the whole World could not withstand, him did they even when defeated withstand, being ready to die for the Defence of their Country and Liberty. Hence Lucan in their Praise says of Caesar,

\[
\text{Terris quasis ostendit tereae Britanniae.}
\]

With Pride he fought the Britains, but when found,

Dreaded their Force, and fled the hostile Ground.

Two Days were now past, when Cassibelnaun having consumed all his Provision, feared Famine would oblige him to surrender himself Prisoner to Caesar. For this Reason he sent a Message to Androgeus to make his Peace with Julius, lest the Honour of the Nation might suffer by his being taken Prisoner. He likewise represented to him, that he did not deserve to be pursued to Death for the Disturbance he had given him. As soon as the Messengers had told this to Androgeus, he made Answer; "That Prince " deserves not to be loved, who in War is

\[
\text{H mild}
\]
mild as a Lamb, in Peace cruel as a Lion.

Ye Gods of Heaven and Earth! Do's my Lord then condescend to entreat me now, whom before he took upon him to command? Do's he desire to be reconciled and make his submission to Cæsar, of whom Cæsar himself had before desired Peace? He ought therefore to have considered, that he who was able to drive so great a Commander out of the Kingdom, was able also to bring him back again. I ought not to have been so unjustly treated, who had then done him so much Service, as well as now so much Injury. He must be possessed with Madness, who either injures or reproaches his Fellow Soldiers by whom he defeats the Enemy. The Victory is not the Commanders', but theirs who loose their Blood in fighting for him. Notwithstanding I will procure his Peace if I can, because the Injury he has done me is sufficiently revenged upon him, since he sue's for Mercy to me.

CHAP. X:

Androgeus's Speech to Cæsar:

Androgeus after this went straight to Cæsar, and after a submissive Salutation addressed himself to him in this Manner:
ner: \"You have sufficiently revenged your self upon Cassibellaun; and now let Clemency take Place. What is there to be done more than that he make his Submission, and pay Tribute to the Roman State?\" To this Cæsar returned him no Answer: Upon which Androgeus said again; \"My whole Engagement with you, Cæsar, was only to reduce Britain under your Power, by the Submission of Cassibellaun. Behold! Cassibellaun is now vanquished, and Britain by my Assistance become subject to you. What further Service do I owe you? God forbid, that I should suffer my Sovereign who sues to me for Peace, and makes me Satisfaction for the Injury he has done me, to be in Prison or in Chains. It is no easy Matter to put Cassibellaun to Death while I have Life; and if you do not comply with my Demand, I shall not be ashamed to give him my Assistance.\" Cæsar terrified at these Menaces of Androgeus was forced to comply, and entred into Peace with Cassibellaun, on Condition that he should pay a yearly Tribute of three thousand Pounds of Silver. So then Julius and Cassibellaun from this Time commenced Friends, and made Presents to each other. After this, Cæsar winter'd in Britain, and the Spring following passed over into Gaul. At length he assembled all his Forces, and marched towards Rome against Pompey.
C H A P. XI.

Tenuantius is made King of Britain after Cassibellaun.

After seven Years had expired, Cassibellaun died and was buried at York. He was succeeded by Tenuantius Duke of Cornwall, and Brother of Androgus: For Androgus was gone to Rome with Caesar. Tenuantius therefore now wearing the Crown, governed the Kingdom with Diligence. He was a warlike Man, and a most strict Observer of Justice. After him Kyymbelinus his Son was advanced to the Throne, being a great Soldier, and brought up by Augustus Caesar. He had contracted so great a Friendship with the Romans, that he freely pay'd them Tribute when he might have very well refus'd it. In his Days was born our Lord Jesus Christ, by whose precious Blood Man-kind was redeemed from the Devils Captivity, under which they had been before enslaved.
Upon Guiderius's refusing to pay Tribute to the Romans, Claudius Cæsar invades Britain.

KTMBELINVS when he had governed Britain ten Years, begat two Sons, the elder named Guiderius, the other Arviragus. Then having finished the Course of his Life, the Government fell to Guiderius. This Prince refused to pay Tribute to the Romans, for which Reason Claudius who was now promoted to be Emperor came against him. He was attended in this Expedition by the Commander of his Army, who was called in the British Tongue Lewis Hamo, by whose Advice the succeeding War was to be carried on. This Man therefore arriving at the City of Portusfre, began to block up the Gates with a Wall, and deny'd the Citizens all Liberty of passing out. For his Design was either to reduce them under Subjection by Famine, or kill them without Mercy.
CHAP. XIII.

Leuis Hamo a Roman, by wicked Treachery kills Guiderius.

GUiderius upon the News of Claudius's Coming, assembled all the Soldiery of the Kingdom, and went to meet the Roman Army. In the Battle that ensued, he began the Assault with great Eagernefs, and did more Execution with his own Sword than the greater Part of his Army. Claudius was now just upon retreating to his Ships, and the Romans very near routed; when the crafty Hamo throwing aside his own Armour, put on that of the Britains, and as a Britain fought against his own Men. Then he exhorted the Britains to a vigorous Assault, promising them a speedy Victory. For he had learned their Language and Manners, as having been educated among the Britifh Hostages at Rome. By this Means he approached by little and little to the King, and seeing his Opportunity for Access, stabbed him while under no Apprehension of Danger, and then escaped through the Enemies Ranks to return to his Men with the News of this detestable Exploit. But Arviragus his Brother seeing him killed, forthwith put off his own and put on his Brothers Habille-ments,
ments, and as if he had been Guiderius himself, encouraged the Britains, to stand their Ground. Accordingly they knowing nothing of the Kings Disaster made a vigorous Resistance, fought courageously, and killed no small Number of the Enemy. At last the Romans give Ground, and dividing themselves into two Bodies safely quit the Field: For Caesar, with one Part to secure himself retired to his Ships; but Hamo to the Woods, because he had not Time to get to the Ships. Arviragus therefore thinking that Claudius fled along with him, pursued him with speed, nor left off harassing them from Place to Place, till he overtook them upon a Part of the Sea Coast, which from the Name of Hamo is now called Southampton. There was at the same Place a convenient Haven for Ships, and some Merchant Ships at Anchor. And just as Hamo was attempting to get on board them, Arviragus came upon him unawares, and forthwith killed him. And ever since that Time the Haven has been called Hamo's Port.
Arviragus King of Britain makes his Submission to Claudius, who with his Assistance conquers the Orkney Islands.

In the mean Time, Claudius with his remaining Forces assaulted the City above-mentioned, which was then called Kaerperis, now Portcostre, and presently levelled the Walls, and having reduced the Citizens under Subjection, went after Arviragus who had entred Winchefer. Afterwards he besieged that City, and employ'd variety of Engines against it. Arviragus seeing himself in these Straits, called his Troops together, and opened the Gates, to march out and give him Battle. But just as he was ready to begin the Attack, Claudius who feared the Boldness of the King, and the Bravery of the Britains, sent a Message to him with a Proposal of Peace; as choosing to reduce them by Wisdom and Policy, rather than hazard a Battle. To this Purpose he offered a Reconciliation with him, and promised to give him his Daughter, if he would only acknowledge the Kingdom of Britain subject to the Roman State. The Nobility hereupon persuaded him to lay aside Thoughts.
Thoughts of War, and be contented with Cladius's Prowise; representing to him at the same Time, that it was no Disgrace to be Subject to the Romans, who enjoy'd the Empire of the whole World. By these and many other Arguments he was prevailed upon to hearken to their Advice, and so made his Submission to Caesar. Which done Cladius sent to Rome for his Daughter, and then with the Assistance of Arviragus reduced the Orkney and the Provincial Islands under his Power.

C H A P. XV.

Claudius gives his Daughter Genuissa for a Wife to Arviragus, and returns to Rome.

As soon as the Winter was over, those that were sent for Cladius's Daughter returned with her, and presented her to her Father. The Damfels Name was Genuissa, and so great was her Beauty, as raised the Admiration of all that saw her. After her Marriage to the King she gained so great an Ascendant over his Affections, that he in a Manner valued nothing but her alone: Infomuch that he was desirous to have the Place honoured where the Nup-
tials were solemnized, and moved Claudius to build a City upon it, for a Monument to Poste-
rity, of so great and happy a Marriage. Claudius consented to it, and commanded a City to be built, which after his Name is called Cæstrolon, that is, Gloucester to this Day, being situated in the Confines of Demetia and Logria, upon the Banks of the Severn. But some say that it derived its Name from one Gloius a Duke that was born to Claudius there, and to whom after the Death of Arviragus fell the Dukedom of Demetia. The City being finished, and the Island now enjoying Peace, Claudius returned to Rome, leaving to Arviragus the Government of the British Islands. At the same Time the Apostle Peter founded the Church of Antioch; and afterwards coming to Rome was Bishop there, and sent Mark the Evangelist into Egypt to preach the Gospel which he had writ.

CHAP. XVI.

Arviragus revolting from the Romans, Vespasian is sent into Britain.

After the Departure of Claudius, Arviragus began to shew his Wisdom and Courage, to rebuild Cities and Towns, and
and to exercise so great Authority over his own People, that he became a Terror to Kings of remote Countries. But this so elevated him, with Pride that he despised the Roman Power, disdained any longer Subjection to the Senate, and assumed to himself the sole Authority in all Matters. Upon this News Vespasian was sent by Claudius either to procure a Reconciliation with Arviragus, or reduce him under Subjection to the Romans. Therefore as Vespasian was just arriving at the Haven of Rutupi, Arviragus met him, and hindered him from entering the Port. For he had brought so great an Army along with him; as was a Terror to the Romans, who for fear of his falling upon them durst not come ashore. Vespasian upon this withdrew from that Port, and shifting his Sails arrived at the Shore of Totness. As soon as he was landed, he marched directly to besiege Kaerpenhuelgoit, now Exeter; and after seven Days that he had laid before it, was overtaken by Arviragus and his Army, who gave him Battle. That Day great Destruction was made in both Armies, but neither got the Victory. The next Morning by the Mediation of Queen Cenwissa, the two Leaders were made Friends, and they sent their Men over to Ireland. As soon as Winter was over Vespasian returned to Rome, but Arviragus continued still in Britain. Afterwards when he grew old, he began to show
Bobkflvi fhew Respeft to the Senate, and to govern his Kingdom in Peace and Tranquility. The old Laws of his Ancestors he confirm'd, and enacted some new ones, and made very ample Presents to all Persons of Merit. So that his Fame spread over all Europe, and he was both loved and feared by the Romans, and became the Subject of their Discourse more than any King in his Time. Hence Juvenal relates how a certain blind Man, speaking of a Turbot that was taken, said,

Regem aliquem capies aut de temone Britanna
Decidet Arviragus.

Arviragus shall from his Chariot fall,
Or Thee his Lord some captive King shall call.

In War none was more fierce than he, in Peace none more mild, none more jocose, or in his Presents more magnificent. When he had finished his Course of Life, he was buried at Gloucester, in a certain Temple which he had built and dedicated to the Honour of Claudius.
Rodric Leader of the Picts is vanquished by Marius.

His Son Marius succeeded him in the Kingdom, being a Man of admirable Prudence and Wisdom. In his Reign a certain King of the Picts, named Rodric, came from Scythia with a great Fleet, and arrived in the North Part of Britain, which is called Albania, and began to ravage that Country. Marius therefore raising an Army went in quest of him, and in Battle killed him, and gained the Victory; for a Monument whereof he set up a Stone in the Province, which from his Name was afterwards called Westmarland, where there is an Inscription retaining his Memory to this Day. Rodric being killed, he gave the conquered People that came with him Liberty to inhabit that Part of Albania which is called Cathness, that had been a long Time desert and uncultivated. And as they had no Wives, they desired the Daughters and Kinswomen of the Britains. But the Britains refused them out of a Distrain to match with such a People. Having suffered a Repulse here, they failed over into Ireland, and married the Women of that Country, and by their Offspring
spring encreased their Number. But let
thus much suffice concerning them, since I
do not propose to write the History of this
People, or of the Scots, who derived their
Original from them and the Irish. Marius
after he had settled the Island in perfect
Peace, began to love the Roman People, pay-
ing the Tribute that was demanded of him;
and in Imitation of his Fathers Example
practised Justice, Law, Peace, and every
Thing that was honourable in his Kingdom.

C H A P. XVIII.

Marius dying is succeeded by Coillus.

As soon as he had ended his Days, his
Son Coillus took upon him the Go-
verndment of the Kingdom. He had been
brought up from his Infancy at Rome, and
having been taught the Manners of the Ro-
mans, had contracted a most strict Amity
with them. He likewise pay'd them Tribute,
and declined making them any Opposition,
because he saw the whole World subject to
them, and that no Town or Country was out
of the Limits of their Power. By paying
therefore what was required of him, he en-
joy'd his Kingdom in Peace: And no King
ever shew'd greater Respect to his Nobility,
as not only permitting them to enjoy their
own with Quiet, but also engaging them by his continual Bounty and Munificence.

CHAP. XIX.

Lucius is the First British King that embraces the Christian Faith, together with his People.

Coillus had but one Son named Lucius, who obtaining the Crown after his Fathers Decease, imitated all his Acts of Goodness, and seemed to his People to be no other than Coillus himself revived. As he had made this good Beginning, he was willing to make a better End: For which Purpose he sent Letters to Pope Eleutherius, desiring to be instructed by him in the Christian Religion. For the Miracles which Christ's Disciples performed in several Nations, wrought a Conviction in his Mind; so that being inflamed with an ardent Love of the true Faith, he obtained the Accomplishment of his pious Request. For that holy Pope, upon receipt of this devout Petition, sent to him two most religious Doctors, Faganus and Duvanus, who after they had preached concerning the Incarnation of the Word of God, administered to him Baptism, and made him a Proselyte to
to the Christian Faith. Immediately upon this, People from all Countries assembling together, followed the Kings Example, and being washed in the same holy Laver, were made Partakers of the Kingdom of Heaven. The holy Doctors after they had almost extinguished Paganism over the whole Island, dedicated the Temples that had been founded in Honour of many Gods, to the One only God and his Saints, and filled them with Congregations of Christians. There were then in Britain eight and twenty Flamens, as also three Archflamens, to whose Jurisdiction the other Judges and Enthusiasts were subject. These also, according to the Apostles Command, they delivered from Idolatry, and where they were Flamens made them Bishops, where Archflamens Archbishops. The Seats of the Archflamens were at the three noblest Cities, viz. London, York, and the City of Legions, which its old Walls and Buildings shew to have been situated upon the River Uske in Glamorganshire. Under these three, now purged from Superstition, were made subject twenty Bishops with their Diocesses. To the Metropolitan of York were subject Deira and Albania, which the great River Humber divides from Loegria. To the Metropolitan of London, were subject Loegria and Cornwall. These two Provinces the Severn divides from Kambria or Wales, which was subject to the City of Legions.

CHAP.
Faganus and Duvanus give an Account at Rome, of what they had done in Britain.

At last when they had made an entire Reformation here, the two Prelates returned to Rome, and desired the Pope to confirm what they had done. As soon as they had obtained a Confirmation, they returned again to Britain, accompanied with many others, by whose Doctrine the British Nation was in a short Time strengthened in the Faith. Their Names and Acts are recorded in a Book which Gildas wrote concerning the Victory of Aurelius Ambrosius: And what is delivered in so bright a Treatise, needs not to be repeated here in a meaner Style.
Lucius dies without issue, and is a benefactor to the Churches.

In the mean time, the glorious King Lucius highly rejoiced at the great progress the true faith and worship had made in his kingdom; and granted that the possessions and territories formerly belonging to the Temples of the Gods, should now be converted to a better use, and appropriated to Christian
Book V. The British History.

Christian Churches. And because a greater Honour was due to them than to the others, he made large Additions of Lands and Mansion Houses, and all manner of Privileges to them. Amidst these and other Acts of his great Piety, he departed this Life in the City of Gloucester, and was honourably buried in the Cathedral Church, in the hundred and fifty-sixth Year after our Lords Incarnation. He had no Issue to succeed him, so that after his Decease there rose a Disaffection among the Britains, and the Roman Power was weakened.

CHAP. II.

Severus a Senator subdues Part of Britain: His War with Fulgenius.

When this News was brought to Rome, the Senate dispatched away Severus a Senator, and two Legions along with him, to reduce the Country under the Roman Subjection. As soon as he arrived he came to a Battle with the Britains, Part of whom he obliged to submit to him, and the other Part which he could not subdue he endeavoured to distress in several cruel Engagements, and forced them to fly beyond Uetra into Albania. Notwithstanding they
they under the Conduct of Fulgenius opposed him with all their Might, and often made great Slaughter both of their own Countrymen and of the Romans. For Fulgenius brought into his Assistance all the People of the Islands that he could find, and so frequently returned with Victory. The Emperor not being able to bear the Irruptions he made, commanded a Wall to be built between Deira and Albania, to hinder his Excursions upon them: Which they accordingly made upon the common Charge from Sea to Sea, and which did for a long Time hinder the Approach of the Enemy. But Fulgenius, when he was unable to make any longer Resistance, made a Voyage into Scythia, to desire the Assistance of the Picts towards his Restoration. And when he had got together all the Forces of that Country, he returned with a very great Fleet into Britain, and besieged York. Upon the spreading of this News through the Countries, the greatest Part of the Britains deserted Severus, and went over to Fulgenius. However this did not make Severus desist from his Enterprise: But calling together the Romans, and the rest of the Britains that adhered to him, he marched to the Siege, and fought with Fulgenius; but the Engagement proving very sharp, he was killed with many of his Followers: Fulgenius also was mortally wounded. Afterwards Severus was buried at York, which City
City was taken by his Legions. He left two Sons, Baffianus and Geta, whereof Geta had a Roman for his Mother, but Baffianus a Britain. Therefore upon the Death of their Father the Romans made Geta King, favouring him on Account of his being a Roman by both his Parents; But the Britains rejected him, and advanced Baffianus, as being their Countryman by his Mothers Side. This proved the Occasion of a Fight between the two Brothers, in which Geta was killed; and to Baffianus obtained the Kingdom.

C H A P. III.

Carausius advanced to be King of Britain.

At that Time there was in Britain one Carausius a young Man of very mean Birth, who having given a Proof of his Bravery in many Engagements, went to Rome, and solicited the Senate for Leave to defend with a Fleet the maritim Coasts of Britain, from the Incursions of Barbarians; which if they would grant him, he promised to do more and greater Things for the Honour and Service of the Commonwealth, than if the Kingdom of Britain were delivered up to them. The Senate deluded by his
his specious Promises granted him his Request, and so with his Commission sealed, he returned to Britain. Then by wicked Practises getting a Fleet together, he lifted into his Service a Body of the bravest Youth, and put out to Sea, and failed round all the Shores of the Kingdom, causing very great Disturbance among the People. In the mean Time he invaded the adjacent Islands, where he destroy'd all before him, Countries, Cities, and Towns, and plundered the Inhabitants of all they had. By this Conduct he encouraged to flock to him all manner of dissolute Fellows with Hopes of Plunder, and in a very short Time was attended with an Army that no neighbouring Prince was able to oppose. This made him begin to swell with Pride, and to propose to the Britains, that they should make him their King; upon which Consideration he promised to kill and banish the Romans, and free the whole Island from the Invasions of barbarous Nations. Accordingly obtaining his Request, he presently fell upon Bassianus and killed him, and then took upon him the Government of the Kingdom. For Bassianus was betray'd by the Piets, whom Fulgenius his Mothers Brother had brought with him into Britain, and who being corrupted by the Promises and Presents of Carausius, instead of assisting Bassianus, deferred him in the very Battle, and fell upon his Men; so that the rest
rest, were put into a Conternation, and not knowing their Friends from their Foes, quickly gave Ground, and left the Victory to Carausius. Then he, to reward the Picts for this Success, gave them a Place of Habitation in Albania, where they continued afterwards mixt with the Britains.

**CHAP. IV.**

**Allectus kills Carausius, but is afterwards himself slain in Flight by Asclepiodotus.**

When the News of these Proceedings of Carausius arrived at Rome, the Senate deputed Allectus with three Legions, with a Commission to kill the Tyrant, and restore the Kingdom of Britain to the Roman Power. No sooner was he arrived, than he fought with Carausius, killed him, and took upon himself the Government. After which he miserably oppressed the Britains, for having deserted the Commonwealth, and adhered to Carausius. But the Britains not enduring this, advanced Asclepiodotus, Duke of Cornwall, to be their King, and then unanimously marched against Allectus, and challenged him to a Battle. He was then at London, celebrating a 14th Feast.
Feast to his Targaryen Gods; but being informed of the coming of Asclepiodotus, he quitted the Sacrifice, and went out with all his Forces to meet him, and engaged with him in a most sharp Fight. But Asclepiodotus had the Advantage, and dispersed and put to Flight Alexius's Troops, and in the Pursuit killed many thousands, as also King Alexius himself. After this Victory gained by him, Alexius Gallus, the Colleague of Alexius, assembled together the rest of the Romans, and shut up the Gates of the City, in the Towers and other Fortifications of which, he placed his Men, thinking by this Means either to make a Stand against Asclepiodotus, or at least to avoid imminent Death. But Asclepiodotus seeing what was done, quickly laid Siege to the City, and sent Word to all the Dukes of Britain, how he had killed Alexius with a great Number of his Men, and was besieging Gallus and the rest of the Romans in London; and therefore earnestly intreated them to hasten to his Assistance, representing to them withal, how easy it was to extirpate the whole Race of the Romans out of Britain, provided they would all join their Forces against the besieged. At this Summons came the Devetians, Venedotians, Deirans; Albanians, and all others of the British Race. As soon as they appeared before the Duke, he commanded vast Numbers of Engines to be made,
made, to beat down the Walls of the City. Accordingly every one readily executed his Orders with great Bravery, and made a brisk Assault upon the City, the Walls of which were in a very short Time battered down; and a Passage made into it. After these Preparations, they began a bloody Assault upon the Romans, who seeing their Fellow Soldiers falling before them without Intermission, persuaded Gallus to offer a Surrender on the bare Terms of only having Quarter granted them, and Leave to depart: For they were now all killed excepting one Legion, which still held out. Gallus consented to the Proposal, and accordingly surrendered himself and his Men to Asclepiodotus, who was disposed to give them Quarter; but he was prevented by a Body of Venedotians, who rushed in upon them, and the same Day cut off all their Heads upon a Brook within the City, which from the Name of the Commander was afterwards called in the British Tongue Naughtallim, and in the Saxon Gallemborne.
CHAP. V.

Asclepiodotus takes the Crown:

Dioclesians Massacre of the Christians in Britain.

The Romans being thus defeated, Asclepiodotus with the Consent of the People, placed the Crown upon his own Head, and then governed the Country in Justice and Peace ten Years, and curbed the Insolence and Outrages committed by Plunderers and Robbers. In his Days began the Persecution of the Emperor Dioclesian, by which Christianity was almost abolished over the whole Island, which from the Time of King Lucius had continued fixed and undisturbed. This was very much owing to Maximianus Herculius, General of that Tyrant's Army, by whose Command all the Churches were pulled down, and all Copies of the Holy Scriptures that could be found, were burnt in the publick Markets. The Priests also, with the Believers under their Care, were put to Death, and with Emulation pressed in Crowds together for a speedy Passage to the Joys of Heaven, as their proper Dwelling Place. God therefore magnified his Goodness to us, forasmuch as he did in that Time of Persecution, of his meer Grace light up the bright Lamps of the Holy Martyrs,
Martyrs, to prevent the spreading of gross Darkness over the People of Britain; whose Sepulchres and Places of Suffering might have been a Means of inflaming our Minds with the greatest Fervency of Divine Love, had not the deplorable Impiety of Barbarians deprived us of them. Among others of both Sexes that continued firm in the Army of Christ, there suffered Alban of Verulam, as also Julius and Aaron, both of the City of Legions. Of these Alban, out of the Fervour of his Charity, when his Confeffor Amphibalus was pursued by the Persecutors, and just ready to be apprehended, first hid him in his House, and then offered himself to die for him; imitating in this Christ himself, who laid down his Life for his Sheep. The other two, after being tore Limb from Limb, in a Manner unheard of, took a speedy Flight up to the Gates of the Heavenly Jerusalem with a Crown of Martyrdom.

CHAP. VI.

An Insurrection against Asclepiodotus by Coel, whose Daughter Helena Constantius marries.

In the mean Time Coel Duke of Kærcolvin or Colchester, made an Insurrection against King Asclepiodotus; and in a pitched Battle
Battle killed him, and took possession of his Crown. The Senate hearing this, rejoiced at the King's death, who had given such disturbance to the Roman power: And reflecting withal upon the damage they had sustained by the loss of this kingdom, they sent away Constantius the senator, who had reduced Spain under their subjection, being a man of prudence and courage, and one who was above all the rest industrious to promote the good of the commonwealth. Coel having information of his coming, was afraid to engage with him in battle, on account of a report, that no king was able to stand before him. Therefore as soon as Constantius was arrived at the island, Coel sent ambassadors to him with offers of peace and promise of subjection, provided he might enjoy the kingdom of Britain, and pay no more than the usual tribute to the Roman state. Constantius consented to the proposal, and so upon giving of hostages the peace was confirmed between them. The month after Coel was seized with a very great sickness, of which he died within eight days. After his death, Constantius himself was crowned, and married the daughter of Coel, whose name was Helena. She surpassed all the ladies of the country in beauty, as she did all others of her time in her skill in music and the liberal arts. Her father had
had no other Issue to succeed him on the Throne, for which Reason he was very careful about her Education, the better to qualify her to govern the Kingdom. Constantius therefore having made her Partner of his Bed, had a Son by her called Constantine. After eleven Years were expired, he died at York, and bestowed the Kingdom upon his Son, who within a few Years after he was raised to this Dignity, began to give Proofs of an Heroick Virtue, undaunted Courage, and strict Observation of Justice among his People. He put a Stop to the Depredations of Robbers, suppressed the Insolence of Tyrants, and endeavoured everywhere to restore Peace.

C H A P. VII.

The Romans desire Constantines Assistance against the Cruelty of Maxentius.

At that Time there was a certain Tyrant at Rome, named Maxentius, who made it his Endeavour to confiscate the Estates of all the best of the Nobility, and oppressed the Commonwealth with his grievous Tyranny. He therefore proceeding in his Cruelty, those that were banished fled
ed to Constantine in Britain, and were honourably entertained by him. At last when a great many such had resorted to him, they endeavoured to raise in him an Abhorrence of the Tyrant, and frequently expostulated with him after this manner.

"How long, Constantine, will you suffer our Distress and Banishment? Why do you delay to restore us to our Native Country? You are the only Person of our Nation, that can restore to us what we have lost by driving out Maxentius. For what Prince is to be compared with the King of Britain, either for brave and gallant Soldiers, or for large Treasures? We intreat you restore us to our Estates, Wives and Children, by conducting us with an Army to Rome.

CHAP. VIII.

Constantine having reduced Rome, obtains the Empire of the World. Octavius Duke of the Wisleans, is put to Flight by Trahern.

CONSTANTINE moved with these and the like Speeches, made an Expedition to Rome, and reduced it under his Power, and afterwards obtained the Empire
pire of the whole World. In this Expedition he carried along with him three Uncles of Helena, viz. Leolin, Trabern and Marius, and advanced them to the Degree of Senators. In the mean Time Octavius, Duke of the Wisseans, rebelled against the Roman Proconsuls, to whom the Government of the Island had been committed, and having killed them, took Possession of the Throne. Constantine upon Information hereof, sent Trabern the Uncle of Helena, with three Legions to reduce the Island. Trabern arrived at Shore hard by the City, which in the British Tongue is called Kærperis, which he assaulted, and in two Days Time took it. This News spreading over the whole Country, King Octavius assembled all the Forces of the Land, and went to meet him not far from Winchester, in a Field called in the British Tongue Mayfuriam, where he engaged with him in Battle, and routed him. Trabern upon this Loss, betook himself with his broken Forces to his Ships, and in them made a Voyage to Albania, in the Provinces of which he made great Destruction. When Octavius again had Intelligence of it, he followed him with his Forces, and encountered him in Westmarland, but fled without the Victory. On the other Hand Trabern when he found the Day was his own, pursued Octavius, nor ever suffered him to be at rest till he had dispossessed him both
both of his Cities and Crown. 

Ostavius in great Grief for the Loss of his Kingdom, went in a Fleet to Norway, to obtain Assistance from King Gombert. In the mean Time he had given Orders to his most intimate Adherents, to watch carefully all Opportunities of killing Trahern; which accordingly did not long fail of being executed, by the Magistrate of a certain privileged Town, who had a more than ordinary Love for him. For as Trahern was one Day upon a Journey from London, he lay hid with a hundred Men in the Vale of a Wood, through which he was to pass; and there fell upon him unawares, and killed him in the midst of his Men. This News being brought to Ostavius, he returned back to Britain, where he dispersed the Romans, and recovered the Throne. In a short Time after this, he arrived to such Greatness and Wealth, that he feared no Body; and possessed the Kingdom till the Time of Gratian and Valentinian.

CHAP. IX.

Maximian is desired for a King of Britain.

At last in his Old Age, being willing to settle the Government, he asked his Council, whom of his Family they desired
to have for their King after his Decease. For he had no Son, and but one Daughter, to whom he might leave the Crown. Some therefore advised him to bestow his Daughter with the Kingdom upon some noble Roman, to the End they might enjoy a firmer Peace. Others were of Opinion, that Conan Meriadoc his Nephew ought to be preferred to the Throne, and the Daughter married to some Prince of another Kingdom with a Dowry in Money. While these Things were in Agitation amongst them, there came Caradoc Duke of Cornwall, and gave his Advice to invite over Maximian the Senator, and to bestow the Lady with the Kingdom upon him, which would be a Means of securing to them a lasting Peace. For his Father Leolin, the Uncle of Constantine, whom we mentioned before, was a Britain; but by his Mother and Place of Birth he was a Roman, and by both Parents was descended of Royal Blood. And there was a sure Prospect of a firm and secure Peace under him, upon Account of the Right he had to Britain by his Descent from the Emperors, and also from the British Blood. But the Duke of Cornwall by delivering this Advice, brought upon himself the Displeasure of Conan, the King's Nephew, who was very ambitious of succeeding to the Kingdom, and put the whole Court into a Disorder upon it. However Caradoc being
unwilling to recede from his Proposal, sent his Son *Mauricius* to Rome to acquaint *Maximian* with what had passed. *Mauricius* was a Person of large and well-proportioned Stature, as well as great Courage and Boldness, and could not bear to have his Judgment contradicted without a Recourse to Arms and Duelling. As soon as he presented himself before *Maximian*, he met with a Reception from him suitable to his Quality, and had the greatest Honours paid him of any that were about him. There happened to be then a very great Contest between *Maximian* and the two Emperors, *Gratian* and his Brother *Valentinian*, on Account of his being refused the third Part of the Empire, which he demanded. When therefore *Mauricius* saw *Maximian* ill treated by the Emperors, he took Occasion from thence to address himself to him in this manner. "What need you, *Maximian*, stand in fear of *Gratian*, when you have so fair an Opportunity of wresting the Empire from him? Go along with me into *Britain*, and you shall take Possession of that Crown. For King *Octavius* being now grown old and infirm, desires nothing more than to find some such proper Person, to bestow his Kingdom and Daughter upon. He has no Male Issue, and therefore has asked the Advice of his Nobility, to whom he should marry..."
his Daughter with the Kingdom; and
they to his Satisfaction have passed a De-
crees, that the Kingdom and Lady be gi-
ged to you, and have sent me to acquaint
you with it. So that if you go with me;
and accomplish this Affair, you may with
the Treasure and Forces of Britain be able
to return back to Rome, drive out the
Emperors, and gain the Empire to your-
self. For in this manner did your Kin-
man Constantius, and several others of our
Kings who raised themselves to the Em-
pire.

C H A P. X.

Maximian coming into Britain, artfully declines fighting with Conan.

MAXIMIAN was pleased with the
Offer, and took his Journey to Britain; but in his Way subdued the Cities of the
Franks, by which he amassed to himself a
great Treasure of Gold and Silver, and
raised Men for his Service in all Parts. Af-
terwards he set sail with a fair Wind, and
arrived at Hamo's Port; the News whereof
extremely surprized the King with Fear
and Aftonishment, who took this to be a
K 2 hostile
Whereupon he called to him his Nephew Conan, and commanded him to raise all the Forces of the Kingdom, and go meet the Enemy. Conan having made the necessary Preparations, marched accordingly to Hamo's Port, where Maximian had pitched his Tents; who upon seeing the Approach of so numerous an Army, was under the greatest Perplexities what Course to take. For as he was attended with a smaller Body of Men, and had no Hopes of being entertained peaceably, he dreaded both the Number and Courage of the Enemy. Under these Difficulties he called a Council of the ancientest Men, together with Mauricius, to ask their Advice what was to be done at this critical Juncture. "It is not for us," said Mauricius, "to hazard a Battle with such a numerous and puissant Army: Neither was the Reduction of Britain in a hostile Manner the End of our coming. Our Business must be to desire Peace and a hospitable Treatment, till we can learn the Kings Mind." Let us say that we are sent by the Emperors upon an Embassy to Oetavius, and let us with artful Speeches pacify the People." When all had shewn themselves pleased with this Advice, he took with him twelve aged Men with gray Hairs, eminent beyond the rest for their Quality and Wisdom, and bearing Olive-Branches in their right Hands,
and went to meet Conan. The Britains seeing they were Men of a venerable Age, and that they bore Olive-Branches as a Token of Peace, rose up before them in a respectful Manner, and opened a Way for their free Access to their Commander. Then they presenting themselves before Conan Meriadoc, saluted him in the Name of the Emperors and the Senate, and told him, that Maximian was sent to Octavius upon an Embassy from Gratian and Valentinian. Conan made Answer; "Why is he then attended with so great a Multitude? This does not look like the Appearance of Ambassadors, but the Invasion of Enemies." To which Mauricius reply'd; "It did not become so great a Man to appear abroad in a mean Figure, or without Soldiers for his Guard; especially considering, that by Reason of the Roman Power, and the Actions of his Ancestors, he is become obnoxious to many Kings. If he had had but a small Retinue, he might perhaps have been killed by the Enemies of the Commonwealth. He is come in Peace, and it is Peace he desires. For from the Time of our Arrival, our Behaviour has been such as to give no Offence to any Body. We have bought Necessaries at our own Expences, as peaceable People do; and have taken nothing from any by Violence." While Conan was in suspense, whether to give
them Peace, or begin the Battle. Caradoc, Duke of Cornwall, with others of the Nobility came to him, and dissuaded him from proceeding in the War after this Representation: Whereupon, though much against his Will, he laid down his Arms, and granted them Peace. Then he conducted Maximian to London, where he gave the King an Account of the whole Proceeding.

C H A P. XI.

The Kingdom of Britain is bestowed on Maximian.

Caradoc after this, taking along with him his Son Mauricius, commanded every Body to withdraw from the Kings Presence, and then addressed himself to him in these Words. "Behold, that which your more faithful and loyal Subjects have long wished for, is now by the good Providence of God brought about. You commanded your Nobility to give their Advice, how to dispose of your Daughter and Kingdom, as being willing to hold the Government no longer on Account of your great Age. Some therefore were for having the Kingdom delivered up to Conan your Nephew, and a suitable Match procured
procured for your Daughter elsewhere; as fearing the Ruin of our People, if any Prince that is a Stranger to our Language should be set over us. Others were for granting the Kingdom to your Daughter, and some Nobleman of our own Country, who should succeed you after your Death. But the major Part recommended some Person descended of the Family of the Emperors, on whom you should bestow your Daughter and Crown. For they promised themselves a firm and lasting Peace, as the Consequence of such a Marriage, since they would be under the Protection of the Roman State. See then! God has vouchsafed to bring to you a young Man, who is both a Roman, and also of the Royal Family of Britain; and to whom, if you follow my Advice, you will not delay to marry your Daughter. And indeed should you refuse him, what Right could you plead to the Crown of Britain against him. For he is the Cousin of Constantine, and the Nephew of King Coel, whose Daughter Helena possessed the Crown by an undeniable Hereditary Right.’’ When Caradoc had represented these Things to him, Octavius acquiesced, and with the general Consent of his People forthwith bestowed the Kingdom and his Daughter upon him. Conan Meriadoc finding how Things went, was beyond Expression.
fomified, and retiring into Albania, used all his Interest to raise an Army, that he might give Disturbance to Maximian. And when he had got a great Body of Men together, he passed the Humber, and wasted the Provinces on each Side of it. At the News whereof, Maximian hastened to assemble his Forces against him, and then gave him Battle, and returned with Victory. But this proved no decisive Blow to Conan, who with his reassembled Troops still continued to ravage the Provinces, and provoked Maximian to return again and renew the War, in which he had various Success, being sometimes Victorious, sometimes vanquished. At last, after great Damages done on both Sides, they were brought by the Mediation of Friends to a Reconciliation.

C H A P. XII.

Maximian overthrows the Armoricans; his Speech to Conan.

FIVE Years after this, Maximian swelling with Pride, by Reason of the vast Treasures that daily flow’d in upon him, fitted out a great Fleet, and assembled together all the Forces in Britain. For this Kingdom
Kingdom was not now sufficient for him; he had an Ambition of adding Gaul also to it. With this View he set sail, and arrived first at the Kingdom of Armorica, now called Britain, and began Hostilities upon the Gallick People that inhabited it. But the Gauls, under the Command of Inbaltus, met him, and engaged him in Battle, in which the greater Part being endangered, they were forced to fly, and leave Inbaltus with fifteen thousand Men killed, all of them Armoricans. This vast Overthrow was Matter of the greatest Joy to Maximian, who knew the Reduction of that Country would be very easy, after the Loss of so many Men. Upon this Occasion he called to him Conan aside from the Army, and smiling said; "See, we have already conquered one of the best Kingdoms in Gaul: We may now have Hopes of gaining all the rest. Let us make haste to take the Cities and Towns, before the Rumour of their Danger spread to the remoter Parts of Gaul, and raise all the People up in Arms. For if we can but get Possession of this Kingdom, I make no Doubt of reducing all Gaul under our Power. Be not therefore concerned that you have yielded up the Island of Britain to me, notwithstanding the Hopes you once had of succeeding to it; because whatever you have lost in it, I will re-
“Here to you in this Country. For my Design is to advance you upon the Throne of this Kingdom; and this shall be another Britain, which we will people with our own Countrymen, and drive out the old Inhabitants. The Land is fruitful in Corn, the Rivers abound with Fish, the Woods afford a beautiful Prospect, and the Forests are every where pleasant; nor is there in my Opinion any where a more delightful Country.” Upon this Conan with a submissive Bow gave him his Thanks, and promised to continue loyal to him as long as he lived.

C H A P. XIII.

Redonum taken by Maximian.

After this they marched with their Forces to Redonum, and took it the same Day. For the Citizens hearing of the Bravery of the Britains, and what Slaughter they had made, fled away with haste, leaving their Wives and Children behind them. And the rest of the Cities and Towns soon followed their Example; so that there was an easy Access to them, for the Britains, wherever they entred killed all they found left of the Male Sex, and spared only the Women.
Women. At last when they had wholly extirpated the Inhabitants of all those Provinces, they garrison'd the Cities and Towns with British Soldiers, and made Fortifications in several Places. The Fame of Maximian's Exploits spreading over the rest of the Provinces of Gaul, all their Dukes and Princes were under a dreadful Conternation, and had no other Hopes left but in their Prayers to their Gods. They fled every where from the Country Villages into the Cities and Towns, and other Places of Strength and Safety. Maximian finding he had struck a Terror into them, began to think still of bolder Attempts, and by profusely distributing of Presents augmented his Army. For all manner of Persons that he knew greedy of Plunder, he lifted into his Service, and by plentifully bestowing his Money and other valuable Things among them, kept them firm to his Interest.

C H A P. XIV.

Maximian after the Conquest of Gaul and Germany, makes Triers the Seat of his Empire.

By this Means he raised such a numerous Army, as he thought would be sufficient for the Conquest of all Gaul. Notwithstanding
withstanding he suspended the Exercise of his Arms for a little Time, till he had settled the Kingdom he had taken, and peopled it with Britains. To this End he published a Decree, for the assembling together of a hundred thousand of the common People of Britain, who were to come over to him; besides thirty thousand Soldiers, to defend them in the Country from all hostile Invasions. As soon as the People were arrived according to his Orders, he distributed them through all the Countries of the Kingdom of Armorica, and made another Britain of it, and then bestow'd it on Conan Meriadoe. But he himself, with the rest of his Fellow Soldiers, marched into the farther Part of Gaul, which after many bloody Battles he subdued, as he did also all Germany, being everywhere victorious. But the Seat of his Empire he made at Triers, and fell so furiously upon the two Emperors Gratian and Valentinian, that he killed the one, and forced the other to fly from Rome.

CHAP. XV.
A Fight between the Aquitans and Conan.

In the mean Time the Gauls and Aquitans gave Disturbance to Conan, and the Armorican Britains, and infested them with their frequent
frequent Incursions; but he as often defeated them, and bravely defended the Country committed to them. After he had entirely vanquished them, he had a Mind to bestow Wives on his Fellow Soldiers, by whom they might have Issue to keep perpetual Possession of the Country: And to avoid all mixture with the Gauls, he sent over to the Island of Britain for Wives for them. In order to this, Messengers were sent to recommend the Management of this Affair to Dianotus King of Cornwall, who had succeeded his Brother Caradoc in that Kingdom. He was a very noble and powerful Prince, and to him Maximian had committed the Government, while he was employ'd in Affairs abroad. He had also a Daughter of wonderful Beauty, named Ursula, whom Conan was most passionately in Love with.

C H A P. XVI.

Guanius and Melga murder eleven thousand Virgins. Maximian is killed at Rome.

Dianotus, upon this Message sent him by Conan, was very ready to execute his Orders, and summoned together the Daughters of the Nobility from all Provinces,
of the Number of eleven thousand; but of those of the meaner Sort sixty thousand; and commanded them all to appear together at the City of London. He likewise ordered Ships to be brought from all Shores, for their Transportation to their future Husbands; and though in so great a Multitude many were pleased with this Order, yet it was displeasing to the greater Part, as having a greater Affection for their Relations and native Country. Nor perhaps were there wanting some, who preferring Virginity to the married State, would have rather lost their Lives in any Country, than enjoy'd the greatest Plenty in Wedlock. In short, most of them had Views and Wishes different from one another, had they been left to their own Liberty. But now the Ships being ready, they went on board them, and sailing down the Thames made towards the Sea. At last as they were steering towards the Armorican Coast, contrary Winds rose and dispersed the whole Flee. In this Storm the greater Part of the Ships were drowned; but the Women that escaped the Danger of the Sea, were driven upon strange Islands, and by a barbarous People either murdered or made Slaves. For they happened to fall into the Hands of the cruel Army of Guanius and Medeia, who by the Command of Gratian were making terrible Destruction among the maritime
ritian Nations and Germany. Guanium was King of the Huns, and Melga of the Picts, whom Gratian had engaged in his Party, and had sent into Germany, to infest along the Sea Coasts all those of Maximians Party. While they were thus exercising their barbarous Rage, they happened to light upon these Virgins, driven on those Parts, and were so inflamed with their Beauty, that they courted them to their brutish Embraces; which when the Women would not submit to, the Ambrox fell upon them, and without the least Remorse murdered the greatest Part of them. This done, the two wicked Leaders of the Picts and Huns, Guanium and Melga, being the Partizans of Gratian and Valentinian, when they had learned that the Island of Britain was drained of all its Soldiers, made a speedy Voyage towards it; and taking into their Assistance the People of the adjacent Islands, arrived in Albania. Then joining all in a Body, they invaded the Kingdom which was left without either Government or Defence, and made miserable Destruction among the common People. For Maximian, as we have already related, had carried away with him all the warlike Youth that could be found, and had left behind him only the Husbandmen, who had neither Sense nor Arms, for the Defence of their Country. Guanium and Melga finding they were not able to give them the least
least Opposition, began to domineer most insolently, and to lay waste their Cities and Countries, as if they had only been Penns of Sheep. The News of this grievous Calamity coming to Maximian, he sent away Gratian Municeps, with two Legions to their Assistance; who as soon as they arrived, fought with the Enemy, and after a most bloody Victory over them, forced them to fly over into Ireland. In the mean Time Maximian was killed at Rome by Gratians Friends: And the Britains he had carried with him, were also slain and dispersed. Those of them that could escape, went to their Countrymen in Armorica, which was now called the other Britain.
Gratian being advanced to the Throne is killed by the common People. The Britains desire the Romans to defend them against Guanitus and Melga.

But Gratian Municeps hearing of the Death of Maximian, seized the Crown, and made himself King. After this he exercised such Tyranny, that the common People fell upon him in a tumultuous Manner, and murdered him. When this News had reached
reached other Countries, their former Enemies returned back from Ireland, and bringing with them the Scots, Norwegians, and Danes, made dreadful Devastations with Fire and Sword over the whole Kingdom from Sea to Sea. Upon this most grievous Calamity and Oppresssion, Ambassadors are dispatched with Letters to Rome, to beseech with Tears and Vows of perpetual Subjection, that a Body of Men might be sent to revenge their Injuries, and drive out the Enemy from them. The Ambassadors in a short Time prevailed so far, as to have one Legion committed to them, that was unmindful of past Injuries, which was transported in a Fleet to their Country, where they encountred the Enemy. At last after the Slaughter of a vast Multitude of them, they drove them entirely out of their Coasts, and rescuded the miserable Commonalty from their outrageous Crueltie. Then they gave Orders for a Wall to be built between Albania and Deira, from one Sea to the other, for a Terror to the Enemy, and Safeguard to the Country. At that Time Albania wholly lay waste, by the frequent Invasions of barbarous Nations; and whatever Enemies made an Attempt upon the Country, met with a convenient Landing Place here. So that the Inhabitants were diligent in working upon the Wall, which they finished partly at the publick, partly upon private Charge.
CHAP. II.

Guethelins Speech to the Britains; at the Romans returning home.

THE Romans after this declared to the Britains, that they should not be able for the Future to undergo the Fatigue of such laborious Expeditions; and that it was beneath the Dignity of the Roman State, to harass so great and brave an Army, both by Land and Sea, against base and vagabond Robbers: But rather they ought to apply themselves to the Use of Arms, and to fight bravely in defending to the utmost of their Power, their Country, Riches, Wives, Children, and, what is dearer than all these, their Liberty and Lives. As soon as they had given them this Exhortation, they commanded all the Men of the Island, that were fit for War, to appear together at London, because the Romans were about to return home. Wherefore they were all assembled, Guethelin the Metropolitian of London had Orders to make a Speech to them, which he did in these Words.

"Though I am appointed by the Princes here present to speak to you, I find myself rather ready to burst out into Tears;"
than disposed to make an eloquent Oration. It is a most sensible Affliction to me, to observe the Weakness and Orphan State into which you are fallen, since the Time that Maximian drew away with him all the Forces and Youth of this Kingdom. You that were left were People wholly unexperienced in War, and taken up with other Employments, as tilling the Ground, and several Kinds of mechanical Trades. So that when your Enemies from foreign Countries came upon you, as Sheep wandering without a Shepherd, they forced you to quit your Folds, till the Roman Power restored you to them again. Must your Hopes therefore always depend upon foreign Assistance? And will you never use yourselves to handle Arms against a Band of Robbers, that are by no Means stronger than yourselves, if you are not dispirited by Sloth and Cowardice? The Romans are now tired with the continual Voyages, wherewith they are harassed to defend you against your Enemies: They rather chuse to remit to you the Tribute you pay them, than undergo any longer this Fatigue by Land and Sea. What though you were only the common People at the Time when we had Soldiers of our own, do you therefore think that Manhood has quite forsaken you? Are not Men in the Course of
of human Generation often the Reverse of one another? Does not a Ploughman beget a Soldier, and a Soldier a Ploughman? Does not the same Diversity happen in a Mechanick and a Soldier? Since then in this Manner one produces another, I cannot think it possible for Manhood to be lost among them. As then you are Men, behave yourselves like Men: Call upon the Name of Christ, that he would please to inspire you with Courage to defend your Liberties.

No sooner had he concluded his Speech, than the People raised such a Shout, that one would have thought them on a sudden inspired with Courage.

CHAP. III.

The Britains are again cruelly infest-ed by Guanius and Melga.

After this the Romans spirited up the timorous People as much as they could, and left them Patterns of their Arms. They likewise commanded Towers, having a Prospect to the Sea, to be placed at proper Distances all along the South-Coast, where their Ships were, and from whence they
they feared the Invasions of the Barbarians. But according to the Proverb, It is easier to make a Hawk of a Kite, than a Scholar presently of a Ploughman: All Learning to him, is but as a Pearl thrown before Swine. For no sooner had the Romans taken their Farewel of them, than the two Leaders, Guanius and Melga, issued forth from their Ships, in which they had fled over into Ireland, and with their Bands of Scots, Picts, Norwegians, Dacians, and others they had brought along with them, seized upon all Albania to the very Wall. Understanding likewise that the Romans were gone back never to return any more, they now in a more insolent Manner than before, begin their Devastations in the Island. Hereupon the Country Fellows were placed upon the Battlements of the Walls, where they sat Night and Day with quaking Hearts, not daring to stir from their Seats, and readier for Flight than making the least Resistance. In the mean Time the Enemies ceased not with their Hooks to pull them down headlong, and dash the wretched Herd to pieces upon the Ground; who gained at least this Advantage by their speedy Death, as to avoid the Sight of that most deplorable Calamity, which forthwith threatened their Relations and dearest Children. Such was the terrible Vengeance of God, for that most wicked Madness of Maximian, in draining the Kingdom.
Kingdom of all its Forces; who had they been present would have repulsed any Nation that invaded them. An evident Proof of which they gave, by the vast Conquests they made abroad even in remote Countries; and also by maintaining their own Country in Peace, while they continued here. But thus it happens when a Kingdom is left to the Defence of Country Clowns. In short, quitting their high Wall and their Cities, the Country People are forced again to fly, and to suffer a more fatal Dispersion, a more furious Pursuit of the Enemy, a more cruel and more general Slaughter than ever they did before: And like Lambs before Wolves, so was that miserable People torn to Pieces by the merciless Barbarians. Again therefore the wretched Remainder send Letters to Agitus, a Man of great Power among the Romans, to this Effect. "To Agitus thrice "Consul, the Groans of the Britains." And after some few other Complaints they add. "The Sea drives us to the Barbarians, and "the Barbarians drive us back to the Sea: "Thus are we tossed to and fro between "two Kinds of Death, being either Drown- "ed or put to the Sword." Notwithstanding this most moving Address procured them no Relief, and the Ambassadors returning back in great Heaviness, declared to their Countrymen, how they had suffered a Repulse.
HEREUPON after a Consultation together, Guethelin Archbishop of London, passed over into lesser Britain, called then Armorica or Letavia, to desire Assistance of their Brethren. At that Time Aldroen reigned there, being the fourth King from Conan, to whom, as has been already related, Maximian had given that Kingdom. This Prince seeing a Prelate of so great Dignity arrived, received him with Honour, and enquired after the Occasion of his Coming. To whom Guethelin,

"Your Majesty can be no Stranger to the Misery, we your Britains have suffered, (which may even demand your Tears,) since the Time that Maximian drained our Island of its Soldiers, and made a Decree for their peopling the Kingdom you enjoy; and God grant you may long enjoy it in Peace. For against us the poor Remains of the British Race, rose all the People of the adjacent Islands, and made an utter Devastation in our Country, which then abounded with all kind of Riches;"
Riches; so that the People now are wholly destitute of all manner of Sustenance, but what they can get in Hunting. Nor had we any left among us either of Power or Knowledge of Military Affairs, to encounter the Enemy. For the Romans are grown tired of us, and have absolutely refused their Assistance. So that now being deprived of all other Hope, we come to implore your Clemency, that you would furnish us with Forces, and protect a Kingdom, which is of Right your own, from the Incursions of Barbarians. For who but your self ought, without your Consent, to wear the Crown of Constantine and Maximian, since the Right your Ancestors had to it is now devolved upon you? Prepare then your Fleet, and go with me: Behold I deliver the Kingdom of Britain into your Hands.

To this Aldroen made Answer; "There was a Time formerly when I would not have refused to accept of the Island of Britain, if it had been offered me; for I do not think there was any where a fruitfuller Country, while it enjoy'd Peace and Tranquility. But now since the Calamities that have befallen it, it is become of less Value, and odious both to me and all other Princes. But above all Things the
"the Power of the Romans was so destructive to it, that no Body could enjoy any settled State or Authority in it, without Loss of Liberty, and bearing the Yoke of Slavery under them. And who would not prefer the Possession of a lesser Country with Liberty, to all the Riches of that Island under Servitude? The Kingdom that is now under my Subjection I enjoy with Honour, and without paying the least Homage to any Superior; so that I prefer it to all other Countries, since I can govern it without being controlled. Notwithstanding out of Respect to the Right that my Ancestors for many Generations have had to your Island, I deliver to you my Brother Constantine with two thousand Men, that with the good Providence of God he may free your Country from the Inroads of Barbarians, and obtain the Crown for himself. For I have a Brother called by that Name, who is an expert Soldier, and in all other Respects an accomplished Man. If you please to accept of him, I will not refuse to send him with you, together with the said Number of Men; for indeed a larger Number I do not mention to you, because I am daily threatened with Disturbance from the Gauls." He had scarce done speaking before the Archbishop returned him his Thanks, and when Constantine
Constantine was called in, broke out into these Expressions of Joy; “Christ conquers; Christ commands; Christ reigns: Behold the King of desolate Britain! Be Christ only present, and behold our Defence, our Hope and Joy.” In short, the Ships being got ready, the Men who were chosen out from all Parts of the Kingdom, were delivered to Guethelin.

CHAP. V.

Constantine being made King of Britain, leaves three Sons.

When they had made all necessary Preparations, they embarked, and arrived at the Port of Totnes; and then without Delay assembled together the Youth that was left in the Island, and encountered the Enemy; over whom, by the Merit of the holy Prelate, they obtained the Victory. After this the Britains, before dispersed, flocked together from all Parts, and in a Council held at Silchester, promoted Constantine to the Throne, and there performed the Ceremony of his Coronation. They also married him to a Lady, whom Archbishop Guethelin had educated, being descended from a noble Family of the Romans, and
and by whom the King had afterwards three Sons, named Constans, Aurelius Ambrosius, and Uther Pendragon. Constans, who was the eldest, he delivered to the Church of Amphibalus in Winchester, that he might there take upon him the Monastic Order. But the other two, viz. Aurelius and Uther, he committed to the Care of Guethelin for their Education. At last, after ten Years were expired, there came a certain Plot, who had entered himself in his Service, and under Pretence of holding some private Discourse with him, in a Nursery of young Trees where no Body was present, stabbed him with a Dagger.

---

CHAP. VI.

Constans is by Vortegirn Crowned King of Britain.

Upon the Death of Constantine, a Distension arose among the Nobility, about a Successor to the Throne. Some were for setting up Aurelius Ambrosius; others Uther Pendragon; others again some other Persons of the Royal Family. At last when they could come to no Conclusion, Vortegirn, Consul of the Gewiffens, who was himself very ambitious of the Crown, went
to Constans the Monk, and thus addressed himself to him. "You see your Father is "dead, and your Brothers on Account of "their Age are uncapable of the Govern- "ment; neither do I see any of your Fa- "mily besides yourself, whom the People "ought to promote to the Kingdom. If "you will therefore follow my Advice, and "enlarge my Estate, I will dispose the "People to favour your Advancement, "and free you from that Habit, notwith- "standing it be against the Rule of your "Order." Constans overjoy'd at the Propo-osal, promised with an Oath, that upon these Terms he would grant him whatever he would desire. Then Vortegirn took him, and investing him in his Regal Habili- ments, conducted him to London, and made him King, though not with the free Con- sent of the People. Arch bishop Guethelin was then dead, nor was there any other that durst perform the Ceremony of his Unction, on Account of his having quitted the Monastick Order. However this proved no Hindrance to his Coronation, the Ceremony of which Vortegirn himself per- formed instead of a Bishop.
Vortegirn treacherously contrives to get King Constans assassinated.

Constans being thus advanced, committed the whole Government of the Kingdom to Vortegirn, and surrendred himself up so entirely to his Counsels, that he did nothing without his Order. His own Incapacity for Government obliged him to it, as having learned other Things than State Affairs within his Cloister. Vortegirn became sensible of this; and therefore began to deliberate with himself what Course to take to obtain the Crown, of which he had been before extremely ambitious. He saw that now was his proper Time to gain his End easily, when the Kingdom was wholly intrusted to his Management; and Constans, who bore the Title of King, was no more than the Shadow of a Prince. For he was of a soft Temper, of no Judgment in Matters of Right, and not in the least feared, either by his own People, or by any neighbouring States. And as for his two Brothers, Uther Pendragon, and Aurelius Ambrosius, they were only Children in their Cradles, and therefore uncapable of the Government. There was likewise this farther Misfortune, that all the ancienter Per-
fons of the Nobility was dead; so that \textit{Vortegirn} seemed to be the only Man surviving, that had Craft, Policy and Experience in Matters of State; and all the rest in a manner Children, or raw Youths, that only inherited the Honours of their Parents and Relations that had been killed in the former Wars. \textit{Vortegirn} finding a Concurrence of so many favourable Circumstances, contrived how he might easily and cunningly depose \textit{Constans} the Monk, and immediately establish himself in his Place. But in order to it, he deferred doing any Thing against him, till he had first well established his Power and Interest in several Countries. He therefore petitioned to have in his own Custody the Kings Treasures, as also his fortified Cities; pretending there was a Rumour, that the neighbouring Islanders designed an Invasion of the Kingdom. This being granted him, he placed his own Creatures in those Cities, to secure them for himself. Then having formed a Scheme how to execute his treasonable Designs, he went to the King, and represented to him the Necessity of augmenting the Number of his Domesticks, that he might more safely oppose the Invasion of the Enemy. "Have not I left all Things to your Disposal, said \textit{Constans}: Do what you will as to that, so they be but faithful to me." \textit{Vortegirn} reply'd; "I am informed the Piets are
are going to bring the Dacians and Norwegians in upon us, with a Design to give us very great Disturbance. I would therefore advise you, and in my Opinion it is the best Course you can take, that you maintain some Picts in your Court, who may do you good Service among those of that Nation. For, if it is true that they are preparing to begin a Rebellion, you may employ them as Spies upon their Countrymen in their Plots and Stratagems, so as easily to escape them.” This was the dark Treason of a secret Enemy; for he did not recommend this, out of any Regard to the Safety of Constans, but because he knew the Picts to be a giddy People, and ready for all manner of Wickedness; so that in a Fit of Drunkenness or Passion, they might easily be incensed against the King, and make no Scruple to assassinate him. And such an Accident, when it should happen, would make an open Way for his Accession to the Throne, which he had so often had in View. Hereupon he dispatches away Messengers into Scotland, with an Invitation to a hundred Pictish Soldiers, whom accordingly he received into the Kings Household: And when admitted, he shew’d them more Respect than all the Rest of the Domestickks, by making them several Presents, and allowing them a luxurious Table; insomuch that
that they looked upon him as the King. So great was the Adoration they had for him, that they made Songs of him about the Streets, the Subject of which was, That Vortegirn deserved the Government, deserved the Sceptre of Britain; but that Constans was unworthy of it. This encouraged Vortegirn to shew them still more and more of his Bounty; the more firmly to engage them in his Interest; and when by these Practices he had made them entirely his Creatures, he took an Opportunity when they were drunk, to tell them, that he was going to retire out of Britain, to see if he could get a better Estate; for the small Revenue he had then, he said, would not so much as enable him to maintain a Retinue of fifty Men. Then putting on a Look of Sadness, he withdrew to his own Apartment, and left them drinking in the Hall. The Pits at this Sight were in unexpressible Sorrow, as thinking what he had said was true, and murmuring said one to another; Why do we suffer this Monk to live? Why do not we kill him, that Vortegirn may enjoy his Crown? For who so fit to succeed as he? A Man so generous to us, is worthy to Rule, and deserves all Honour and Dignity.

C H A P.
CHAP. VIII.

Aurelius Ambrosius, and Uther Pendragon flying Vortegirn, go to lesser Britain.

After this, breaking into Constans's Bed-chamber, they fell upon him and killed him, and carried his Head to Vortegirn. At the Sight of it, he putting on a mournful Countenance burst forth into Tears, tho' at the same Time he was almost transported with Joy. However he summoned together the Citizens of London, (for there the Fact was committed,) and commanded all the Affains to be bound, and their Heads to be Cut off for this abominable Parricide. In the mean Time there were those who had a Suspicion, that this Piece of Villany was wholly the Contrivance of Vortegirn, and that the Piets were only his Instruments to execute it. Others again as positively asserted his Innocence. At last the Matter being left in Doubt, the Governors of the two Brothers, Aurelius Ambrosius, and Uther Pendragon, fled over with them into lesser Britain, for fear of being killed by Vortegirn. There they were kindly received by King Budec, who took Care to give them an Education suitable to their Royal Birth.
C H A P. IX.

Vortegirn makes himself King of Britain.

But Vortegirn now seeing no Body to rival him in the Kingdom, placed the Crown on his own Head, and so gained the Preeminence over all the rest of the Princes. At last his Treason being discovered, the People of the adjacent Islands, whom the Piets had brought into Albania, made Insurrection against him. For the Piets were enraged on Account of their Fellow Soldiers, that had been put to Death for the Murder of Constans, and endeavoured to revenge that Injury upon him. Vortegirn therefore was daily in great Distress, and lost a considerable Part of his Army in the War with them. He had likewise no less Trouble from another Quarter, for fear of Aurelius Ambrosius, and his Brother Uther Pendragon, who, as we said just now, had fled on his Account into lesser Britain. For he had his Ears stunned with a daily Rumour, that being now come up to Mens Estate, they had built a vast Fleet, with a Design to return back to the Kingdom, which was their undoubted Right.
CHAP. X.

Vortegin takes the Saxons that were New-comers, into his Assistance.

In the mean Time arrived in the Parts of Kent three Brigandines, or long Gallies, fraught with armed Men; under the Command of two Brothers Horsius and Hengist. Vortegirn was then at Dorobernia, now Canterbury, which City he used often to visit; and being informed of the Arrival of some tall Strangers in large Ships, he ordered that they should be received peaceably, and conducted to his Presence. As soon as they were brought before him, he cast his Eyes upon the two Brothers, who excelled all the rest both in Nobility and Gracefulness of Person; and having taken a View of the whole Company, asked them of what Country they were, and what was the Occasion of their coming into his Kingdom. To whom Hengist, (whose Years and Wisdom intituled him to a Precedence,) in the Name of the rest, made the following Answer.

"Most Noble King, Saxony, which is one of the Countries of Germany, was"
the Place of our Birth; and the Occasion of our coming, was to offer our Service to you or some other Prince. For we were driven out of our Native Country, for no other Reason, but that the Custom of the Kingdom required it. It is the Custom of that Place, that when it comes to be overstocked with People, our Princes from all Provinces meet together, and command all the Youth of the Kingdom to assemble before them: Then casting Lots, they make Choice of the strongest and ablest of them, for to go into Foreign Nations, to procure themselves a Subsistence, and free their Native Country from a superfluous multitude of People. Our Country therefore being of late actually overstocked, our Princes met, and after Lots cast, made Choice of the Youth which you see in your Presence, and have obliged us to obey the Custom that has been established of old. And us two Brothers, Hengist and Horsus, they made Generals over them, out of Respect to our Ancestors who enjoy'd the same Honour. In Obedience therefore to the Laws so long established, we put out to Sea, and under the good Guidance of Mercury have arrived in your Kingdom.
The King at the Name of Mercury looking earnestly upon them, asked them what Religion they professed. "We worship, reply'd Hengist, our Country Gods, Saturn and Jupiter, and the rest that govern the World; but especially Mercury, whom in our Language we call Woden, and to whom our Ancestors consecrated the fourth Day of the Week, still called after his Name Woden'sday. Next to him we worship the most powerful Goddess Frea, to whom they also dedicated the sixth Day, which after her Name we call Friday." Vortegirn reply'd, "For your Credulity, or rather Incredulity, I am very much grieved, but as much rejoice at your Arrival, which is brought about, whether by God, or by whomsoever else, very seasonably for me in the Straits I am under. For I am oppressed by my Enemies on every Side, and if you will engage with me in my Wars, I will entertain you honourably in my Kingdom, and bestow upon you Lands and other Possessions." The Barbarians readily accepted of his Offer, and the Agreement between them being ratified, they resided in his Court. Presently after this the Piets issuing forth from Albania, made up a very great Army, and began to lay waste the Northern Parts of the Island. When Vortegirn had information of it, he assembled...
assembled his Forces, and went to meet them beyond Humber. Upon their Engagement, the Battle proved very fierce on both Sides, though there was but little Occasion for the Britains to meddle in it; for the Saxons fought so bravely, that the Enemy, who used to be Victorious, they presently put to Flight.

CHAP. XI.

Hengist brings over great Numbers of Saxons into Britain: His crafty Petition to Vortegirn.

VORTEGIRN therefore, as he owed the Victory to them, increased his Bounty to them, and gave their General Hengist large Possessions of Land in Lindesia, for the Subsistence of himself and his Fellow Soldiers. Hereupon Hengist, who was a Man of Experience and Subtilty, finding how much Interest he had with the King, addressed himself to him in this manner. "Sir, your Enemies give you Disturbance from all Quarters, and few of your Subjects love you. They all threaten you, and say, they are going to bring over Aurelius Ambrosius from Armorica, in order to depose you, and make him King."
"If you please, let us send to our Country to invite over some more Soldiers, that with our Forces increased we may be better able to oppose them. But there is one Thing I would desire of your Clemency, if I did not fear a Repulse." Vortegirn made Answer, "Send away then your Messengers to Germany, and invite over whom you please, and you shall have no Repulse from me in whatever you shall desire." Hengist with a low Bow returned him Thanks, and said; "The Possessions you have given me in Land and Houses, are very large, but you have not yet done me that Honour which becomes my Station and Birth; because among other Things, I should have had some Town or City granted me, that I might be intituled to a greater Esteem among the Nobility of your Kingdom. I ought to have been made a Conful or Prince, since my Ancestors enjoyed both those Dignities." "It is not in my Power, reply'd Vortegirn, to do you so much Honour, because you are Strangers and Pagans; neither am I yet acquainted with your Manners and Customs, so far as to set you upon a Level with my natural born Subjects. And indeed if I did esteem you as my Subjects, I should not be forward to give you what the Nobility of my Kingdom would dissuade me from."
from." "Give your Servant, said Hengist, only so much Ground in the Place you have assigned me, as I can encompass with a Leathern Thong, for to build a Fortres upon, for a Place of Retreat if Occasion should require. For I am, have been, and always will be faithful to you, and pursue no other Design in the Request I make." With these Words the King was prevailed upon to grant him his Petition; and ordered him to dispatch away Messengers into Germany, to invite the Men over speedily to his Assistance. Hengist immediately executed his Orders, and then took a Bulls Hide, and made but one Thong of the whole; with which he encompassed a rocky Place that he had carefully made Choice of, and within that Circuit began to build a Castle; which, when finished, took its Name from the Thong wherewith it had been measured. For it was afterwards called in the British Tongue Kaercorreii, in the Saxon Thancastr, that is Thong-Castle.
CHAP. XII.

Vortegirn marries Rowen, the Daughter of Hengist.

In the mean Time the Messengers returned from Germany, with eighteen Ships fraught with the best Soldiers they could chuse. They also brought along with them Rowen the Daughter of Hengist, one of the most accomplished Beauties of that Age. After their Arrival, Hengist invited the King to his House, to view his new Buildings, and the new Soldiers that were come over. The King readily accepted of his Invitation, and went, but privately, and highly commended the Magnificence of the Structure, and then entred the Men into his Service. Here he was entertained at a Royal Banquet; and when that was over, the young Lady came out of her Chamber bearing a Golden Cup full of Wine, with which she approached the King, and making a low Courtefy, said to him, Laverd, King Waht heil. The King at the Sight of the Lady's Face, was on a sudden both surprised and inflamed with her Beauty; and calling to his Interpreter, asked him what she said, and what Answer he should make her. "She called you, Royal Lord," said
"said the Interpreter, and offered to drink your Health; and your Answer to her must be *Drinc heil.*"  Vortegirn accordingly answered, *Drinc heil,* and bid her drink: Which done, he took the Cup from her Hand, kissed her, and then drank himself. From that Time to this, it has been the Custom in Britain, that he who drinks to any one says, *Wacht heil,* and he that pledges him, answers *Drinc heil.* Vortegirn being now drunk with the Variety of Liquors, the Devil took this Opportunity to enter into his Heart, and to make him in Love with the Damsel, so that he became Suitor to her Father for her. It was, I say, by the Devils entering into his Heart, that he who was a Christian, should fall in Love with a Pagan. By this Instance, Hengist being a prudent Man, discovered the Kings Levity, and consulted with his Brother Horsus, and the other ancient Men present, what to do in relation to the Kings Request. They unanimously advised him to give him his Daughter, and in Consideration of her, to demand the Province of Kent. Accordingly the Daughter was without Delay delivered to Vortegirn, and the Province of Kent to Hengist, without the Privity of Gorvangan, who had the Government of it. The King the same Night married the Pagan Lady, and became extremely delighted with her; by which he quickly brought
brought upon himself the Hatred of the Nobility, and of his own Sons. For he had already three Sons, whose Names were Vortimer, Katigern, and Pascentius.

CHAP. XIII.

The Bishops, German and Lupus, restore the Christian Faith that had been corrupted in Britain. Octa and Ebissa are four Times routed by Vortimer.

At that Time came St. German Bishop of Auxerre, and Lupus Bishop of Troyes, to preach the Gospel to the Britains. For the Christian Faith had been corrupted among them, partly by the Pagans whom the King had brought into Society with them, partly by the Pelagian Heresy, with the Poison whereof they had been a long Time infected. But by the preaching of these Holy Men, the true Faith and Worship was again restored, the many Miracles they wrought giving Success to their Labours. Gildas has in his Treatise given an elegant Account of the many Miracles God wrought by them. The King being now, as we have said, possessed of the Lady,
Hengist said to him; "As I am your Father, I claim the Right of being your Coun-
seller: Do not therefore flight my Ad-
vice, since it is to my Countrymen that
you must owe the Conquest of all your
Enemies. Let us yet invite over my Son
Octa, and his Brother Ebissa, who are
brave Soldiers; and give them the Coun-
tries that are in the Northern Parts of
Britain, by the Wall, between Deira
and Albania. For they will hinder the
Inroads of the Barbarians, and so you
shall enjoy Peace on the other Side of
Humber." Vortegirn comply'd with his
Request, and ordered them to invite over
whomsoever they knew able to assist him.
Immediately upon the Receipt of this Mef-
fage, came Octa, Ebissa, and Cherdich, with
three hundred Ships filled with Soldiers,
who were all kindly received by Vortegirn,
and had ample Presents made them. For
by their Assistance he vanquished his En-
emies, and in every Engagement proved
Victorious. Hengist in the mean Time con-
tinued to invite over more and more Ships,
and to augment his Numbers daily. Which
when the Britains had observed, they were
afraid of being betray'd by them, and mo-
vied the King to banisfh them out of his
Coasts. For it was contrary to the Rule of
the Gospel, that Christians should hold Fel-
lowsip, or have any Intercourse with Pa-
gans.
gans. Besides that, the Number of those that were come over was now so great, that they were a Terror to his Subjects; and no Body could now know who was a Pagan, who a Christian, since Pagans married the Daughters and Kinswomen of Christians.

These Things they represented to the King, and endeavoured to dissuade him from entertaining them, least they might by some treacherous Conspiracy prove an Overmatch for the Native Inhabitants. But Vortegern, who loved them above all other Nations on Account of his Wife, was deaf to their Advice. For this Reason the Britains quickly desert him, and unanimously set up Vortimer his Son for their King; who at their Instigation began to drive out the Barbarians, and to make dreadful Incursions upon them. Four Battles he fought with them, and was Victorious in all: The first upon the River Derwent; the second upon the Ford of Epiffrod, where Horfius and Catigern, another Son of Vortegern, met, and after a sharp Encounter killed each other; the third upon the Sea-Shore, where the Enemies fled shamefully to their Ships, and then betook themselves for Refuge to the Isle of Thanet. But Vortimer besieged them there, and daily distress them with his Fleet. And when they were no longer able to bear the Assauls of the Britains, they sent King Vortegern, who was present with them in
in all those Wars, to his Son Vortimer, to desire Leave to depart, and return back safe to Germany. And while there was held a Conference upon this Subject, they in the mean Time went on board their long Galleys, and leaving their Wives and Children behind them, returned back to Germany.

CHAP. XIV.

Vortimer's Kindness to his Soldiers at his Death.

VORTIMER after this great Success, began to restore his Subjects to their Possessions that had been taken from them, and to shew them all Marks of his Affection and Esteem, and at the Instance of St. German to rebuild their Churches. But his Goodness quickly stirred up the Devils Enmity against him, who entering into the Heart of his Stepmother Rowen, excited her to contrive his Death. For this Purpose she consulted with the Poisoners, and procured one that was intimate with him, whom she had corrupted with large and numerous Presents, to give him a poisonous Draught; so that this brave Soldier, as soon as he had taken it, was seized with a sudden Illness, that put him past all Hopes of Life.
Hereupon he forthwith ordered all his Men to come to him, and having shewn them how near he was his End, distributed among them all the Treasure his Predecessors had heaped up, and endeavoured to comfort them in their Sorrow and Lamentation for him, telling them, he was only going the Way of all Flesh. But those brave and warlike Youngmen, that used to attend him in all his Victories, he exhorted to persist courageously in the Defence of their Country against all hostile Invasion; and from an impulse of wonderful greatness of Mind, commanded a brazen Pyramid to be made, and placed in the Port where the Saxons used to land. He also ordered his Body when dead to be buried on the Top of it, that the Sight of his Tomb might fright back the Barbarians to Germany. For he said none of them would dare approach the Country, that should but get a Sight of his Tomb. Such was the admirable Bravery of this great Man, who as he had been a Terror to them while living, endeavoured to be no less so when dead. Notwithstanding after his Decease, the Britains had no regard to his Orders, but buried him at London.
Hengist having most wickedly murdered the Princes of Britain, keeps Vortegirn Prisoner.

VORTEGIRN, after the Death of his Son, was again restored to the Kingdom, and at the Request of his Wife sent over Messengers into Germany to Hengist, with an Invitation to return into Britain, but privately and with a small Retinue, to prevent a Quarrel between the Barbarians and his Subjects. But Hengist, hearing that Vortimer was dead, raised an Army of no less than three hundred thousand Men, and setting out a Fleet returned with them to Britain. When Vortegirn and the Nobility heard of the Arrival of so vast a Multitude, they were immoderately incensed, and after Consultation together, resolved to fight them, and drive them from their Coasts. Hengist, upon Information of their Design by Messengers sent from his Daughter, immediately entred into Deliberation what Course to pursue against them. After several Stratagems had been considered, what he judged most feasible, was to impose upon the Nation by making a show of Peace. In order to this he sent Ambassadors to the King,
King, to declare to him, that he had not brought with him so great a number of men, with an intention either to stay with him, or to offer any violence to the country. But the reason why he brought them, was because he thought Vortimer was yet living, and that he should have occasion for them against him, in case of an assault. But now since he no longer doubted of his being dead, he submitted himself and his people to the disposal of Vortember; so that he might retain as many of them as he should think fit, and whom he rejected, Hengist would allow to return back without delay to Germany. And if these terms pleased Vortember, then he desired he would appoint a time and place for their meeting, and having matters adjusted according to his pleasure. When these things were represented to the King, he was mightily pleased, as being very unwilling to part with Hengist; and at last ordered his subjects and the Saxons to meet upon the calends of May, which were now very near, at the monastery of Ambrian, for the settling of the matters above mentioned. The appointment being agreed to on both sides, Hengist with a new design of villainy in his head, ordered his soldiers to carry every one of them a long dagger under their garments; and while the conference should be held with the Britains, who would have no suspicion.
Suspicion of them, he would give them this Word of Command, *Nemet oure Saxas*; at which Moment they were all to be ready to seize boldly every one his next Man, and with his drawn Dagger stab him. Accordingly at the Time and Place appointed they all met, and began to treat of Peace; and when a fit Opportunity for executing his Villany serv-ed, *Hengist* cry'd out, *Nemet oure Saxas*, and the same Instant seized *Vortegirn*, and held him by his Cloak. The *Saxons*, upon the Signal given, drew out their Daggers, and falling upon the Princes, that little suspect-ed any such Design, assaffinated them to the Number of four hundred and sixty of the Barons and Consuls: To whose Bodies St. *Eldad* afterwards gave Christian Burial, not far from *Kaercaradane*, now *Salisbury*, in a Burying-Place by the Monastery of *Ambrius* the Abbot, who was the Founder of it. For they all came without Arms, as having no Thoughts of any Thing but treating of Peace; which gave the others that came upon a villainous Design a fairer Opportunity of destroying them. Notwithstanding the Pagans did not escape unpunished while they acted this Wickedness; a great Num-ber of them being killed during this Massacre of their Enemies. For the *Britains* taking up Clubs and Stones from the Ground, resolute-ly defended themselves, and did good Execution upon the Traitors.
C H A P. XVI.

Eldols valiant Exploit. Hengist forces Vortegirn to yield up the strongest Fortifications in Britain, in Consideration of his Release.

There was present one Eldol Conful of Gloucester, who at the sight of this Treachery, took up a Stake he happened to find, and made that his Defence. Every Blow he gave carry'd Death along with it; and by breaking either the Head, Arms, Shoulders or Legs of a great many, he struck no small Terror into the Traitors, nor moved from the Spot, before he had killed with that Weapon seventy Men. But being no longer able to stand his Ground against such Numbers, he made his Escape from them, and retired to his own City. Many fell on both Sides, but the Saxons got the Victory, because the Britains having no Suspicion of Treachery, came unarmed, and therefore made a weaker Defence. After the Commission of this detestable Villany, the Saxons would not kill Vortegirn, but having threatened him with Death and bound him, demanded his Cities and fortified Places in Consideration of their granting him his Life. He, to secure himself, deny'd them nothing they
they asked; and when they had made him confirm his Grants with an Oath, they released him from his Chains, and then marched first of all to London, which they took, as they did afterwards York, Lincoln, and Winchester; waiting the Countries thro' which they passed, and destroying the People, as Wolves do Sheep when left by their Shepherds. When Vortegirm had seen the Desolation they made, he retired into the Parts of Cambria, as not knowing what to do against so barbarous a People.

CHAP. XVII.

Vortegirm, after Consultation with Magicians, orders a Youth to be brought that never had a Father.

At last, he had Recourse to Magicians for their Advice, and commanded them to tell him what Course to take. They advised him to build a very strong Tower for his own Safety, since he had left all his other fortified Places. Accordingly he made a Progress about the Country, to find out a convenient Situation, and came at last to Mount Erir, where he assembled Workmen from several Countries, and ordered them to build the Tower. The Builders therefore
therefore began to lay the Foundation, but
whatever they did one Day, the Earth swal-
lowed up the next, so as to leave no Ap-
pearance of their Work. Vortegiun being
informed of this, again consulted with his
Magicians concerning the Cause of it; who
told him that he must find out a Youth that
never had a Father, and kill him, and then
sprinkle the Stones and Cement with his
Blood; for by that Means, they said, he
would have a firm Foundation. Hereupon
Messengers are forthwith dispatched away
over all the Provinces, to enquire out such
a Man. In their Travels they came to a
City, called afterwards Kærmerdin, where
they saw some young Men, playing before
the Gate, and went up to them: But being
weary with their Journey, they sat down
in the Ring, to see if they could meet with
what they were in Quest of. As it began
to be late in the Day, there happened on a
sudden a Quarrel between two of the young
Men, whose Names were Merlin and Dabu-
tius. In the Dispute, Dabutius said to Merlin:
"You Fool, do you presume to quarrel
with me? Is there any equality in our
Birth? I am both by my Father and Mo-
thers Side, descended of Royal Race. As
for you, no Body knows what you are;
for you never had a Father." At that
Word the Messengers looked earnestly upon
Merlin, and asked the By-standers who he
was,
was. They told him, it was not known who was his Father; but that his Mother was Daughter to the King of Demetia, and that she lived in St. Peter's Church among the Nuns of that City.

CHAP. XVIII.

Vortegirn enquires of Merlins Mother concerning her Conception of him.

The Messengers upon this hastened to the Governor of the City, and ordered him in the King's Name, to send Merlin and his Mother to the King. As soon as the Governor understood the occasion of their Message, he readily obeyed the Order, and sent them to Vortegirn to compleat his Design. When they were introduced into the King's Presence, he received the Mother in a very respectful Manner, on Account of her noble Birth; and then began to enquire of her, by what Man she had conceived. "My Sovereign Lord," said she, by the Life of your Soul and mine, I know no Body that begot him of me. Only this I know, that as I was one Time with my Companions in our Chambers, there appeared to me a Person in the Shape of a most beautiful young Man, who often and most eagerly..."
“eagerly embraced me in his Arms, and killed me; and when he had stay’d a little Time, he suddenly vanished out of my Sight. But many Times after this he would be talking with me when I sat alone, without making any visible Appearance. When he had a long Time haunted me in this manner, he at last laid with me several Times in Shape of a Man, and left me with Child. And I do affirm to you, my Sovereign Lord, that excepting that young Man, I know no Body that begot him of me.” The King full of Admiration at this Account, ordered Maugantius to be called, that he might satisfy him as to the Possibility of what the Woman had related. Maugantius being introduced, and having heard the whole Matter repeated to him, said to Vortegirn; “In the Books of our Philosophers, and in a great many Histories, I have found that several Men have had the like Original. For, as Apuleius informs us in his Book concerning the Demon of Socrates, between the Moon and the Earth inhabit those Spirits, which we call Incubuses. These are of the Nature partly of Men, and partly of Angels, and whenever they please, assume human Shapes, and lie with Women. Perhaps one of them appeared to this Woman, and begot that young Man of her.”
M E R L I N in the mean Time was attentive to all that had passed, and then approached the King, and said to him; "For what Reason am I and my Mother introduced into your Presence?" "My Magicians, answered Vortegern, advised me to inquire out a Man that had no Father, with whose Blood my Building is to be sprinkled, in order to make it stand." Order your Magicians, said "Merlin, to come before me, and I will convict them of a Lye." The King was surprized at his Words, and presently ordered the Magicians to come, and sit down before Merlin, who spoke to them after this manner. "Because you are ignorant what it is that hinders the Foundation of the Tower, you have recommended the shedding of my Blood for Cement to it, as if that would presently make it stand. But tell me now, what is there under the Foundation? For something there is that will not suffer it to stand." The Magicians at this began to be afraid, and made him no Answer. Then
said Merlin, who was also called Ambrose;
"I intreat your Majesty would command
"your Workmen to dig into the Ground,
"and you will find a Pond which causes
"the Foundation to sink." This accordin-
gly was done, and then presently they
found a Pond deep under Ground, which
had made it give way. Merlin after this
went again to the Magicians, and said,
"Tell me ye, false Sycophants, what is
"there under the Pond." But they were
silent. Then said he again to the King;
"Command the Pond to be drained, and
"at the Bottom you will see two hollow
"Stones, and in them two Dragons asleep."
The King made no Scruple of believing
him, since he had found true what he said
of the Pond, and therefore ordered it to be
drained. Which done, he found as Merlin
had said; and now was possessed with the
greatest Admiration of him. Nor were
the rest that were present less amazed at
his Wisdom, thinking it to be no less than
Divine Inspiration.
The British History.

The Seventh Book,
Which is concerning the
Prophecies of Merlin.

CHAP. I.
Jeffrey of Monmouth's Preface to Merlin's Prophecies.

Had not got so far as this Place of the History, when the Subject of publick Discourse happening to be concerning Merlin, I was obliged to publish his Prophecies at the Request of my Acquaintance, but especially of Alexander Bishop of Lincoln, a Prelate of the
the greatest Piety and Wisdom. There was not any Person either among the Clergy or Laity, that was attended with such a Train of Knights and Noblemen, whom his settled Piety and great Munificence engaged in his Service. Out of a Desire therefore to gratify him, I translated these Prophecies, and sent them to him with the following Letter.

C H A P. II.

Jeffrey's Letter to Alexander Bishop of Lincoln.

"THE Regard I owe to your great "Worth, most Noble Prelate, "has obliged me to undertake the Transla- "tion of Merlin's Prophecies out of British "into Latin, before I had made an End of "the History, which I had begun concern- "ing the Acts of the British Kings. For "my Design was to have finished that first, "and afterwards to have explained this "Work; left by having both upon my "Hands at once, I should be less capable "of attending with any Exactness to either. "Notwithstanding since the Deference that "is paid to your penetrating Judgment, "will I know skreen me from Censure; "I have
"I have therefore employ'd my rude Pen, and in a vulgar Style present you with a Translation out of a Language, with which you are unacquainted. At the same Time, I cannot but admire at your recommending this Matter to one of my low Genius, when you might have obliged so many Men of greater Learning, and a richer Vein of Wit, to have undertaken it; who with their sublime Strains would have much more agreeably entertained you. Besides, without any Disparagement to all the Philosophers in Britain, I must take the Liberty to say, that you yourself, if the Business of your high Station would give you Leisure, are capable of furnishing us with loftier Productions of this Kind, than any Man living. However, since it was your Pleasure, that Jeffrey of Monmouth should be employ'd in this Prophecy, he hopes you will favourably accept of his Performance, and vouchsafe to give a finer Turn to whatever you shall find unpolished, or otherwise faulty in it.
The Prophecy of MERLIN.

As Vortegirn, King of the Britains, was sitting upon the Bank of the drained Pond, the two Dragons, one of which was white, the other red, came forth, and approaching one another, began a terrible Fight, and each forth Fire with their Breath. But the white Dragon had the Advantage, and made the other fly to the End of the Lake. And he for Grief at his Flight, renewed the Assault upon his Pursuer, and forced him to retire. After this Battle of the Dragons, the King commanded Ambrose Merlin to tell him what it portended. Upon which he bursting out into Tears, delivered what his Prophetical Spirit suggested to him, as follows.

"O to the red Dragon, for his Banishment hasteneth. His lurking Holes shall be seized by the white Dragon; which signifies the Saxons whom you invinted over: But the red denotes the British Nation, which shall be oppressed by the white. Therefore shall its Mountains be levelled as the Valleys, and the Rivers of the Valleys shall run with Blood. The Exercise of Religion shall be destroyed, and
and Churches lay open to Ruin. At last the oppressed shall prevail, and oppose the Cruelty of Foreigners. For a Boar of Cornwall shall give his Assistance, and trample their Necks under his Feet. The Islands of the Ocean shall be subject to his Power, and he shall possess the Forests of Gaul. The House of Romulus shall dread his Courage; and his End shall be doubtful. He shall be celebrated in the Mouths of the People; and his Exploits shall be Food to those that relate them. Six of his Posterity shall sway the Sceptre, but after them shall arise a German Worm. He shall be advanced by a Sea-Wolf, whom the Woods of Africa shall accompany. Religion shall be again abolished, and there shall be a Translation of the Metropolitan Sees. The Dignity of London shall adorn Dorobernia, and the seventh Pastor of York shall be resorted to in the Kingdom of Armorica. Menevia shall put on the Pall of the City of Legions, and a Preacher of Ireland shall be dumb on Account of an Infant growing in the Womb. It shall rain a Shower of Blood, and a raging Famine shall afflict Mankind. When these Things happen, the red one shall be grieved; but when his Fatigue is over shall grow strong. Then shall Misfortunes hasten upon the white one, and the Buildings of his Gardens shall be pul-
"
led down. Seven that sway the Sceptre shall be killed, one of whom shall become a Saint. The Bellies of Mothers shall be ript up, and Infants be abortive. There shall be a most grievous Punishment of Men, that the Natives may be restored. He that shall do these Things shall put on the brazen Man, and upon a brazen Horse shall a long Time guard the Gates of London. After this shall the red Dragon return to his proper Manners, and turn his Rage upon himself. Therefore shall the Revenge of the Thunderer shew itself, for every Field shall disappoint the Husbandmen. Mortality shall snatch away the People, and make a Defolation over all Countries. The Remainder shall quit their native Soil, and make foreign Plantations. A blessed King shall prepare a Fleet, and shall be reckoned the twelfth in the Court among the Saints. There shall be a miserable Defolation of the Kingdom, and the Floors of Harvests shall return to the fruitful Forests. The white Dragon shall rise again, and invite over a Daughter of Germany. Our Gardens shall be again replenished with foreign Seed, and the red one shall pine away at the End of the Pond. After that shall the German Worm be Crowned, and the brazen Prince buried. He has his Bounds af-
signed him, which he shall not be able to pass. For a hundred and fifty Years he shall continue in Trouble and Subjection, but shall bear Sway three hundred. Then shall the North-wind rise against him, and shall snatch away the Flowers which the West-wind produced. There shall be Gilding in the Temples, nor shall the Edge of the Sword cease. The German Dragon shall hardly get to his Holes, because the Revenge of his Treason shall overtake him. At last he shall flourish for a little Time, but the Decimation of Neustria shall hurt him. For a People in Wood and in Iron Coats shall come, and revenge upon him his Wickedness. They shall restore the ancient Inhabitants to their Dwellings, and there shall be an open Destruction of Foreigners. The Seed of the white Dragon shall be swept out of our Gardens, and the Remainder of his Generation shall be decimated. They shall bear the Yoke of Slavery, and wound their Mother with Spades and Ploughs. 'After this shall succeed two Dragons,' whereof one shall be killed with the Sting of Envy, but the other shall return under the Shadow of a Name. Then shall succeed a Lion of Justice, at whose Roar the Gallican Towers and the Island Dragons shall tremble. In those Days Gold shall be squeezed from the O Lilly
Lilly and the Nettle, and Silver shall flow from the Hoofs of bellowing Cattle. The Frizled shall put on various Fleeces, and the outward Habit denote the inward Parts. The Feet of Barkers shall be cut off: Wild Beasts shall enjoy Peace: Mankind shall be grieved at their Punishment: The Form of Commerce shall be divided: The half shall be round. The Ravenousness of Kites shall be destroyed, and the Teeth of Wolves blunted. The Lions Whelps shall be transformed into Sea-Fishes; and an Eagle shall build her Nest upon Mount Ararius. Venedotia shall grow red with Mothers Blood, and the House of Corineus kill six Brethren. The Island shall be wet with Night-Tears; so that all shall be provoked to all Things. Wo to thee, Neustria, because the Lions Brain shall be poured upon Thee; and he shall be banished with shattered Limbs from his Native Soil. Posterity shall endeavour to fly above the highest Places; but the Favour of New-comers shall be exalted. Piety shall hurt the Possessor of Things got by Impiety, till he shall have put on his Father. Therefore being armed with the Teeth of a Boar, he shall ascend above the Tops of Mountains, and the Shadow of him that wears a Helmet. Albania shall be enraged, and assembling her Neighbours, shall
Book VII. The British History.

"shall be employ'd in shedding Blood."
"There shall be put into her Jaws a Bridle that shall be made in the Coast of Armo-
"rica. The Eagle of the broken Covenant shall gild it over, and rejoice in her third Nest. The roaring Whelps shall watch, and leaving the Woods, shall hunt within the Walls of Cities. They shall make no small Slaughter of those that oppose them, and shall cut off the Tongues of Bulls. They shall load the Necks of roaring Lions with Chains, and restore the Times of their Ancestors.

"Then from the first to the fourth, from the fourth to the third, from the third to the second, the Thumb shall roll in Oil. The sixth shall overturn the Walls of Ireland, and change the Woods into a Plain. He shall reduce several Parts to one, and be Crowned with the Head of a Lion. His Beginning shall lay open to wandring Affection, but his End shall carry him up to the Blessed above. For he shall restore the Seats of Saints in their Countries, and settle Pastors in convenient Places. Two Cities he shall invest with two Falls, and shall bestow Virgin Presents upon Virgins. He shall merit by this the Favour of the Thunderer, and shall be placed among the Saints. From him shall proceed a Lynx penetrating all Things, who shall be bent upon
"upon the Ruin of his own Nation: For through him Neufiria shall lose both Islands, and be deprived of its ancient Dignity. Then shall the Natives return back to the Island; for there shall arise a Diffension among Foreigners. Also a hoary Old-man, sitting upon a Snow-white Horse, shall turn the Course of the River Periron, and shall measure out a Mill upon it with a white Rod. Cadwallader shall call upon Conan, and take Albazia into Alliance. Then shall there be a Slaughter of Foreigners; then shall the Rivers run with Blood. Then shall break forth the Fountains of Armorica, and they shall be Crowned with the Diadem of Brutus. Cambria shall be filled with Joy; and the Oaks of Cornwall shall flourish. The Island shall be called by the Name of Brutus: And the Name given it by Foreigners shall be abolished. From Conan shall proceed a Warlike Boar, that shall exercise the Sharpness of his Tusks within the Gallican Woods. For he shall cut down all the larger Oaks, and shall be a Defence to the smaller. The Arabians and Africans shall dread him; for he shall pursue his furious Course to the farther Part of Spain. There shall succeed the Goat of the Venereal Castle, having golden Horns and a silver Beard; who shall breathe such a Cloud out of his "Noftrils,
"Noftrils," as shall darken the whole Surface of the Island. There shall be Peace in his Time; and Corn shall abound by Reason of the Fruitfulness of the Soil. Women shall become Serpents in their Gate, and all their Motions shall be full of Pride. The Camp of Venus shall be restored; nor shall the Arrows of Cupid cease to wound. The Fountain of a River shall be turned into Blood; and two Kings shall fight a Duel at Stafford for a Lioness. Luxury shall overspread the whole Ground; and Fornication not cease to debauch Mankind. All these Things shall three Ages see; till the buried Kings shall be expos'd to publick View in the City of London. Famine shall again return; Mortality shall return; and the Inhabitants shall grieve for the Destruction of their Cities. Then shall come the Boar of Commerce, who shall recall the scattered Flocks to the Pастure they had loft. His Breast shall be Food to the Hungry, and his Tongue Drink to the Thirsty. Out of his Mouth shall flow Rivers, that shall water the parched Jaws of Men. After this shall be produced a Tree upon the Tower of London, which having no more than three Branches, shall overshadow the Surface of the whole Island with the Breadth of its Leaves. Its Adversary the North-wind shall
shall come upon it, and with its noxious Blasf shall snatch away the third Branch; but the two remaining ones shall possess its Place, till they shall destroy one another by the Multitude of their Leaves: And then shall it obtain the Place of those two, and shall give Sustenance to Birds of Foreign Nations. It shall be esteemed hurtful to Native Fowls; for they shall not be able to fly freely for Fear of its Shadow. There shall succeed the Af's of Wickedness, swift against the Gold-smiths; but slow against the Ravenous-ness of Wolves. In those Days the Oaks of the Forests shall burn, and Acorns grow upon the Branches of Tel Trees. The Severn Sea shall discharge itself through seven Mouths, and the River Uske burn seven Months. Fishes shall die with the Heat thereof; and of them shall be engendred Serpents. The Baths of Badon shall grow cold, and their salubrious Waters engender Death. London shall mourn for the Death of twenty thousand; and the River Thames shall be turned into Blood. The Monks in their Cowls shall be forced to marry, and their Cry shall be heard upon the Mountains of the Alps.
The Continuation of the Prophecy.

THREE Springs shall break forth in the City of Winchester, whose Rivulets shall divide the Island into three Parts. Whoever shall drink of the first, shall enjoy long Life; nor shall ever be afflicted with Sickness. He that shall drink of the second, shall die of Hunger; and Paleness and Horror shall sit in his Countenance. He that shall drink of the third, shall be surprized with sudden Death, neither shall his Body be capable of Burial. Those that are willing to escape so great a Surfeit, will endeavour to hide it with several Coverings; But whatever bulk shall be laid upon it, shall receive the Form of another Body. For Earth shall be turned into Stones; Stones into Water; Wood into Ashes; Ashes into Water, if cast over it. Also a Damself shall be sent from the City of the Forest of Canute, to administer a Cure; who after she shall have practised all her Arts, shall dry up the noxious Fountains only with her Breath. Afterwards as soon as she shall have refreshed herself with the wholesome Liquor, she shall bear in her
"right Hand the Wood of Caledon, and in her left the Forts of the Walls of London. Wherever she shall go, she shall make sulphureous Steps, which will smoke with a double Flame. That Smoke shall rouse up the City of Ruteni, and shall make Food for the Inhabitants of the Deep. She shall overflow with rueful Tears, and shall fill the Island with her dreadful cry. She shall be killed by a Hart with ten Branches, four of which shall bear golden Diadems: But the other six shall be turned into Buffles Horns, whose hideous sound shall astonish the three Islands of Britain. The Daneian Wood shall be flirred up, and breaking forth into a human Voice, shall cry; Come, O Cambria, and join Cornwall to thy Side, and say to Winchester, the Earth shall swallow the up. Translate the Seat of thy Pastor to the Place where Ships come to Harbour, and the rest of the Members will follow the Head. For the Day hasteneth, in which thy Citizens shall perish on Account of the Guilt of Perjury. The whitenefs of Wool has been hurtful to Thee, and the variety of its Tinctures. Wo to the perjured Nation, for whose Sake the renowned City shall come to Ruin. The Ships shall rejoice at so great an Augmentation, and one shall be made out of two. It shall be rebuilt by Eric loaden with Apples, to
the smell whereof the Birds of several
Woods shall flock together. He shall
add to it a vast Palace, and Wall it round
with six hundred Towers. Therefore
shall London envy it, and triply encrease
her Walls. The River Thames shall en-
compass it round, and the Fame of the
Work shall pass beyond the Alps. Eric
shall hide his Apples within it, and shall
make subterraneous Passages. At that
Time shall the Stones speak, and the Sea
towards the Gallick Coast be contracted
into a narrow Space. On each Bank shall
one Man hear another, and the Soil of
the Island shall be enlarged. The Se-
crets of the Deep shall be revealed, and
Gaul shall tremble for Fear. After these
Things shall come forth a Hen from the
Forest of Calaterium, which shall fly round
the Island for two Years together. With
her nocturnal Cry she shall call together
the winged Kind, and assemble to her
all sorts of Fowls. They shall invade
the Tillage of Husbandmen, and devour
all the Grain of the Harvests. Then shall
follow a Famine upon the People, and a
grievous Mortality upon the Famine.
But when this Calamity shall be over, a
detestable Bird shall go to the Valley of
Galabes, and shall raise it to be a high Mount-
ain. Upon the Top thereof it shall also
plant an Oak, and build its Nest in its
Branches.
"Branches. Three Eggs shall be produced in the Nest, from whence shall come forth a Fox, a Wolf, and a Bear. The Fox shall devour her Mother, and bear the Head of an Ass. In this monstrous Form shall she fright her Brothers, and make them fly into Neustria. But they shall stir up the tusky Boar, and returning in a Fleet shall encounter with the Fox; who at the Beginning of the Fight shall feign her self dead, and move the Boar to Compassion: Then shall the Boar approach her Carcass, and standing over her, shall breathe upon her Face and Eyes. But she not forgetting her Cunning, shall bite his left Foot, and pluck it off from his Body. Then shall she leap upon him, and snatch away his right Ear and Tail, and hide herself in the Caverns of the Mountains. Therefore shall the deluded Boar require the Wolf and Bear to restore him his Members; who as soon as they shall enter into the Cause, shall promise two Feet of the Fox, together with the Ear and Tail, and of these they shall make up the Members of a Hog. With this he shall be satisfied, and expect the promised Restitution. In the mean Time shall the Fox descend from the Mountains, and change herself into a Wolf, and under Pretence of holding a Conference with the Boar, she shall go..."
to him, and craftily devour him. After that she shall transform herself into a Boar, and feigning a Loss of some Members, shall wait for her Brothers; but as soon as they are come, she shall suddenly kill them with her Tusks, and shall be crowned with the Head of a Lion.

In her Days shall a Serpent be brought forth, which shall be a Destroyer of Man-kind. With its Length it shall encompass London, and devour all that pass by it. The Mountain Ox shall take the Head of a Wolf, and whiten his Teeth in the Severn. He shall gather to him the Flocks of Albania and Cambria, which shall drink the River Thames dry. The Afs shall call the Goat with the long Beard, and shall borrow his Shape. Therefore shall the Mountain Ox be incensed, and having called the Wolf, shall become a horned Bull against them. In the Exercise of his Cruelty he shall devour their Flesh and Bones, but shall be burned upon the Top of Urian. The Ashes of his Funeral-pile shall be turned into Swans, that shall swim on dry Ground as on a River. They shall devour Fishes in Fishes, and swallow up Men in Men. But when old Age shall come upon them, they shall become Sea-wolves, and practise their Frauds in the Deep. They shall drown Ships, and collect no small quantity of Silver.
"Silver. The Thames shall again flow, and assembling together the Rivers, shall pass beyond the Bounds of its Chanel. It shall cover the adjacent Cities, and overturn the Mountains that oppose its Course.

"Being full of Deceit and Wickedness, it shall make Use of the Fountain Galabes.

"Hence shall arise Factions provoking the Venetians to War. The Oaks of the Forests shall meet together, and encounter with the Rocks of the Gewisseans. A Raven shall attend with the Kites, and devour the Carcasses of the Slain. An Owl shall build her Nest upon the Walls of Gloucester, and in her Nest shall be brought forth an Ass. The Serpent of Malvernia shall bring him up, and put him upon many fraudulent Practices. Having taken the Crown he shall ascend on high, and frighten the People of the Country with his hideous Braying. In his Days shall the Pashaian Mountains tremble, and the Provinces be deprived of their Woods.

"For there shall come a Worm with a fiery Breath, and with the Vapour it sends forth shall burn up the Trees. Out of it shall proceed seven Lions deformed with the Heads of Goats. With the Stench of their Nostrils they shall corrupt Women, and make Wives turn common Prostitutes. The Father shall not know his own Son, because they shall grow wan-..."
ton like brute Beasts. Then shall come
the Giant of Wickedness, and terrify all
with the Sharpness of his Eyes. Against
him shall arise the Dragon of Worcester,
and shall endeavour to banish him. But
in the Engagement the Dragon shall be
worsted, and oppressed by the Wicked-
ness of the Conqueror. For he shall
mount upon the Dragon, and putting off
his Garment shall sit upon him naked.
The Dragon shall bear him up on high,
and beat his naked Rider with his Tail
erected. Upon this the Giant rousing up
his whole Strength, shall break his Jaws
with his Sword. At last the Dragon
shall fold itself up under its Tail, and
die of Poison. After him shall succeed
the Boar of Totness, and oppress the Peo-
ple with grievous Tyranny. Gloucester
shall send forth a Lion, and shall disturb
him in his Cruelty in several Battles. He
shall trample him under his Feet, and
terrify him with open Jaws. At last the
Lion shall quarrel with the Kingdom;
and get upon the Backs of the Nobility.
A Bull shall come into the Quarrel, and
strike the Lion with his right Foot. He
shall drive him through all the Inns in the
Kingdom, but shall break his Horns a-
gainst the Walls of Oxford. The Fox of
*Kaerdubalum* shall take Revenge on the
Lion, and destroy him entirely with her
Teeth.
Teeth. She shall be encompassed by the Adder of Lincoln, who with a horrible Hiss shall give Notice of his Presence to a Multitude of Dragons. Then shall the Dragons encounter, and tear one another to Pieces. The Winged shall oppress that which wants Wings, and fasten its Claws into the poisonous Cheeks. Others shall come into the Quarrel, and kill one another. A fifth shall succeed those that are slain, and by various Stratagems shall destroy the rest. He shall get upon the Back of one with his Sword, and sever his Head from his Body. Then throwing off his Garment, he shall get upon another, and put his right and left Hand upon his Tail. Thus being naked shall he overcome him, whom when clothed he was not able to deal with. The rest he shall gall in their Flight, and drive them round the Kingdom. Upon this shall come a roaring Lion dreadful for his monstrous Cruelty. Fifteen Parts shall he reduce to one, and shall alone possess the People. The Giant of the Snow-white Colour shall shine, and cause the white People to flourish. Pleasures shall effemin ate the Princes, and they shall sud denly be changed into Beasts. Among them shall arise a Lion swelled with humane Gore. Under him shall a Reaper be placed in the standing Corn, who while
while he is reaping shall be oppressed by him. A Charioteer of York shall appease them, and having banished his Lord, shall mount upon the Chariot which he shall drive. With his Sword unsheathed shall he threaten the East, and fill the Tracts of his Wheels with Blood. Afterwards he shall become a Sea-Fish, who being routed up with the Hissing of a Serpent, shall engender with him. From hence shall be produced three thundering Bulls, who having eat up their Pastsures shall be turned into Trees. The first shall carry a Whip of Vipers, and turn his Back on the next. He shall endeavour to snatch away the Whip, but shall be taken by the last. They shall turn away their Faces from one another, till they have thrown away the poisoned Cup. Him shall succeed a Husbandman of Albania, at whose Back shall be a Serpent. He shall be employ'd in plowing the Ground, that the Country may become white with Corn. The Serpent shall endeavour to diffuse his Poison, in Order to blast the Harvest. A grievous Mortality shall sweep away the People, and the Walls of Cities shall be made desolate. There shall be given for a Remedy the City of Claudius, which shall interpose the Nurse of the Scourger. For she shall bear a Dose of Medicine, and
in a short Time the Island shall be restored. Then shall two successively slyly the Sceptre, whom a horned Dragon shall serve. One shall come in Armour; and shall ride upon a flying Serpent. He shall sit upon his Back with his naked Body, and cast his right Hand upon his Tail. With his Cry shall the Seas be moved, and he shall strike Terror into the Second. The Second therefore shall enter into Confederacy with the Lion; but a Quarrel happening, they shall encounter one another. They shall distress one another, but the Courage of the Beast shall gain the Advantage. Then shall come one with a Drum, and appease the Rage of the Lion. Therefore shall the People of the Kingdom be at Peace, and provoke the Lion to a Dose of Physick. In his established Seat he shall adjust the Weights, but shall stretch out his Hands into Albania. For which Reason the northern Provinces shall be grieved, and open the Gates of the Temples. The Sign-bearing Wolf shall lead his Troops, and surround Cornwall with his Tail. He shall be opposed by a Soldier in a Chariot, who shall transform that People into a Boar. The Boar therefore shall ravage the Provinces, but shall hide his Head in the Depth of Severn. A Man shall embrace a Lion in Wine, and the
Book VII.  The British History.  225

the dazling brightness of Gold shall blind
the Eyes of Beholders. Silver shall whiten
in the Circumference, and torment several Wine-presses. Men shall be drunk
with Wine; and regardless of Heaven
shall be intent upon the Earth. From
them shall the Stars turn away their Faces;
and confound their usual Course. Corn
will wither at their malign Aspects; and
there shall fall no Dew from Heaven.
The Roots and Branches will change
their Places, and the Novelty of the
Thing shall pass for a Miracle. The
Brightness of the Sun shall fade at the
Amber of Mercury, and Horror shall seize
the Beholders. Stilbon of Arcadia shall
change his Shield; the Helmet of Mars
shall call Venus. The Helmet of Mars
shall make a Shadow; and the Rage of
Mercury pass his Bounds. Iron Orion shall
unsheath his Sword: The marine Phaebus
shall torment the Clouds; Jupiter shall
go out of his lawful Paths; and Venus
forfake her stated Lines. The malignity
of the Star Saturn shall fall down in Rain,
and slay Mankind with a crooked Sickle.
The twelve Houses of the Stars shall la-
ment the irregular Excursions of their
Guests; and Gemini omit their usual
Embraces, and call the Urn to the Foun-
tains. The Scales of Libra shall hang
obliquely, till Aries put his crooked Horns
under
under them. The Tail of Scorpio shall produce Lightning, and Cancer quarrel with the Sun. Virgo shall mount upon the Back of Sagittarius, and darken her Virgin Flowers. The Chariot of the Moon shall disorder the Zodiac, and the Pleiades break forth into Weeping. No Offices of Janus shall hereafter return, but his Gate being shut shall lie hid in the Chinks of Ariadne. The Seas shall rise up in the Twinkling of an Eye, and the Duff of the Ancients shall be restored. The Winds shall fight together with a dreadful Blast, and their Sound shall reach the Stars.
CHAP. I.

Vortegirn asks Merlin concerning his own Death.

ERLIN, by delivering these and many other Prophecies, caused in all that were present an Admiration at the Ambiguity of his Expressions. But Vortegirn above all the rest both admired and applauded the Wisdom, and prophetical Spirit of the young Man: For that Age had produced none that ever talked in such a Manner before him. Being therefore curious to learn his own Fate, he desired the young Man to tell him what
he knew concerning that Particular. *Merlin answered; "Fly the Fire of the Sons of
Constantine, if you are able to do it: Now
are they fitting out their Ships: Now
are they leaving the Armorican Shore:
Now are they spreading out their Sails
to the Wind. They will steer towards
Britain: They will invade the Saxon Na-
tion; they will subdue that wicked Peo-
ple; but they will first burn you being
shut up in a Tower. To your own Ruin
did you prove a Traitor to their Father,
and invite the Saxons into the Island. You
invited them for your Safe-guard; but
they came for a Punishment to you. Two
Deaths instantly threaten you; nor is it
easy to determine, which you can best
avoid. For on the one Hand the Saxons
shall lay waste your Country, and endea-
vour to kill you: On the other shall ar-
rive the two Brothers, Aurelius Ambrosius
and Uther Pendragon, whose Business will
be to revenge their Father's Murder upon
you. Seek out some Refuge if you can:
To morrow they will be on the Shore of
Totness. The Faces of the Saxons shall
look red with Blood, and Hengist being
killed Aurelius Ambrosius shall be crown'd.
He shall bring Peace to the Nation; he
shall restore the Churches; but shall die
of Poison. His Brother Uther Pendragon
shall succeed him, whose Days also shall
"be cut short by Poison. There shall be "present at the Commission of this Treafon your own Issue, whom the Boar of "Cornwal shall devour. Accordingly the "next Day early, arrived Aurelius Ambro-"fius and his Brother, attended with ten "thousand Men.

C H A P. II.

Aurelius Ambrofius being anointed
King of Britain, burns Vortegirn
besieged in a Tower.

As soon as the News of his coming was divulged, the Britains who had been dispersed in so great a Calamity, met together from all Parts, and gaining this new Accession of Strength from their Countrymen, become more cheerful than ordinary. Then having assembled together the Clergy, they anointed Aurelius King, and paid him the customary Homage. And when the People were urgent to fall upon the Saxons, he dissuaded them from it, because his Design was to pursue Vortegirn first. For the Treafon committed against his Father so very much affected him, that he thought nothing done till that was first revenged. In Pursuance therefore of this Design, he P 3 marches
marches with his Army into Cambria, to the Town of Genoreu, whither Vortegirn had fled for a safe Refuge. That Town was in the Country of Hergin, upon the River Gania, in the Mountain called Cloarius. As soon as Ambrosius was arrived there, he bearing in his Mind the Murder of his Father and Brother, spake thus to Eldol Duke of Gloucester.

"See, most Noble Duke, whether the Walls of this City are able to protect Vortegirn against my sheathing this Sword in his Bowels. He deserves to die, and you cannot, I suppose, be ignorant of his Desert. O most villainous of Men, whose Crimes deserve unexpressible Tortures! First he betray'd my Father Constantine, who had delivered him and his Country from the Inrodes of the Picts; afterwards my Brother Constans, whom he made King on Purpose to destroy him. Again, when by his Craft he had usurped the Crown, he introduced Pagans among the Natives, in order to suppress those who continued steadfast in their Loyalty to me: But by the good Providence of God, he unwarily fell into the Snare, which he had laid for my faithful Subjects. For the Saxons when they found him out in his Wickedness, drove him from the Kingdom; for which no Body "ought
"ought to be concerned. But this I think
"Matter of just Grief, that this odious
"People, whom that detestable Traitor
"invited over, has expelled the Nobility,
"laid waste a fruitful Country, destroy'd
"the Holy Churches, and almost extin-
"guished Christianity over the whole King-
"dom. Now therefore, my Countrymen,
"shew yourselves Men; first revenge your
"selves upon him that was the Occasion of
"all these Disasters; then let us turn our
"Arms against our Enemies that are just
"upon us, and free our Country from
"their brutifh Tyranny.

Immediately therefore they set their En-
gines to work, and laboured to beat down
the Walls. But at last, when all other
Attempts failed, they had Recourse to
Fire, which meeting with proper Fuel,
ceased not to rage, till it had burnt down
the Tower and Vortegium in it.
CHAP. III.

The Praise of Aurelius's Valour: The Levity of the Scots exposed. Forces raised against Hengist.

HENGIST with his Saxons was struck with Terror at this News; for he dreaded the Valour of Aurelius. Such was the Bravery and Courage this Prince was Master of; that while he was in the Parts of Gaul, there was none durst encounter with him. For in all Rencontres he either dismounted his Adversary, or broke his Spear. Besides he was magnificent in his Presents, constant at his Devotions, temperate in all Respects, and above all Things hated a Lye. A brave Soldier on Foot; a better on Horseback, and expert in the Discipline of an Army. Reports of these his noble Accomplishments, while he yet continued in Armorican Britain, were daily brought over into the Island. Therefore the Saxons for fear of him, retired beyond the Humber, and in those Parts fortified the Cities and Towns; for that Country always lay open for a Place of Refuge to them; their Safety lying in the Neighbourhood of Scotland, which used to watch all Opportunities of distressing the Nation.

For
For that Country being in itself a frightful Place to live in, and wholly uninhabited, had been a safe Receptacle for Strangers. By its Situation it lay open to the Picts, Scots; Danians, Norwegians and others, that came to plunder the Island. Being therefore secure of a safe Reception in this Country, they fled towards it, that if there should be Occasion, they might retreat into it as into their own Camp. This was very good News to Aurelius, and made him conceive greater Hopes of Victory. So assembling his People quickly together, he augmented his Army, and made an expeditious March towards the Northern Parts. In his Passage through the Countries, he was grieved to see the Desolation made in them, but especially that the Churches lay level with the Ground; and promised to rebuild them, if he gained the Victory.

C H A P. IV.

Hengist marches with his Army against Aurelius, into the Field Mailbeli.

BUT Hengist upon his Approach took Courage again, and chose out the bravest of his Men, whom he spirited up to
to make a gallant Defence, and not be
daunted at Aurelius; who told them,
had but few Armorican Britains along
with him, since their Number did not exceed ten
thousand. And as for the Island Britains
he made no Account of them, since they
had been so often defeated by him. He
promised them therefore the Victory, and
that they should come off safely, consider-
ing the Superiority of their Number, which
amounted to two hundred thousand Men
in Arms. After he had in this Manner ani-
mated all his Men, he advanced with them
towards Aurelius, into a Field called Maubeli,
through which Aurelius was to pass. For
his Desire was to make a sudden Assault by
a Surprize, and fall upon the Britains before
they were prepared. But Aurelius percei-
vied the Design, and yet did not upon that
Score delay going to the Field, but rather
pursued his March with more Expedition.
When he was come within Sight of the
Enemy, he put his Troops in Order, com-
manding three thousand Armoricans to at-
tend the Cavalry, and drew out the rest
into the Line of Battle with the Islanders.
The Demetians he placed upon the Hills,
and the Venedotians in the adjacent Woods.
His Reason for which was, that they might
be there ready to fall upon the Saxons, in
Cafe they should fly thither.
In the mean time Eldol Duke of Gloucester, went to the King, and said, "This one day should suffice for all the days of my life, if by good providence I could but get an opportunity to engage with Hengist: For one of us should die before we parted. I still retain deep fixed in my memory, the day appointed for our peaceably treating together; but which he villainously made use of for the assassinating all that were present at the treaty, excepting my self only, who stood up on my defence with a stake I accidentally found, till I made my escape. That very day proved fatal, through his treachery, to no less than four hundred and sixty barons and consuls, who all went unarmed. From that conspiracy God was pleased to deliver me, by throwing a stake in my way, where with I defended my self and escaped." Thus Eldol. Then Aurelius exhorted his companions to place all their hope in the son of God, and to make a brave assault with one consent upon the enemy, in defence
fence of their Country. Nor was Hengist less busy on the other Hand in forming his Troops, and giving them Directions how to behave themselves in the Battle; and walked himself through their several Ranks the more to spirit them up. At last both Armies being drawn out in Order of Battle, began the Attack, which they maintain'd with great Bravery, and no small Loss of Blood, both of the Britains and Saxons. Aurelius animates the Christians, Hengist the Pagans; and all the Time of the Engagement, Eldols chief Endeavour was to encounter Hengist, but he had no Opportunity for it. For Hengist when he found his own Men routed, and that the Christians, by the especial Favour of God, had the Advantage, fled to the Town called Kærconan, now Cununæburg. Aurelius pursues him, and either kills or makes Slaves of all he found in the Way. When Hengist saw that he was pursued by Aurelius, he would not enter the Town, but assembled his Troops, and prepared them to stand another Engagement. For he knew the Town would not hold out against Aurelius, and that his whole Security now lay in his Sword. At last Aurelius overtook him, and after marshalling his Forces, began another most furious Fight. And here the Saxons unanimously maintained their Ground, notwithstanding the Numbers that fell. On both Sides
Sides was great Execution done, the Groans of the dying causing a greater Rage in those that survived. In short the Saxons would have gained the Day, had not a Detachment of Horse of the Armorican Britains, come in upon them. For Aurelius had appointed them the same Station which they had in the former Battle; so that upon their advancing, the Saxons gave Ground, and being a little dispersed, were not able to rally again. The Britains encouraged by this Advantage, exerted themselves, and laboured with all their Might to distress the Enemy. All the Time was Aurelius fully employed, not only in giving Commands, but encouraging his Men by his own Example: For with his own Hand he killed all that stood in his Way, and pursued those that fled. Nor was Eldol less active in all Parts of the Field, running to and fro to infest his Adversaries; but still his main Endeavour was to find an Opportunity of encountering Hengist.
Hengist in a Duel with Eldol, is taken by him. The Saxons are slain by the Britains without Mercy.

As there were therefore several Motions made by the Parties engaged on each Side, there happened an Opportunity for their meeting, and briskly engaging each other. In this Rencounter of the two greatest Champions in the Field, the Fire sparkled with the clashing of their Arms, and every Stroke in a manner produced both Thunder and Lightning. For a long Time was the Victory in Suspence, as it seemed sometimes to favour the one, sometimes the other. While they were thus hotly engaged, Gorlois Duke of Cornwall came up to them with the Party he commanded, and did great Execution upon the Enemies Troops. At the Sight of him Eldol, now more assured of Victory, fastned upon the Helmet of Hengist, and by main Force dragged him in among the Britains, and then in Transports of Joy cry’d out with a loud Voice, “God has fulfilled my Desire! My brave Soldiers, down, down with your Enemies the Ambraons. The Victory is now
now in your Hands: Since Hengist is defeated, the Day is your own. In the mean Time the Britains failed not to perform every one their Parts against the Pagans, upon whom they made many vigorous Assaults; and though they were obliged sometimes to give Ground, yet their Courage failed them not in making a good Resistance; so that they gave the Enemy no Respite till they had vanquished them. The Saxons therefore fled whithersoever their Conternation hurried them, some to the Cities, some to the Woods upon the Hills, and others to their Ships. But Octa, the Son of Hengist, made his Retreat with a great Body of Men to Tork: And Eofa his Kinsman to the City of Alclud, where he had a very large Army for his Guard.

C H A P. VII.

Hengist is beheaded by Eldol.

Aurelius after this Victory took the City of Conan above-mentioned, and there stay’d three Days. During this Time he gave Orders for the Burial of the Slain, for curing the Wounded, and for the Ease and Refreshment of his Forces that were fatigued.
fatigued. Then he called a Council of his principal Officers, to deliberate what was to be done with Hengist. There was present at the Assembly Eldad Bishop of Gloucester, and Brother of Eldol, being a Prelate of very great Wisdom and Piety. As soon as he beheld Hengist standing in the King's Presence, he demanded Silence, and said; "Though all should be unanimous for setting him at Liberty, yet would I cut him to Pieces. The Prophet Samuel is my Warrant, who when he had Agag King of Amalech in his Power, hew'd him in Pieces, saying, As thy Sword hath made Women childless, so shall thy Mother be childless among Women. Do you therefore the same to Hengist, who is a second Agag." Accordingly Eldol took his Sword, and drew him out of the City, and then cut off his Head. But Aurelius who shew'd a Moderation in all his Conduct, commanded him to be buried, and a Heap of Earth to be raised over his Body, according to the Custom of the Pagans.
CHAP. VIII.

Octa being besieged in York, surrenders himself to the Mercy of Aurelius.

From hence Aurelius conducted his Army to York, to besiege Oeta Hengist's Son. When the City was invested, Octa was doubtful whether he should give him any Opposition, and stand a Siege against such a powerful Army. After Consultation upon it, he went out with his principal Nobility that were present, carrying a Chain in his Hand, and Sand upon his Head, and presented himself to the King with this Address: "My Gods are vanquished, and I doubt not but the Sovereign Power is in your God, who has compelled so many noble Persons to come before you in this suppliant Manner. Be pleased therefore to accept of Us, and of this Chain. If you do not think Us fit Objects of your Clemency, we here present ourselves ready to be lettered, and to undergo whatever Punishment you shall adjudge Us to." Aurelius was moved with Commiseration at the Spectacle, and demanded the Advice of his Council what was to be done with them. After various Proposals upon
upon this Subject, Eldad the Bishop rose up, and delivered his Opinion in these Words; "The Gibeonites came voluntarily to the "Children of Israel to desire Mercy, and "they obtained it. And shall we Christians "be worse than the Jews, in refusing them "Mercy? It is Mercy they beg, and let "them have it. The Island of Britain is "large, and in many Places uninhabited. "Let us make a Covenant with them, and "suffer them at least to inhabit the desert "Places, that they may be our Vassals for "ever." The King acquiesced in Eldad's Advice, and suffered them to partake of his Clemency. After this Eoga and the rest that fled, being encouraged by Otho's Success, came also, and were admitted to the same Favour. The King therefore granted them the Country bordering upon Scotland, and made a firm Covenant with them.

CHAP. IX.

Aurelius having entirely routed the Enemies, restores all Things in Britain, especially Ecclesiastical, to their Ancient State.

THE Enemies being now entirely reduced, the King summoned the Consuls and Princes of the Kingdom together, at
at York, where he gave them Orders for the Restauration of the Churches, which the Saxons had destroyed. He himself undertook the rebuilding of the Metropolitan Church of that City, as also the other Cathedral Churches in that Province. After fifteen Days when he had settled Workmen in several Places, he went to London, which City had not escaped the Fury of the Enemy. He beheld the Destruction made in it with great Sorrow, and recalled the Remainder of the Citizens from all Parts, and began the Restauration of it. Here he settled the Affairs of the whole Kingdom, revived the Laws, restored the Right Heirs to the Possessions of their Ancestors; and those Estates, whereof the Heirs had been lost in the late grievous Calamity, he distributed among his Fellow Soldiers. And in these important Concerns, of restoring the Nation to its ancient State, of repairing the Churches, of re-establishing Peace and Law, and of settling the Administration of Justice, was his Time and Thoughts wholly employed. From hence he went to Winchester; to repair the Ruins of it, as he did of other Cities; and when the Work was finished there, he went, at the Instance of Bishop Eldad, to the Monastery near Caer-Cardoc, now Salisbury, where the Consuls and Princes, whom the wicked Hengist had treacherously murdered, lay buried. At this
Place was a Convent that maintained three hundred Fryars, being situated upon the Mountain of Ambrius, who, as is reported, had been the Founder of it. The sight of the Place where the Dead lay, made the King, who was of a compassionate Temper, shed Tears, and at last enter upon Thoughts, what Kind of Monument to erect upon it. For he thought something ought to be done to perpetuate the Memory of that Piece of Ground, which was honoured with the Bodies of so many noble Patriots, that dy'd for their Country.

CHA P. X.

Aurelius is advised by Merlin to remove the Giants Dance from the Mountain Killaraus.

In Order to this, he summoned together several Carpenters and Mafons, and commanded them to employ the utmost of their Art, in contriving some new Structure, for a lasting Monument to those great Men. But they, out of a Diffidence of their own Skill, refusing to undertake it, Tremounius Archbishop of the City of Legions went to the King, and said; "If any one living is able to execute your Commands, Mer-
"In the Prophet of Vortegirn is the Man. In my Opinion there is not in all your Kingdom a Person of a brighter Genius, either in predicting future Events, or in mechanical Contrivances. Order him to come to you, and exercise his Skill in the Work you design." Whereupon Aurelius, after he had asked a great many Questions concerning him, dispatched away several Messengers into the Countries to find him out, and bring him to him. After their passing through several Provinces, they found him in the Country of the Gewisseans, at the Fountain of Galabes, which he frequently resorted to. As soon as they had delivered their Message to him, they conducted him to the King, who received him with Joy; and being curious to hear some of his wonderful Speeches, commanded him to Prophecy. Merlin made Answer; "Mysteries of this Kind are not to be revealed, but when there is the greatest Necessity for it. If I should pretend to utter them either for Ostentation or Diversion, the Spirit that instructs me would be silent, and would leave me when I should have Occasion for it." And when he had made the same Refusal to all the rest present, the King would not urge him any longer about his Predictions, but spoke to him concerning the Monument he designed. "If you are desirous, said Merlin, to ho-
"nour the Burying Place of these Men with an everlasting Monument, send for the Giants' Dance, which is in Killarass a Mountain in Ireland. For there is a Structure of Stones there, which none of this Age could raise, without a profound Knowledge of the mechanical Arts. They are Stones of a vast Magnitude and wonderfull Quality: And if they can be placed here, as they are there, quite round this Spot of Ground, they will stand for ever.

CHAP. XI.

Uther Pendragon is appointed with Merlin to bring over the Giants Dance.

AT these Words of Merlin, Aurelius burst out into Laughter, and said; "How is it possible to remove such vast Stones from so distant a Country, as if Britain was not furnished with Stones fit for the Work?" Merlin reply'd; "I entreat your Majesty to forbear vain Laughter; for what I say is without Vanity." They are mystical Stones, and of a medicinal Virtue. The Giants of old brought them from the farthest Coasts of Africa, and placed them in Ireland, while they inha-
"bited that Country. Their Design in this was to make Baths in them, when they should be taken with any Illness. For their Method was to wash the Stones, and put their Sick into the Water, which infallibly cured them. With the like Success they cured Wounds also, adding only the Application of some Herbs. There is not a Stone there, which has not some healing Virtue." When the Britains heard this, they resolved to send for the Stones, and to make War upon the People of Ireland, if they should offer to detain them. And to accomplish this Business, they made choice of Uther Pendragon, who was to be attended with fifteen thousand Men. They chose also Merlin himself, by whose Direction the whole Affair was to be managed. A Fleet being therefore got ready, they set sail, and with a fair Wind arrived in Ireland.

C H A P. XII.

Gillomanius being routed by Uther, the Britains bring over the Giants Dance into Britain.

At that Time Gillomanius, a Youth of wonderful Valour, reigned in Ireland; who upon the News of the Arrival of the Britains.
Britains in his Kingdom, levy'd a vast Army, and marched out against them. And when he had learned the Occasion of their coming, he smiling said to those about him; 

"No Wonder a cowardly Race of People, were able to make so great Devastations in the Island of Britain, when the Britains are such Brutes and Fools. Was ever the like Folly heard of? What are the Stones of Ireland better than those of Britain, that our Kingdom must be put to this Disturbance for them? To Arms Soldiers, and defend your Country; while I have Life, they shall not take from us the leaft Stone of the Giants Dance."

Other seeing them prepared for a Battle, attacked them; nor was it long e'er the Britains had the Advantage, who having dispersed and killed the Irish, forced Gillomanias to fly. After the Victory they went to the Mountain Killaraus, and arrived at the Structure of Stones, the sight of which filled them both with Joy and Admiration. And while they were all standing round them, Merlin came up to them, and said: "Now try your Forces, young Men, and see whether Strength or Art can do more, towards the taking down these Stones."

At this Word they all set to their Engines with one Accord, and attempted the removing of the Giants Dance. Some prepared Cables, others small Ropes, others Ladders for
for the Work; but all to no Purpose. Merlin laughed at their vain Efforts, and then began his own Contrivances. At last when he had placed in Order the Engines that were necessary, he took down the Stones with an incredible Facility, and withal gave Directions for carrying them to the Ships, and placing them therein. This done, they with Joy set sail again, to return to Britain; where they arrived with a fair Gale, and repaired to the Burying-Place with the Stones. When Aurelius had Notice of it, he sent out Messengers to all the Parts of Britain, to summon the Clergy and People together to the Mount of Amorius, in order to celebrate with Joy and Honour the erecting of the Monument. Upon this Summons appeared the Bishops, Abbots, and People of all other Orders and Qualities; and upon the Day and Place appointed for their general Meeting, Aurelius placed the Crown upon his Head, and with Royal Pomp celebrated the Feast of Pentecost, the Solemnity whereof he continued the three following Days. In the mean Time all Places of Honour that were vacant, he bestowed upon his Domesticks, as Rewards for their good Services: At that Time were the two Metropolitan Sees of York and Legions vacant; and with the general Consent of the People, whom he was willing to please in this choice, he granted York to Sanxo, a Man
Man of great Quality, and much celebrated for his Piety; and the City of Legions to Dubricius, whom Divine Providence had pointed out as a most useful Pastor in that Place. As soon as he had settled these and other Affairs in the Kingdom, he ordered Merlin to set up the Stones brought over from Ireland, about the Sepulchre; which he accordingly did, and placed them in the same Manner as they had been in the Mountain Killaraus, and thereby gave a manifest Proof of the Prevalence of Art above Strength.

CHAP. XIII.

Pascentius brings in the Saxons against the Britains.

At the same Time Pascentius the Son of Vortegirn, who had fled over into Germany, was levying all the Forces of that Kingdom against Aurelius Ambrosius, with a Design to revenge his Fathers Death; and promised his Men an immense Treasure of Gold and Silver, if with their Assistance he could succeed in reducing Britain under his Power. When he had at last corrupted all the Youth of the Country with his large Promises, he prepared a vast Fleet, and arrived
arrived in the Northern Parts of the Island, upon which he began to make great Devastations. The King on the other hand, upon hearing this News, assembled his Army, and marched against them, and challenged the enraged Enemy to a Battle; which hereupon accordingly ensued, and in which by the Blessing of God the Enemy was defeated and put to Flight.

C H A P. XIV.

Pascentius being assisted by the King of Ireland, again infests the Britains. Aurelius dies by the Treachery of Eopa a Saxon.

Pascentius after this Flight, durst not return back to Germany, but shifting his Sails went over to Gillomanius in Ireland, by whom he was well received. And when he had given him an Account of his Misfortune, Gillomanius in Pity to him promised him his Assistance, and at the same Time vented his Complaint of the Injuries done him by Uther, the Brother of Aurelius, when he came for the Giants Dance. At last entering into Confederacy together, they made ready their Fleet, in which they embarked, and arrived at the City Menevia.
This News caused *Uther Pendragon* to levy his Forces, and march into *Cambria* to fight them. For his Brother *Aurelius* then lay sick at *Winchester*, and was not able to go himself. When *Pascentius*, *Gillomanius*, and the *Saxons* heard of it, they highly rejoiced, as flattering themselves, that his Sickness would facilitate to them the Conquest of *Britain*. And while this Occurrence was the Subject of the Peoples Discourse, one of the Saxons, named *Eopa*, came to *Pascentius*, and said; “What Reward will you give the Man, that shall kill *Aurelius* "Ambrosius for you?” To whom *Pascentius* answered, “Oh that I could find a Man of such Resolution! I would give him a thousand Pounds of Silver, and my Friendship for Life; and if by good "Fortune I can but gain the Crown, I promise upon Oath to make him a "Centurion.” To this *Eopa* reply’d, I "have learned the *British* Language, and "know the Manners of the People, and "have Skill in Physick. If therefore you "will perform this Promise, I will pretend "I am a *Christian* and a *Britain*; and when, "as a Physician, I shall be admitted into "the Kings Presence, I will make him a "Potion that shall dispatch him. And to "gain the readier Access to him, I will "withal put on the Appearance of a de- "vout and learned Monk.” Upon this Offer
Offret Pascenius entered into Covenant with him, and confirmed what he had promised with an Oath. Eopa therefore shaved his Beard and Head, and in the Habit of a Monk hastened towards Winchester, being laden with Vessels full of Medical Preparations. As soon as he arrived there, he offered his Service to those that attended about the King, and was graciously received by them; for to them no Body was now more acceptable than a Physician. Then being introduced into the Kings Presence, he promised to restore him to his Health, if he would but take his Potions. Upon which he had his Orders forthwith to prepare one of them, into which when he had secretly conveyed a poisonous Mixture, he gave it the King. As soon as Aurelius had drunk it up, the wicked Ambron ordered him presently to cover himself close up, and fall asleep, that the detestable Potion might the better operate. The King readily obeyed his Prescriptions, and in great Hopes of a speedy Recovery fell asleep. But the Poison quickly diffused itself through all the Pores and Veins of his Body, so that upon the Sleep inexorable Death ensued. In the mean Time the wicked Traytor having flyly withdrawn himself first from one and then from another, was no longer to be found in the Court. During these Transactions at Winchester,
chester, there appeared a Star of a wonderful Magnitude and Brightness, darting forth a Ray, at the End whereof was a Globe of Fire in Form of a Dragon, out of whose Mouth issued forth two Rays; one of which seemed to stretch out itself beyond the Extent of Gaul, the other towards the Irish Sea, and ended in seven lesser Rays.

**CHAP. XV.**

*An Orbit presignifies the Reign of Uther.*

At the Appearance of this Star, a general Fear and Amazement feized the People; and even Uther the Kings Brother, who was then upon his March with his Army into Cambria, being not a little terrified at it, was very curious to know of the learned Men, what it portended. Among others he ordered Merlin to be called, who also attended in this Expedition to give his Advice in the Management of the War; and who being now presented before him, was commanded to discover to him the Signification of the Star. At this he burst out into Tears, and with a loud Voice cry'd out, "O irreparable Loss! O distress'd People of Britain! Alas! The *..."
"luxurious Prince is departed! The renowned King of the Britains, Aurelius Ambrosius, is dead! Whose Death will prove fatal to us all, unless God be our Helper. Make Haste therefore, most Noble Other, make Haste to engage the Enemy: The Victory will be yours, and you shall be King of all Britain. For the Star, and the fiery Dragon under it, signifies yourself, and the Ray extending towards the Gallican Coast, portends that you shall have a most potent Son, to whose Power, all those Kingdoms shall be subject over which the Ray reaches. But the other Ray signifies a Daughter, whose Sons and Grandsons shall successively enjoy the Kingdom of Britain.

**CHAP. XVI.**

Pascentius and Gillomanius are killed in Battle.

**Ut Her**, though he doubted of the Truth of what Merlin had declared, however pursued his March against the Enemy; for he was now come within half a Days March of Menevia. When Gillomanius, Pascentius, and the Saxons were informed of his Approach, they went out to give
give him Battle. As soon as they were come within sight of each other, both Armies began to form themselves into several Bodies, and then advanced to a close Attack, in which both Sides suffered a Loss of Men, as it usually happens in such Engagements. At last towards the Close of the Day, the Advantage was on Others Side, and the Death of Gillomanius and Pascendius made an open Way for compleat Victory. So that the Barbarians being put to Flight, hastened to their Ships, but were slain by their Pursuers. Thus by the Favour of Christ, the General had triumphant Success, and then with all possible Expedition, after so great a Fatigue, returned back to Winchester. For he had now been informed, by Messengers that arrived, of the Kings sad Fate, and of his Burial by the Bishops of the Country, near the Convent of Ambrius, within the Giants Dance, which in his Life-Time he had commanded to be made. For upon hearing the News of his Death, the Bishops, Abbots, and all the Clergy of that Province, had met together at Winchester, to solemnize his Funeral. And because in his Life-Time he had given Orders for his being buried in the Sepulchre which he had prepared, they therefore carried his Corps thither, and performed his Exequies with Royal Magnificence.
Uther Pendragon is made King of Britain.

But Uther his Brother, having assembled the Clergy of the Kingdom, took the Crown, and with an universal Consent was advanced to the Kingdom. And remembering the Explication Merlin had made of the Star above-mentioned, he commanded two Dragons to be made of Gold, in Likeness of the Dragon which he had seen at the Ray of the Star. As soon as they were finished, which was done with wonderful Nicety of Workmanship, he made a Present of one to the Cathedral Church of Winchester, but reserved the other for himself, to be carried along with him to his Wars. From this Time therefore he was called Uther Pendragon, which in the British Tongue signifies The Dragons Head; the Occasion of this Appellation being Merlin predicting, from the Appearance of a Dragon, that he should be King.
C H A P. XVIII.

Octa and Eosa are taken in Battle.

In the mean Time Octa the Son of Hengist, and his Kinsman Eosa, seeing they were no longer bound by the Treaty they had made with Aurelius Ambrosius, began to raise Disturbances against the King, and infest his Countries. For they were now joining with the Saxons whom Puscentius had brought over, and sending away Messengers into Germany for the rest. Being therefore attended with a vast Army, he invaded the Northern Provinces, and in an outrageous Manner destroyed all the Cities and fortified Places, from Albania to York. At last as he was beginning the Siege of that City, Uther Pendragon came upon him with the whole Power of the Kingdom, and gave him Battle. The Saxons behaved themselves with great Gallantry, and after having sustained themselves against the Assaults of the Britains, forced them to fly; and upon this Advantage pursu’d them with Slaughter to the Mountain Damia, which was as long as they could do it with Day-Light. The Mountain was high, and had a Hazel-Wood upon the Top of it, and about the Middle broken and cavernous Rocks, which were a Harbour to wild Beasts.
Beasts. The Britains made up to it, and stay'd there all Night among the Rocks and Hazel-Bushes. But as it began to draw towards Day, Other commanded the Consuls and Princes to be called together, that he might consult with them in what Manner to assault the Enemy. Whereupon they forthwith appeared before the King, who commanded them to give their Advice; and Gorlois, Duke of Cornwall, had Orders to deliver his Opinion first, out of Regard to his Years and great Experience. "There is no Occasion, says he, for Ceremonies or Speeches, while we see the Night yet continues: But there is for Boldness and Courage, if you desire any longer Enjoyment of your Life and Liberty. The Pagans are very numerous, and eager to fight, and we much inferior to them in Number; so that if we stay till Daybreak, we cannot in my Opinion attack them to Advantage. Come on therefore, while we have the Favour of the Night, let us go down in a close Body, and surprise them in their Camp with a sudden Assault. There can be no Doubt of Success, if with one Consent we fall upon them boldly, while they think themselves secure, and have no Expectation of our coming in such a Manner." The King and all that were present, were pleased with his Advice, and pursued it. For as soon as

R they
they were armed and placed in their Ranks, they make towards the Enemies Camp, designing a general Assault. But upon their Approach to it, they were discovered by the Watch, who with Sound of Trumpet awaked their Companions. The Enemies being hereupon put into Confusion and Aflationment, part of them hasten towards the Sea, and part ran up and down, whithersoever their Fear or Precipitation drove them. The Britains finding their coming discovered, hasten their March, and keeping still close together in their Ranks, invade the Camp; into which when they had found an Entrance, they ran with their drawn Swords upon the Enemy; who in this sudden Surprize, made but a faint Defence against the others vigorous and regular Attack. So the Britains pursue this Blow with great Eagernefs, destroy some thousands of the Pagans, take Òita and Òoja Prisoners, and entirely disperse the Saxons.
CHAP. XIX.

Uther falling in Love with Igerna, enjoys her by the Assistance of Merlin's Magical Operations.

After this Victory Uther repaired to the City of Alclud, where he settled the Affairs of that Province, and restored Peace everywhere. He also made a Progress round all the Countries of the Scots, and tamed the Fierceness of that rebellious People, by such a strict Administration of Justice, as none of his Predecessors had exercised before: So that in his Time Offenders were every where under great Terror, since they were sure of being punished without Mercy. At last when he had established Peace in the Northern Provinces, he went to London, and commanded Oleta and Esfa to be kept in Prison there. The Easter following he ordered all the Nobility of the Kingdom to meet him at that City, in order to celebrate that great Festival; in Honour of which he designed to wear his Crown. The Summons was every where obeyed, and there appeared a great Concourfe from all Cities against the Day. So the King observed the Festival with great Solemnity, as he had designed,
and very joyfully entertained his Nobility, of whom there was a very great Appearance with their Wives and Daughters, suitable to the Magnificence of the Banquet prepared for them. And having been received with Joy by the King, they also expressed the same in their Deportment before him. Among the rest was present Gorlois Duke of Cornwall, with his Wife Igerne, the greatest Beauty in all Britain. No sooner had the King cast his Eyes upon her among the rest of the Ladies, than he fell passionately in Love with her, and little regarding the rest, made her the Subject of all his Thoughts. She was the only Lady that he continually served with fresh Dishes, and to whom he sent Golden Cups by his Confidential on her he bestowed all his Smiles, and to her addressed all his merry Discourse. The Husband discovering this, fell into a great Rage, and retired from the Court without taking Leave: Nor was there any Body that could stop him, while he was under Fear of losing the chief Object of his Delight. Other therefore in great Wrath commanded him to return back to Court, to make him Satisfaction for this Affront. But Gorlois refused to obey; upon which the King was highly incensed, and swore he would destroy his Country, if he did not speedily compound for his Offence. And accordingly without Delay, while their Anger
Anger was lost against each other, the King got together a great Army, and marched into the Provinces of Cornwall, the Cities and Towns whereof he set on Fire. But Gorlos durst not engage with him, on Account of the Inferiority of his Numbers; and thought it a wiser Course to fortify his Towns, till he could get his Succours from Ireland. And as he was under more Concern for his Wife than himself, he put her into the Town of Tintagol upon the Sea- Shore, where he looked upon as a Place of great Safety. But he himself enter'd the Castle of Dimalic, to prevent their being both at once involved in the same Danger, if any should happen. The King being informed of this, went to the Town where Gorlos was, which he besieged, and shut up all the Avenues to it. A whole Week was now past, when he retaining in mind his Love to Igerna, said to one of his Confidants, named Ulfin de Ricaracho: "My Passion for Igerna is such, that I can neither have Ease of Mind, nor Health of Body, till I obtain her. And if you cannot assist me with your Advice how to accomplish my Desire, the inward Torments I endure will kill me." "Who can advise you in this Matter," said Ulfin, "when by no Force we can have Access to her in the Town of Tintagol. For it is situated upon the Sea, and on every Side..."
surrounded by it; and there is but one
Entrance into it, and that through a
strait Rock, which three Men shall be
able to defend against the whole Power
of the Kingdom. Notwithstanding if
the Prophet Merlin would in Earnest let
upon this Attempt, I am of Opinion, you
may with his Advice obtain your Wishes?
The King readily believed what he was so
well inclined to, and ordered Merlin, who
was also come to the Siege, to be called.
Merlin therefore, being forthwith introduced
into the King's Presence, was commanded
to give his Advice, how the King might
accomplish his Desire with Respect to Igerna.
And he finding how great Anguish the King
suffered, was moved to see such Effects of
his excessive Love, and said, "To accom-
plish your Desire, you must make use of
such Arts as have not been heard of in
your Time. I know how by the Force
of my Medicines, to give you the exact
Likeness of Gorlois, so that in all Respects
you shall seem to be no other than him-
self. If you will therefore obey my Pre-
scriptions, I will metamorphize you into
the true Semblance of Gorlois, and thus
into Jordan of Tintagel, his familiar Friend;
and I myself being transformed into ano-
other Shape, will make the Adventure; and in this Disguise you may
go safely to the Town where Igerna is,
“...and have Admittance to her.” The King comply'd with the Proposal, and acted with great Caution in this Affair; and when he had committed the Care of the Siege to his intimate Friends, underwent the Medical Applications of Merlin, by whom he was transformed into the Likeness of Gorlois; as was Ulfin also into Jordan, and Merlin himself into Bricel; so that no Body could see any Remains now of their former Likeness. Then they set forward on their Way to Tintagol, at which they arrived in the Evening Twilight, and forthwith signified to the Porter, that the Consul was come; upon which the Gates were opened, and the Men let in. For what Room could there be for Suspicion, when Gorlos himself seemed to be there present? The King therefore stay'd that Night with Igerne, and had the full Enjoyment of her; for she was deceived with the false Disguise he had put on, and the artful and amorous Discourses wherewith he entertained her. He told her he had left his own Place besieged, purely to provide for the Safety of her dear self, and the Town she was in; so that she believing all that he said, refused him nothing he desired. The same Night therefore she conceived of the most renowned Arthur, whose Heroick and wonderful Actions have justly rendered his Name famous to Posterity.

C H A P.
CHAP. XX.

Gorlois being killed, Uther marries Igerna.

In the mean Time as soon as the King's Absence was discovered at the Siege, his Army unadvisedly make an Assault upon the Walls, and provoke the besieged Count to a Battle; who himself also acting as inconsiderately as they, sally'd forth with his Men, thinking with such a small Handful to oppose a Powerful Army; but happen'd to be killed in the very first Brunt of the Fight, and had all his Men routed. The Town also was taken; but all the Riches of it were not shared equally among the Besiegers, but every one greedily took what he could get, according as Fortune or his own Strength favoured him. After this bold Attempt, came Messengers to Igerna, with the News both of the Dukes Death, and of the Event of the Siege. But when they saw the King in the Likeness of the Conful, sitting close by her, they were struck with Shame and Astonishment at his safe Arrival there, whom they had left Dead at the Siege; for they were wholly ignorant of the Miracles Merlin had wrought with his Medicines. The King therefore smiled
smiled at the News, and embracing the Countess, said to her; "Your own Eyes may convince you that I am not dead, but alive. But notwithstanding, the Destruction of the Town, and the Slaughter of my Men, is what very much grieves me; so that there is Reason to fear the Kings coming upon us, and taking us in this Place. To prevent which, I will go out to meet him, and make my Peace with him, for fear of a worse Disaster." Accordingly as soon as he was out of the Town, he went to his Army, and having put off the Disguise of Gorlois, was now Uther Pendragon again. When he had a full Relation made to him how Matters had succeeded, he was sorry for the Death of Gorlois, but rejoiced that Igerna was now at Liberty to marry again. Then he returned to the Town of Tintagol, which he took, and in it, what he impatiently wished for, Igerna herself. After this they continued to live together in a passionate Affection for each other, and got a Son and Daughter, whose Names were Arthur and Anne.


**CHAP. XII.**

Octa and Eofa renew the War.

Lot, a Consul, marries the King's Daughter.

In Process of Time the King was taken ill of a lingering Distemper; and the mean Time the Keepers of the Prison, where-in Octa and Eofa, (as we related before,) led a weary Life, had fled over with them into Germany, and occasioned great Fear over the Kingdom. For there was a current Report, of their great Levies in Germany, and the vast Fleet they had prepared for their Return to destroy the Island: Which the Event verified. For they did return in a very great Fleet, and with a prodigious Number of Men, and invaded the Parts of Albania, where they destroyed both Cities and Inhabitants with Fire and Sword. Whereupon in Order to repulse the Enemies, the Command of the British Army is committed to Lot of Londonesia, who was a Consul, and a most valiant Knight, and grown up to Maturity both of Years and Wisdom. Out of Respect therefore to his eminent Merits, the King had given him his Daughter Anne, and entrusted him with the Care of the Kingdom, during his Habs. In
In his Expedition against the Enemies he had various Success; being often repulsed by them, and forced to retreat to the Cities; but he oftner routed and dispersed them, and compelled them to fly sometimes into the Woods, sometimes to their Ships. So that in a War that was attended with so many Turns of Fortune, it was hard to know which Side had the better. The greatest Injury to the Britains was their own Pride, in disdaining to obey the Consuls Commands; for which Reason all their Efforts against the Enemy were less Vigorous and Successful.

CHAP. XXII.

Uther being ill, is carried in a Horse-Litter against the Enemy.

The Island being by this Conduct now almost laid waste, and the King having Information of the Matter, he fell into a greater Rage then his Weakness could bear, and commanded all his Nobility to come before him, that he might reprove them severely for their Pride and Cowardice. And as soon as they were all entred into his Presence, he sharply rebuked them in menacing Language, and swore he himself would lead them against the Enemy.
For this Purpose he ordered a Horse-Litter to be made, in which he designed to be carried, since his Infirmitie would not suffer him to use any other sort of Vehicle; and charged them to be all ready, to march against the Enemy the very first Opportunity. So without Delay, both the Horse-Litter and all his Attendants were got ready, and the Day appointed for their March now come.

C H A P. XXIII.

Octa and Eola with a great Number of their Men are killed.

The King therefore being put into his Vehicle, they marched directly to Verolam, where the Saxons were grievously oppressing the People. When Octa and Eola had Intelligence that the Britains were come, and how the King was brought in a Horse-Litter, they disdain'd to fight with him; saying, it would be a Shame for such brave Men to fight with one that was half dead. For which Reason they retired into the City; and as it were in Contempt of any Danger from the Enemy, left their Gates wide open. But other upon Information hereof, instantly commanded his Men to lay Siege to the City,
City, and assaut the Walls on all Sides; which Orders they strictly executed, and were just upon entering the Breaches they had made in the Walls, and ready to begin a general Assault; when the Saxons, seeing the Advantages the Britains had gained, and now being forced to abate somewhat of their haughty Pride, condescended so far as to put themselves into a Posture of Defense. They therefore mounted the Walls, from whence they poured down Showers of Arrows, and repulsed the Britains. On both Sides this warm Dispute continued till Night came on, to release them from the Fatigue of their Arms, which was what many of the Britains desired, though the greater Part of them were for having the Matter quickly decided with the Enemy. The Saxons on the other Hand finding how prejudicial their own Pride had been to them, and that the Advantage was on the Britains Side, resolved to make a Sally out at Break of Day, and try their Fortune with the Enemy in the open Field; which accordingly was done. For no sooner was it Day-Light, than they marched out with this Design, being all placed in their Ranks. The Britains seeing them, divided their Men into several Bodies, and then advanced towards them, and began the Attack first, their Part being to assault, while the others were only upon the Defensive. However much Blood was
was shed on both Sides, and the greatest Part of the Day spent in the Fight, when at last Octa and Eofa being killed, the Saxons turned their Backs, and left the King of the Britains a compleat Victory. The King at this was in such an Extasy of Joy, that whereas before he could hardly raise up himself with the Help of others, he now without any Difficulty sat upright in his Horse-Litter of himself, as if he was on a sudden restored to Health; and said with a laughing and merry Countenance, "These Am-bons called me the half dead King, because my Sickness obliged me to lye on a Horse-Litter; and indeed so I was. Yet Victory to me half dead, is better than to be vanquished safe and sound. For to die with Honour, is preferable to living with Disgrace."

C H A P. XXIV.

Uther, upon drinking Spring-Water that was treacherously poisoned by the Saxons, dies.

The Saxons notwithstanding this Defeat, persisted still in their Malice, and entering the Northern Provinces, without Respite infested the People there. Others full
full Purpose was to have pursued them; but his Princes dissuaded him from it, because his illness was increased since the Victory. This gave new Courage to the Enemy, who left nothing unattempted to make Conquest of the Kingdom. And now they have Recourse to their former treacherous Præstîces, and contrive how to compass the King's Death by secret Villany. And because they could have no Access to him otherwise, they resolved to take him off by Poison; in which they succeeded. For while he was lying ill at Ve-rolam, they sent away some Spies in a poor Habit, to learn the State of the Court: And when they had thoroughly informed themselves of the Posture of Affairs, they found out an Expedient by which they might best accomplish their Villany. For there was near the Court a Spring of very clear Water, which the King used to drink of, when his Distemper had made all other Liquors nauseous to him. This the detestable Conspirators made use of to destroy him, by so poisoning the whole Mass of Water which sprung up, that the next Time the King drunk of it, he was seized with sudden Death; as were also a hundred other Persons after him, till the Villany was discovered, and a Heap of Earth thrown over the Well. As soon as the King's Death was divulged, the Bishops...
and Clergy of the Kingdom assembled, and carried his Body to the Convent of Ambrius, where they buried it with Regal Solemnity, close by Aurelius Ambrosius, within the Giants Dance.
THE

British History.

The Ninth Book.

CHAP. I.

Arthur succeeds Uther his Father in the Kingdom of Britain, and besieges Colgrin.

THE R Pendragon being dead, the Nobility from several Provinces assembled together at Cilcestre, and proposed to Dubricius Archbishop of Legions, that he should consecrate Arthur, Uthers Son, for their King. For they were now under great Straits, because upon hearing of the Kings Death, the Saxons
Saxons had invited, over their Countrymen from Germany, and under the Command of Colgrin, were attempting to rout out the whole British Race. They had also entirely subdued all that Part of the Island which extends from the Humber to the Sea of Caithness. Dubricius therefore grieving for the Calamities of his Country, did in Conjunction with the other Bishops set the Crown upon Arthur's Head. Arthur was then fifteen Years old, but a Youth of such unparalleled Courage and Generosity, joined with that Sweetness of Temper and innate Goodness, as gained him an universal Love. When his Coronation was over, he according to usual Custom shewed his Bounty and Munificence to the People. And such a Number of Soldiers flocked to him upon it, that his Treasury was not able to answer that vast Expence. But such a Spirit of Generosity, joined with Valour, can never long want Means to support itself. Arthur therefore the better to keep up his Munificence, resolved to make use of his Courage, and to fall upon the Saxons, that he might enrich his Followers with their Wealth. To this he was also moved by the Justice of the Cause, since the entire Monarchy of Britain belonged to him by Hereditary Right. Hereupon assembling the Youth under his Command, he marched to York; of which when Colgrin had Intelligence, he met him with a very
A very great Army, composed of Saxons, Scots, and Picts, by the River Ugetas; where a Battle happened, with the Loss of the greater Part of both Armies. Notwithstanding the Victory fell to Arthur, who pursued Colorin to York, and there besieged him. Baldulph, upon the News of his Brothers Flight, went towards the Siege with a Body of six thousand Men, to his Relief. For at the Time of the Battle he was upon the Sea-Coast, waiting the Arrival of Duke Cheldric with Succours from Germany. And being now no more than ten Miles distant from the City, his Purpose was to make a speedy March in the Night-Time, and fall upon the Enemy by Way of Surprize. But Arthur having Intelligence of his Design, sent out a Detachment of six hundred Horse, and three thousand Foot, under the Command of Cador, Duke of Cornwall, to meet him the same Night. Cador therefore falling into the same Road along which the Enemy was passing, made a sudden Assault upon them, and entirely defeated the Saxons, and put them to Flight. Baldulph was excessively grieved at this Disappointment in the Relief he intended his Brother, and began to think of some other Stratagem to gain Access to him; in which if he could but succeed, he thought they might concert Measures together for their Safety. And since he had no other Way for it, he shaved
his Head and Beard, and put on the Habit of a Jester with a Harp, and in this Disguise walked up and down in the Camp, playing upon his Instrument as if he had been a Harper. In this Disguise he passed unsuspected, and by little and little went up to the Walls of the City; where he was at last discovered by the Besieged, who thereupon drew him up with Cords, and conducted him to his Brother. At this unexpected, though much defir'd Meeting, they spent some Time in joyfully embracing each other; and then began to consider various Stratagems for their Delivery. At last, just as they were concluding their Case desperate, the Ambassadors returned from Germany, and had brought along with them to Albania a Fleet of six hundred Sail, laden with brave Soldiers, under the Command of Cheldric. Upon this News, Arthur was dissuaded by his Council from continuing the Siege any longer, for fear of hazarding a Battle with so potent and numerous an Army.
CHAP. II.

Hoel ends fifteen thousand Men to Arthurs Assistance.

ARTHUR comply'd with their Advice, and then made his Retreat to London, where he called together an Assembly of all the Clergy and Nobility of the Kingdom, to ask their Advice, what Course to take against such a formidable Power of the Pagans. After some Deliberation, it was agreed, that Ambassadors should be dispatched away into Armorica, to King Hoel, to represent to him the Calamitous State of Britain. Hoel was the Son of Arthurs Sifter by Dubricius King of the Armorican Britains; so that upon Advice of the Disturbances his Uncle was threatened with, he ordered his Fleet to be got ready, and having assembled together fifteen thousand Men, he arrived with the first fair Wind at Hamo's Port; and was received with all suitable Honour by Arthur, and most affectionately embraced by him.

S 4 CHAP.
CHAP. III.

Arthur makes the Saxons his Tributaries.

After a few Days they go to the City Kærluadoit, that was besieged by the Pagans; which being situated upon a Mountain, between two Rivers in the Province of Lindisfa, is called by another Name Lindocolinum. As soon as they arrived there with all their Forces, they fought with the Saxons, and made a grievous Slaughter of them, to the Number of six thousand; Part of whom were drowned in the Rivers, Part fell by the Hands of the Britains. The rest in a great Consternation quitted the Siege and fled, but were closely pursu'd by Arthur, till they came to the Wood of Caledon, where they endeavoured to form themselves into a Body again, and make a Stand. And here they again join Battle with the Britains, and make a brave Defence, the Trees that were in the Place securing them against the Enemies Arrows. Arthur seeing this, commanded the Trees that were in that Part of the Wood to be cut down, and the Trunks to be placed quite round them, so as to hinder their getting out; as resolv'd to keep them pent up here
here till he could reduce them by Famine. Which done, he commanded his troops to besiege the wood, and continued three days in that place. The Saxons, having now no provisions to sustain them, and being just ready to starve with hunger, begged for leave to go out; in consideration whereof they offered to leave all their gold and silver behind them, and return back to Germany with nothing but their empty ships. They promised also that they would pay him tribute from Germany, and leave hostages with him. Arthur, after consultation about it, granted their petition; allowing them only leave to depart, and retaining all their treasures, as also hostages for payment of the tribute. But as they were under sail in their return home, they repented of their bargain, and tacked about to make again towards Britain, and went on shore at Totnes. And no sooner were they landed, than they made an utter devastation of the country as far as the Severn Sea, and put all the peasants to the sword. From thence they pursued their furious march to the town of Badon, and laid siege to it. When the King had intelligence of it, he was beyond measure surprized at their heinous proceedings, and immediately gave orders for the execution of the hostages. And desisting from an attempt he had entered upon to reduce the Scots.
Scots and Picts, he marched with the utmost Expedition to raise the Siege; but laboured under very great Difficulties, because he had left his Nephew Hoel sick at Alclud. At length having entered the Province of Somerset, and beheld how the Siege was carried on, he addressed himself to his Followers in these Words: “Since these most impious and detestable Saxons, have disdain ed to keep Faith with me, I, to keep Faith with God, will endeavour to revenge the Blood of my Countrymen this Day upon them. To Arms, Soldiers, to Arms, and courageously fall upon these perfidious Wretches; over whom we shall, with Christ assisting us, undoubtedly obtain the Victory.

C H A P. IV.

Dubricius’s Speech against the treacherous Saxons. Arthur with his own Hand kills four hundred and seventy Saxons in one Battle. Colgrin and Baldulph are killed in the same.

WHEN he had done speaking, St. Dubricius Archbishop of Legions, getting upon the Top of a Hill, cry’d out with a loud
lou’d Voice; “You that have the Honour to profess the Christian Faith, keep fixed in your Minds the Piety you owe your Country and Fellow Subjects, whose Sufferings by the Treachery of the Pagans, will be an everlasting Reproach to you, if you do not courageously defend them. ’Tis your Country you fight for, and for which you should when required voluntarily suffer Death: For that itself is Victory, and the Cure of the Soul. For he that shall die for his Brethren, offers himself a living Sacrifice to God, and has Christ for his Example, who condescends to lay down his Life for his Brethren. If therefore any of you shall be killed in this War, that Death itself which is suffered in so glorious a Cause, shall be to him for Penance and Absolution of all his Sins.” At these Words, all of them, encouraged with the Benediction of the holy Prelate, instantly armed themselves, and prepared to obey his Orders. Also Arthur himself having put on a Coat of Mail suitable to the Grandeur of so potent a King, fits his golden Helmet upon his Head, on which was engraven the Figure of a Dragon; and on his Shoulders his Shield called Priwen; upon which the Picture of the blessed Mary Mother of God being drawn, put him frequently in Mind of her. Then girding on his Caliburn, which was an excellent Sword made
made in the Isle of Avalon, he graced his right Hand with his Lance, named Ron, which was hard, broad, and fit for Slaughter. After this having placed his Men in Order, he boldly attacked the Saxons, who were drawn out Wedge-wise, as their Manner was. And they, notwithstanding that the Britains fought with great Eagernefs, made a noble Defence all that Day; but at length towards Sun-setting, climb'd up to the next Mountain, which served them for a Camp: 'For they desired no larger Extent of Ground, since they confided very much in their Numbers. The next Morning Arthur with his Army goes up the Mountain, but loft many of his Men in the Ascent; by the Advantage the Saxons had in their Station on the Top, from whence they could pour down upon him with much greater Speed, than he was able to advance against them. Notwithstanding after a very hard Struggle the Britains gain the Summit of the Hill, and quickly come to a close Engagement with the Enemy, who again gave them a warm Reception, and made a very vigorous Defence. In this Manner was a great Part of that Day also spent, at which Arthur, provoked to see the little Advantage he had yet gained, and the Victory still continued in Suspence, drew out his Caliburn, and calling upon the Name of the bleffed Virgin, rushed forward with
great Violence into the thickest of the Enemies Ranks; of whom (such was the Merit of his Prayers,) not one escaped alive that felt the Fury of his Sword; neither did he give over the Fury of the Assault, before he had with his Caliburn alone killed four hundred and seventy Men. The Britains seeing this, follow their Leader in great Crowds, and make Slaughter on all Sides; so that Colgrim and Baldulph his Brother, and many thousands more fell before them. But Cheldric, upon this imminent Danger of his Men, betook himself to Flight.

C H A P. V.

The Saxons, after their Leader Cheldric was killed, are all compelled by Cador to surrender.

The Victory being thus gained, the King commanded Cador Duke of Cornwall to pursue them, while he himself would hasten his March into Albania; from whence he had Advice, that the Scots and Picts were besieging Alclud, in which, as we said before, Hoel lay sick. Therefore he hastened to his Assistance, for Fear he might fall into the Hands of the Barbarians. In the mean Time the Duke of Cornwall, who
who had the Command of ten thousand Men, would not as yet pursue the Saxons in their Flight, but speedily made himself Master of their Ships, to hinder their getting on board them, and manned them with his best Soldiers, who were to beat back the Pagans in Case they should fly to them: This done, he according to Arthur's Command, hastily pursued the Enemy, and allowed no Quarter to those he could overtake. So that they whose Behaviour before was so cruel and insolent, do now with timorous Hearts fly for Shelter, sometimes to the Coverts of the Woods, sometimes to Mountains and Caves, to prolong a wretched Life. At last when none of these Places could afford them a safe Retreat, they enter the Isle of Thanet with their broken Forces; but neither do they there get free from the Duke of Cornwall's Pursuit; who still continued the Slaughter of them, and gave them no Respite till he had killed Chelaric, and taken Hostages for the Surrender of the rest.
HAVING therefore settled Peace here, he directed his March to Alcluad, which Arthur had relieved from the Oppression of Barbarians, and from thence conducted his Army to Mureif, where the Scots and Picts were besieged; who after three several Battles with the King and his Nephew, had fled as far as this Province, and entering upon the Lake Lumond, fought for Refuge in the Islands that are upon it. This Lake contains sixty Islands, and receives sixty Rivers into it, which empty themselves into the Sea by no more than one Mouth. Equal to the Number of the Islands, is that of the Rocks in them, as also of the Eagles Nefts in those Rocks, who flocked together there every Year, and by the loud and general Noise they made, foreboded some remarkable Event that should happen in the Kingdom. To these Islands therefore had the Enemy fled, thinking the Lake would serve them instead of a Fortification, but it proved of little Advantage to them. For Arthur having got together
together a Fleet, failed round the Rivers, and besieged the Enemy fifteen Days together, by which they were so straitned with Hunger, that they died by thousands. While he was infesting them in this Manner, Guilla
murius King of Ireland, came up in a Fleet with a very great Army of Barbarians, in order to relieve the Besieged. This obliged Arthur to raise the Siege, and turn his Arms against the Irish, whom he flew without Mercy, and compelled the rest to return back to their Country. After this Victory, he proceeded in his first Attempt, which was to extirpate the whole Race of the Scots and Picts, and treated them with an unparalleled Severity. And as he allow'd Quarter to none he found, therefore the Bishops of that miserable Country, with all the inferior Clergy, met together, and bearing the Reliques of the Saints, and other Consecrated Things of the Church before them, bare-footed, they went to implore the Kings Mercy for their People. As soon as they were admitted into his Presence, they fell down upon their Knees, and humbly besought him to have Pity on their distrested Country, since the Sufferings he had already made it undergo, were sufficient; nor was there any Necessity to cut off the small Remainder to a Man; and that he would allow them the Enjoyment of a small Part of the Country, since they were wil ling
ling to bear the Yoke he should impose upon them. The King was moved at the Manner of their delivering this Petition, and could not forbear expressing his Clemency to them with Tears; and at the Request of those Holy Men, granted them Pardon.

**CHAP. VII.**

Arthur relates the wonderful Nature of some Ponds.

This Affair being concluded, Hoel had the Curiosity to view the Situation of the Lake, and wondred to find the Number of the Rivers, Islands, Rocks, and Eagles Nefts, so exactly correspond: And while he was reflecting upon it as something that appeared miraculous, Arthur came to him, and told him of another Pond in the same Province, which was yet more wonderful. For not far from thence was one whole Length and Breadth were each twenty Foot, and Depth five Foot. But whether its fquare Figure was Natural or Artificial, the Thing that was admirable in it, was the four different Sorts of Fishes in the four several Corners of it, none of which were ever found in any other Part of the Pond but their own. He told him like-
wife of another Pond in Wales, near the Severn, called by the Country People Linligwan, into which when the Sea flows, it receives it in manner of a Gulph, but so as to swallow up the Tide, and never be filled, or have its Banks covered by it. But at the Ebbing of the Sea, it belches out the Waters it had swallowed up, as high as a Mountain, and at last dashes and covers the Banks with them. In the mean Time, if all the People of that Country should stand near with their Faces towards it, and happen to have their Clothes sprinkled with the dashing of the Waves, they would hardly, if at all, escape being swallowed up of the Pond. But with their Backs towards it, they need not fear being dashed, though they stood upon the very Banks.

C H A P. VIII.

Arthur restores York to its ancient Beauty, especially as to its Churches.

The King after his general Pardon granted to the Scots, went to York to celebrate the Feast of Christ's Nativity, which was now at Hand. At his entering the City, he beheld with Grief the Desolation of the Churches;
Churches; for upon the Expulsion of the Holy Archbishop Sanxo, and of all the Clergy there, the Temples which were half burnt down, had no longer Divine Service performed in them: So much had the impious Rage of the Pagans prevailed. After this, in an Assembly which he called of the Clergy and People, he appointed Pyramus his Chaplain Metropolitan of that See. The Churches that lay level with the Ground, he rebuilt, and which was their chief Ornament, saw them filled with Assemblies of devout Persons of both Sexes. Also the Nobility that were driven out by the Disturbances of the Saxons, he restored to the Honours of their Country.

CHAP. IX.

Arthur honours Augufel with the Sceptre of the Scots; Urian with that of Mureif; and Lot with the Consulship of Londonesia.

There were there three Brothers of Royal Blood, viz. Lot, Urian, and Augufel, who before the Saxons had prevailed, held the Government of those Parts. Bern willing therefore to bestow on these, as he di—
on others, the Rights of their Ancestors, he restored to Augustel the Sovereignty over the Scots; his Brother Urian he honoured with the Sceptre of Mureif; and Lot, who in the Time of Aurelius Ambrosius had married his Sister, by whom he had two Sons, Walgan and Modred, he re-established in the Consulship of Londenisia, and the other Provinces belonging to him. At length when the whole Country was reduced by him to its ancient State, he took to Wife Guanhumara, descended from a Noble Family of Romans, who was educated under Duke Cador, and in Beauty surpassed all the Women of the Island.

CHAP. X.

Arthur adds to his Government Ireland, Iceland, Godland, and the Orkneys.

The next Summer he fitted out a Fleet, and made an Expedition into Ireland, which he was desirous to reduce. Upon his landing there, he was met by King Guillamurius before mentioned, with a vast Number of Men, who came with a Design to fight him; but at the very Beginning of the Battle, those naked and unarmed People being
being miserably dispersed and routed, quickly fled to such Places as lay open to them for shelter. Guiliamurius, also in a short Time was taken Prisoner, and forced to submit; as were also all the other Princes of the Country after the Kings Example, being under great Consternation for what had happened. After an entire Conquest of all the Parts of Ireland, he made a Voyage with his Fleet to Iceland, which he also subdued. And now a Rumour spreading over the rest of the Islands, that no Country was able to withstand him, Daldavius King of Godland, and Gunfatusus King of the Orkneys, came voluntarily, and made their Submission, with a Promise of paying Tribute. Then as soon as Winter was over, he returned back to Britain, where establishing the Kingdom in a firm State of Peace, he resided in it for twelve Years together.

C H A P. XI.

Arthur subdues Norway, Dacia, Aquitain, and Gaul.

AFTER this, having invited over to him all Persons whatsoever that were Famous for Valour in Foreign Nations, he began to augment the Number of his Domefticks,
Domefticks, and introduced fuch Politenefs into his Court, as People of the remotest Countries thought worthy their Imitation. So that there was not a Nobleman who thought himself of any Consideration, unless his Clothes and Arms were made in the fame Fashion as those of Arthur's Knights. At length the Fame of his Munificence and Valour spreading over the whole World, he became a Terror to the Kings of other Countries, who grievously feared the Loss of their Dominions, if he should make any Attempt upon them. Being much perplexed with these anxious Cares, they repaired their Cities and Towers, and built Towns in convenient Places, the better to fortify themselves against any Enterprize of Arthur, when Occasion should require. Arthur upon Information of the Dispositions they were making, was delighted to find how much they stood in Awe of him, and formed a Design for the Conquest of all Europe. Then having prepared his Fleet, the first Place he attempted was Norway, that he might procure the Crown of it for Lot his Sisters Husband. This Lot was the Nephew of Sichelin, King of the Norwegians, who being then dead, had appointed him his Successor in the Kingdom. But the Norwegians disdaining to receive him, had advanced one Riculf to the Sovereignty, and having fortified their Cities, thought they were able to oppose
oppose Arthur. Walgan the Son of Lot, was then a Youth twelve Years old, and was recommended by his Unkle to the Service of Pope Sulpicius, from whom he received Arms. But to return to the Story; as soon as Arthur arrived at the Coast of Norway, King Riculf attended with the whole Power of that Kingdom met him, and gave him Battle, in which after a great Loss of Blood on both Sides, the Britains at length had the Advantage, who making a vigorous Pufh, killed Riculf and many others with him. Having thus defeated them, they set the Cities on Fire, dispersed the Country People, and pursued the Victory till they had reduced all Norway, as also Dacia, under the Dominion of Arthur. After the Conquest of these Countries, and Establishment of Lot upon the Throne of Norway, Arthur made a Voyage to Gaul, and dividing his Army into several Bodies, began to lay waste that Country on all Sides. The Province of Gaul was then committed to Flolo, a Roman Tribune, who held the Government of it under the Emperor Leo. Upon Intelligence of Arthurs coming, he raised all the Forces that were under his Command, and made War against him, but without Success. For Arthur was attended with the Youth of all the Islands he had subdued; for which Reason he was reported to have such an Army as was thought invincible.
invincible. And even the greater Part of the Gallican Army, being encouraged by his Bounty, came over to his Service. Therefore Flollo seeing the Disadvantages he lay under, left his Camp, and fled with a small Number to Paris. There having recruited his Army, he fortified the City, and resolved to stand another Engagement with Arthur. But while he was thinking of strengthening himself with Auxiliary Forces in the neighbouring Countries, Arthur came upon him unawares, and besieged him in the City. A Month was now past, when Flollo with Grief observing his People perish with Hunger, sent a Message to Arthur, that they two alone should decide the Contest for the Kingdom in a Duel: For being a Person of great Stature, Boldness and Courage, he gave this Challenge in great Confidence of Success. Arthur was extreamly pleased at Flollo's Proposal, and sent him Word back again, that he would give him the Meeting he desired. A Treaty therefore being on both Sides agreed to, they met together in the Island without the City, where the People waited to see the Event. They were both gracefully Armed, and mounted on admirable swift Horses; and it was hard to tell which gave greater Hopes of Victory. When they had presented themselves against each other with their Lances bore aloft, they forthwith put Spurs to their Horses, and
and began a fierce Encounter. But Arthur who handled his Lance more warily, struck it into the upper Part of Flolio's Breast, and avoiding his Weapon, with all his Might laid him prostrate upon the Ground, and was just going to dispatch him with his drawn Sword. But Flollo starting up on a sudden, met him with his Lance couched, therewith he mortally stabbed the Breast of Arthurs Horse, and caused both him and his Rider to fall. The Britains when they saw their King lying prostrate on the Ground, fearing he was killed, could hardly be restrained from Breach of Covenant, and falling with one Consent upon the Gauls. But just as they were upon rushing into the Lifts, Arthur hastily got up, and guarding himself with his Shield, advanced with Speed against Flollo. And now they renew the Assault with great Rage, being eagerly bent upon one another's Destruction. At length Flollo watching his Advantage, gave Arthur a Blow upon the Forehead, which might have proved mortal, had he not blunted the Edge of his Weapon, by striking it against the Helmet. When Arthur saw his Coat of Mail and Shield all red with the Blood gushing out, he was inflamed with still greater Rage, and lifting up his Caliburn with his utmost Strength, struck it quite through the Helmet into Flollo's Head, in which he made a terrible Gash. With this
this Wound *Frollo* fell down, beat the Ground with his Spurs, and expired. As soon as this was noised through the Army, the Citizens ran together, and opening the Gates, surrendered the City to *Arthur*. After the Victory, he divided his Army into two Parts, one of which he committed to the Conduct of *Hoel*, whom he ordered to march against *Guitard*, Commander of the *Pictavians*; while he with the other Part should endeavour to reduce the other Provinces. *Hoel* upon this entered *Aquitain*, possessed himself of the Cities of that Country, and after distressing *Guitard* in several Battles, forced him to surrender. He also destroy'd *Gascony* with Fire and Sword, and subdued the Princes of it. At the End of nine Years, in which Time all the Parts of *Gaul* were entirely reduced, *Arthur* returned back to *Paris*, where he kept his Court, and calling an Assembly of the Clergy and People, settled Peace and Administration of the Laws in that Kingdom. Then he bestowed *Neustria*, now called *Normandy*, upon *Bedver* his Butler; the Province of *Andegavia* upon *Caius* his Sewer, and several other Provinces upon his great Men that attended him. Thus having settled the Peace of the Cities and Countries there, he returned back in the Beginning of the Spring to *Britain*.
CHAP. XII.

Arthur summons a great many Kings, Princes, Archbishops, &c. to a Solemn Assembly at the City of Legions.

UPON the Approach of the Feast of Pentecost, Arthur, the better to demonstrate his Joy after such triumphant Success, and for the more solemn Observation of that Festival, and reconciling the Minds of the Princes that were now subject to him, resolved during that Season, to hold a magnificent Court, to place the Crown upon his Head, and to invite all the Kings and Dukes under his Subjection, to the Solemnity. And when he had communicated his Design to his familiar Friends, he pitched upon the City of Legions as a proper Place for his Purpose. For besides the great Wealth of it above the other Cities, its Situation, which was in Glamorganshite upon the River Uske near the Severn Sea, was most pleasant, and fit for so great a Solemnity. For on one Side it was washed by that noble River, so that the Kings and Princes from the Countries beyond the Seas, might have the Convenience of failing up to it. On the other Side the Beauty of the Meadows
Meadows and Groves, and Magnificence of the Royal Palaces with lofty gilded Roofs that adorned it, made it even rival the Grandeur of Rome. It was also famous for two Churches, whereof one was built in Honour of the Martyr Julius, and adorned with a Choir of Virgins, who had devoted themselves wholly to the Service of God; but the other, which was founded in Memory of St. Aaron his Companion, and maintained a Convent of Canons, was the third Metropolitan Church of Britain. Besides there was a College of two hundred Philosophers, who being learned in Astronomy and the other Arts, were diligent in observing the Courses of the Stars, and gave Arthur true Predictions of the Events that would happen at that Time. In this Place therefore affording such Plenty of Delights, were Preparations made for the ensuing Festival. Then Ambassadors were sent away into several Kingdoms, to invite to Court the Princes both of Gaul and all the adjacent Islands. Accordingly there came Augustel King of Albania, now Scotland; Urian King of Mureif; Cadwallo Lewirh King of the Venedotians, now called the North-Wales Men; Sater King of the Demotians, or South-Wales Men; Cador King of Cornwall; also the Archbishops of the three Metropolitan Sees, London, York, and Dubricius of the City of Legions. This Prelate, who was
was Primate of Britain, and Legate of the Apostolical See, was so eminent for his Piety, that by his Prayers he could cure any sick Person. There came also the Consuls of the principal Cities, viz. Morvid Conful of Gloucefier, Mauron of Worcefier, Animart of Salisbury, Arthgal of Carqneit or Warguit, Jugeim of Leicester, Curfalen of Kaisefier, Kimmare Duke of Dorobernia, Galluc of Salisbury, Urgennius of Badon, Jonathal of Dorchester, Bofo of Ridoc, that is, Oxford. Besides the Consuls, came the following Wor-thies of no lefs Dignity; Danaut, Map papo; Chenew, Map coif; Peredur, Map evidur; Guiful, Map Nogoit; Regin, Map claut; Eddelein, Map cledauc, Kimcar, Map bagan; Kimmare; Gorboroniam, Map goit; Clofaut, Rupmaneton; Kimbelim, Map trunat; Cathlaus, Mapcatel; Kinlich, Map neton; and many others too tedious to enumerate. From the adjacent Islands came Guillumuriz King of Ireland, Malvasius King of I féland, Doldavius King of Godland, Gunfasius King of the Orknevs, Lot King of Norway, Aschillius King of the Dacians. From the Parts beyond the Seas, came Holdin King of Ruteni, Leodegarius Conful of Bolonia, Bedver the Butler Duke of Normandy, Borellus of Cenomania, Caus the Sewer Duke of Andegavia, Guitard of Pictavia; also the twelve Peers of Gaul, whom Guerinus Carnotenfis brought along with him: Hoel Duke of the Armorican Bri-
tains, and his Nobility, who came with such a Train of Mules, Horses, and rich Furniture, as is hard to describe. Besides these, there remained no Prince of any Consideration on this Side of Spain, who came not upon this Invitation. And no Wonder, when Arthur's Munificence, which was celebrated over the whole World, made him beloved by all People.

C H A P. XIII.

A Description of the Royal Pomp at the Coronation of Arthur.

When all were assembled together in the City, upon the Day of the Solemnity the Archbishops were conducted to the Palace, in Order to place the Crown upon the King's Head. Therefore Dubricius, in Regard the Court was kept in his Diocese, made himself ready to celebrate the Office, and undertook the Ordering of whatever related to it. As soon as the King was invested with his royal Habiliments, he was conducted in great Pomp to the Metropolitan Church, being supported on each Side by two Archbishops, and having four Kings, viz. of Albania, Cornwall, Demetia, and Venedotia, whose Right it was, bearing four Golden
Golden Swords, before him. He was also attended with a Confort of all sorts of Music, which made most excellent Harmony. From another Part was the Queen, being dressed out in her richest Ornaments, conducted by the Archbishops and Bishops to the Temple of Virgins; the four Queens also of the Kings last mentioned, bearing before her four white Doves according to ancient Custom; and after her there followed a Retinue of Women, giving all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy. When the whole Procession was ended, so transportimg was the Harmony of the musical Instruments and Voices, whereof there was a vast variety in both Churches, that the Knights who attended were in Suspence which to prefer, and therefore crowded from the one to the other by Turns, and were far from being tired with the Solemnity, though the whole Day had been spent in it. At last when Divine Service was over at both Churches, the King and Queen put off their Crowns, and putting on their lighter Ornaments, go to the Banquet; he to one Palace with the Men, and she to another with the Women. For the Britains still observing the ancient Custom of Troy, the Men and Women used to celebrate their Festivals apart. When they had all taken their Seats according to their Precedence, Caius the Sewer, in rich Robes of Ermine, with
with a thousand young Noblemen, all in like manner clothed with Ermine, served up the Dishes. From another Part, Bedver the Butler was followed with the same Number of Attendants, in Variety of Habits, who waited with all Kinds of Cups and drinking Vessels. In the Queens Palace were innumerable Waiters, dressed with Variety of Ornaments, all performing their respective Offices; which if I should describe particularly, I should draw out the History to a tedious Length. For at that Time Britain was arrived to such a Pitch of Grandeur, that whether we respect its Affluence of Riches, Luxury of Ornaments, or Politeness of Inhabitants, it far surpassed all other Kingdoms. The Knights in it that were famous for Feats of Chivalry, wore their Clothes and Arms all of the same Colour and Fashion: And the Women also no less celebrated for their Wit, wore all the same Kind of Apparel; and esteemed none worthy of their Love, but such as had given a Proof of their Valour in several Battles. Thus was the Valour of the Men an Encouragement for the Women's Chastity, and the Love of the Women a Spur to the Soldiers Bravery.
CHAP. XIV.

"After a Variety of Sports at the Coronation, Arthur rewards his Servants.

As soon as the Banquets were over, they went into the Fields without the City, to divert themselves with various Kinds of Sports. The military Men composed a Kind of Diversion in Imitation of a Fight on Horseback; and the Ladies being placed on the Top of the Walls as Spectators, in a Sportive Manner darted their amorous Glances at the Courtiers, the more to encourage them. Others spent the Remainder of the Day in other Diversions, as Shooting with Bows and Arrows, tossing the Pike, casting of heavy Stones and Rocks, Playing at Dice and the like, and all these inoffensively and without quarrelling. Whoever gained the Victory in any of these Sports, was rewarded with a rich Prize by Arthur. In this Manner were the first three Days spent, and on the fourth all that upon Account of their Titles, bore any Kind of Office at this Solemnity, were called together to receive Honours and Preferments in Reward of their Services, and to fill up the Vacancies in the Governments of Cities and Castles,
Castles, Archbishops, Bishopricks, Abbeys, and other Polls of Honour.

CHAP. XV.

A Letter from Lucius Tiberius, General of the Romans, to Arthur being read, they consult about an Answer to it.

But St. Dubricius out of a pious Desire of leading a Hermits Life, made a voluntary Resignation of his Archiepiscopal Dignity; and in his Room was Consecrated David the Kings Uncle, whose Life was a perfect Example of that Goodness which by his Doctrine he taught. In the Place of St. Samson Archbishop of Dole, was appointed Chelianus a famous Priest of Landaff, with the Consent of Hoel King of the Armorican Britains, this Person being highly recommended for his good Life and Character. The Bishoprick of Silchester was conferred upon Mauganius, that of Winchester upon Dina-nius, and that of Alcout upon Edanaius. While he was disposing of these Preferments among them, it happened that twelve Men of an advanced Age, and venerable Aspect, and bearing Olive Branches in their Right
Right Hands, for a Token that they were come upon an Embassy, made their Entry to the King, moving towards him with a slow Pace, and speaking with a soft Voice; and after their Complements paid, presented him with a Letter from Lucius Tiberius, in these Words.

"Lucius, Procurator of the Common-wealth, to Arthur King of Britain, according to his Desert. The Insolence of your Tyranny is what fills me with the highest Admiration; and the Injuries you have done to Rome, still increase my Wonder. But it is provoking to reflect that you are grown so much above yourself, as wilfully to avoid seeing this; nor do you consider what it is to have offended by unjust Deeds a Senate, to whom you cannot be ignorant the whole World owes Vassalage. For the Tribute of Britain, which the Senate had enjoined you to pay, and which used to be paid to the Roman Emperors successively from the Time of Julius Cæsar, you have had the Presumption to detain in Contempt of their Imperial Authority. You have seized upon the Province of the Allobroges, and all the Islands of the Ocean, whose Kings, while the Roman Power prevailed in those Parts, paid Tribute to our Ancestors. And because the Senate have..."
" decreed to demand Justice of you for such
" repeated Injuries, I command you to ap-
" pear at Rome before the Middle of August
" the next Year, there to make Satisfaction
" to your Masters, and undergo such Sen-
" tence as they shall in Justice pass upon
" you. Which if you refuse to do, I shall
" come to you, and endeavour to recover
" with my Sword, what you in your Mad-
" ness have robbed us of.

As soon as the Letter was read in the Pre-
ience of the Kings and Consuls, Arthur with-
drew with them into the Giants Tower, which was at the Entrance of the Palace, to treat of such an Answer as was fit to be returned to such an insolent Message. As they were going up the Stairs, Cadoc Duke of Cornwall, who was a Man of a merry Dis-
position, said to the King in a jocose Man-
er; "I have been till now under Fear, but
" the easy Life the Britains lead, by enjoy-
" ing a long Peace, might make them Cow-
" ards, and extinguish the Fame of their
" Gallantry, by which they have raised
" their Name above all other Nations. For
" where the Exercise of Arms is wanting,
" and the Pleasures of Women, Dice, and
" other Diversions take Place, no Doubt
" the Remains of Vertue, Honour, Courage,
" and Thirst of Praise, will be stained with
" the Rust of Idleness. For now almost five
" Years
"Years have passed, since we have been abandoned to these Delights, and have had no Exercise of War. Therefore to deliver us from Sloth, God has stirred up this Spirit of the Romans, who are to restore our Military Virtues to their ancient State." In this Manner did he entertain them with Discourse, till they were come to their Seats, on which when they were all placed, Arthur spoke to them after this manner.

C H A P. XVI.

Arthur holding a Council with the Kings, desires every one of them to deliver their Opinions.

"My Companions both in good and bad Fortune, whose Abilities both in Counsel and War I have hitherto experienced; the present Exigence of Affairs, after the Message we have received, requires your careful Deliberation and prudent Resolutions: For whatever is wisely concerted, is easily executed. Therefore we shall be the better able to bear the Disturbance Lucius threatens to give us, if we unanimously apply our selves..."
In my Opinion we have no great Reason to fear him; when we reflect upon the unjust Pretence he makes for demanding Tribute of us. He says he has a Right to it, because it was paid to Julius Caesar, and his Successors, who invaded Britain with an Army at the Invitation of the ancient Britains, upon their quarrelling among themselves, and by Force reduced the Country under their Power, when weakened by civil Dissension. And because they gained it in this Manner, they had the Injustice to take Tribute of it. For that can never be possessed justly, which is gained by Force and Violence. So that he has no reasonable Grounds to pretend we are of Right his Tributaries. But since he has the Presumption to make an unjust Demand of us, we have certainly as good Reason to demand of him the Tribute of Rome; and let the longer Sword determine the Right of the Cause between us. For if Rome has decreed that Tribute ought to be paid to it from Britain, on Account of its having been formerly under the Yoke of Julius Caesar, and other Roman Emperors: I for the same Reason now decree, that Rome ought to pay Tribute to me, because my Successors formerly held the Government of it. For Belinus, that most glorious King,
of the Britains, with the Assistance of his Brother Brennus, Duke of the Allobroges, after they had hanged up twenty Noble Romans in the Middle of the Market-Place, took their City, and kept Possession of it a long Time. Likewise Constantine the Son of Helena, as also Maximian, who were both near of Blood to me, and both wore the Crown of Britain, gained the Imperial Throne of Rome. Do not you therefore think that we ought to demand Tribute of the Romans? As for Gaul and the adjacent Islands of the Ocean, we have no occasion to return them any Answer, since they avoided defending them, when we attempted to free them from under their Power." As soon as he had done speaking to this Effect, Hoel, King of the Armorican Britains, who had the Precedence of all the rest, made Answer in these Words.

CHAP. XVII.

The Opinion of Hoel King of Armorica concerning a War with the Romans.

"AFTER the most profound Deliberation that any of us shall be able to make, I think better Advice can-
not be given, than what your Majesty in your great Wisdom and Policy now offers. Your Speech, which was adorned with no less Wisdom than Eloquence, has superseded all Consultation on our Part; and nothing remains for us to do, but to admire and gratefully acknowledge your Majesty's Firmness, of Mind, and Depth of Policy to which we owe such excellent Advice. For if upon this Motive you are pleased to make an Expedition to Rome, I doubt not but it will be crowned with glorious Success; since it will be undertaken for the Defence of our Liberties, and demanding justly of our Enemies, what they have unjustly demanded of us. For that Person that would rob another, deserves to lose his own by him against whom the Attempt is made. And therefore since the Romans threatened us with this Injury, it will undoubtedly turn to their own Loss, if we can have but an Opportunity of engaging with them. This is what the Britains universally desire: This is what we have promised us in the Sibylline Prophecies, which expressly declare, that the Roman Empire shall be obtained by three Persons Natives of Britain. The Oracle is fulfilled in two of them; since it is manifest (as your Majesty observed) that those two celebrated Princes, Belinas and Constantine,
"Constantine, governed the Roman Empire:
And now you are the third to whom this
supreme Dignity is promised. Make
haste therefore to receive what God makes
no delay to give you; to subdue those
who are ready to receive your Yoke;
and to advance us all, who for your Ad-
vancement will spare neither Limbs nor
Life. And that you may accomplish this,
I my self will attend you in Person with
ten thousand Men.

C H A P. XVIII.

The Opinion of Augufel.

When Hoel concluded his Speech,
Augufel King of Albania declared his
good Affection for the Caufe after this Man-
ner. "I am not able to express the Joy
that has transported me, since my Lord
has declared to us his Designs. For we
seem to have done nothing by all our
past Wars with so many and potent
Princes, if the Romans and Germans be
suffered to enjoy Peace, and we not se-
verely revenge on them the grievous Op-
pressions they formerly brought upon this
Country. But now since we are at Li-
 liberty to encounter them, I am even
over-
overwhelmed with Joy and Eagerness of Desire, to see a Battle with them: When the Blood of those cruel Oppressors will be no less acceptable to me, than a Spring of Water is to one that is parched with Thirst. If I shall but live to see that Day, how sweet will be the Wounds which I shall then either receive or give? Nay, how sweet even Death itself, when suffered in revenging the Injuries done to our Ancestors, in defending our Liberties, and in promoting the Glory of our King? Let us then begin with these Poltrons, and spoil them of all their Trophies, by making an entire Conquest of them. And I for my share will add to the Army two thousand Horse, besides Foot.

C H A P. XIX.

They unanimously agree upon a War with the Romans.

To the same Effect spoke all the rest, and promised each of them, their full Quota of Forces: So that besides those promised by the Duke of Armorica, the Number of Men from the Island of Britain alone was sixty thousand, all completely armed. But the Kings of the other Islands, as they had not
not been accustomed to any Cavalry, promised their Quota of Infantry; and from the six provincial Islands, viz. Ireland, Iseland, Godland, the Orkneys, Norway, and Dacia, were reckoned a hundred and twenty thousand. From the Dutchies of Gaul, that is, of the Ruteni, the Portunians, the Estrasians, the Cenomanni, the Andegaviens, and Pictavians, were eighty thousand. From the twelve Consulships of those who came along with Germani; Carnutensis, twelve hundred. All together made up an hundred eighty three thousand and two hundred, besides Foot which did not easily fall under Number.

CHAP. XX.

Arthur prepares for a War, and refuses to pay Tribute to the Romans.

KING Arthur seeing all unanimously ready for his Service, ordered them to return back to their Countries with speed, and get ready the Forces they had promised, and to hasten to the general Rendezvous upon the Kalends of August, at the Mouth of the River Barba, that from thence they might advance with them to the Borders of the Allobroges, to meet the Romans. Then he sent
sent Word back to the Emperors by their Ambassadors; that as to the paying them Tribute he would in no wise obey their Command, and that the Journey he was about to make to Rome, was not to stand the Award of their Sentence, but to demand of them, what they had judicially decreed to demand of him. With this Answer the Ambassadors depart: And at the same Time also depart all the Kings and Noblemen, to perform with all Expedition the Orders that had been given them.
Lucius Tiberius calls together the Eastern Kings against the Britains.

Lucius Tiberius, upon Receipt of this Answer, by Order of the Senate published a Decree, for the Eastern Kings to come with their Forces, and assist in the Conquest of Britain. In Obedience to which there came in a very short Time, Epistrophius King of the Grecians, Mustenfar King of the Africans, Alifantinam King of Spain, Hirtacius King
King of the Parthians, Boccus of the Medes, Sertorius of Libya, Teucer King of Phrygia, Serse King of the Itureans, Pandarasus King of Egypt, Micipsa King of Babylon, Polytetes Duke of Bithynia, Teucer Duke of Phrygia, Evander of Syria, Aethion of Bœotia, Hippolitus of Crete, with the Generals and Nobility under them. Of the Senatorian Order also came, Lucius Catellus, Marius Lepidus, Caius Metellus Cotta, Quintus Milvius Catulus, Quintus Caratius, and as many others as made up the Number of forty thousand one hundred and sixty.

C H A P. II.

Arthur commits to his Nephew Modred the Government of Britain. His Dream at Hamo's Port.

After the necessary Dispositions were made, upon the Kalends of August they begin their March towards Britain: Which when Arthur had Intelligence of, he committed the Government of the Kingdom to his Nephew Modred and Queen Gauhumara, and marched with his Army to Hamo's Port, where the Wind flood fair for him. But while he, surrounded with all his numerous Fleet, was failing joyfully
joyfully with a brisk Gale, it happened that about Midnight he fell into a very found Sleep, and in a Dream saw a Bear flying in the Air, at the Noise of which all the Shores trembled: Also a terrible Dragon flying from the West, which enlightened the Country with the Brightness of its Eyes. When these two met they began a dreadful Fight; but the Dragon with its fiery Breath burnt the Bear which often assaulted him, and threw him down scorched to the Ground. Arthur upon this awaking, related his Dream to those that attended about him, who took upon them to interpret it, and told him; That the Dragon signified himself, but the Bear some Giant that should encounter with him: And that the Fight portended the Duel that would be between them, and the Dragons Victory the same that would happen to himself. But Arthur conjectured it portended something else, and that the Vision was applicable to himself and the Emperor. As soon as the Morning after this Night's Sail appeared, they found themselves arrived at the Mouth of the River Barba. And there they pitched their Tents, to wait the Arrival of the Kings of the Islands, and the Generals of the other Provinces.
C H A P. III.

Arthur kills a Spanish Giant who had stole away Helena the Neice of Hoel.

In the mean Time Arthur has News brought him, that a Giant of monstrous Size was come from the Parts of Spain, and had forcibly taken away Helena the Neice of Duke Hoel from her Guard, and fled with her to the Top of that which is now called The Mount of Michael: And that the Soldiers of the Country who pursued him, were able to do nothing against him. For whether they attacked him by Sea or Land, he either overturned their Ships with vast Rocks, or killed them with several sorts of Darts, besides many of them that he took and devoured half alive. The next Night therefore at the second Hour, Arthur taking along with him Caius the Sewer and Bedver the Butler, went out privately from the Camp, and hastened towards the Mountain. For being a Man of undaunted Courage, he did not care to lead his Army against such Monsters; both because he could in this Manner animate his Men by his own Example; and also because he was alone sufficient to deal with them. As soon
soon as they came near the Mountain, they saw a Fire burning upon the Top of it; and another on a lesser Mountain, that was not far from it. And being in Doubt upon which of them the Giant dwelt, they send away Bedever to know the Certainty of the Matter. So he finding a Boat, sailed over in it first to the lesser Mountain, to which he could no other Way have Access, because it was situate in the Sea. When he had begun to climb up to the Top of it, he was at first frightned with a dismal howling Cry of a Woman from above, and imagined the Monster to be there: But quickly rousing up his Courage, he drew his Sword, and having reached the Top, found nothing but the Fire which he had before seen at a Distance. He discovered also a Grave newly made, and an old Woman weeping and howling by it; who at the Sight of him instantly cry'd out, in Words interrupted with Sighs: "O unhappy Man, what Misfortune brings you to this Place! O the inexpressible Tortures of Death that you must suffer! I pity you, I pity you, because the detestable Monster will this Night destroy the Flower of your Youth. For that most wicked and odious Giant, who brought the Dukes Neice, whom I have just now buried here, and me her Nurfe along with her into this Mountain, will come and immediately..."
murder you in a most cruel Manner. O
deplorable Fate! This most illustrious
Princes, sinking under the Fear her ten-
der Heart conceived, while the soul Mon-
ter would have embraced her, fainted
away and expired. And when he could
not satiate his brutifh Lust upon her,
who was to me the very Soul, Joy and
Happiness of my Life, being enraged at
the Disappointment of his beastial Desire,
he forcibly committed a Rape upon me,
who (let God and my Old-age witness)
aborred his Embraces. Fly, dear Sir,
fly, for Fear he come, as he usually does
to lie with me, and finding you here moft
barbarously butcher you." Bedver, tho'
moved at what she said, as much as it is possi-
ble for human Nature to be, yet endeavoured
with kind Words to asswage her Grief, and to
comfort her with the Promise of speedy Help:
And then returned back to Arthur, and gave
him an Account of what he had met with.
Arthur very much lamented the Damsels
sad Fate, and ordered his Companions to
leave him to deal with him alone; unless
there was an absolute Necessity, and then
they were to come in boldly to his Assistance.
From hence they went directly to the next
Mountain, leaving their Horses with their
Armour-Bearers, and ascended to the Top;
Arthur leading the Way. The deformed Sa-
vage was then by the Fire, with his Face all
besmeared
besmeared with the clotted Blood of Swine, Part of which he had already devoured, and was roasting the Remainder upon Spits by the Fire. But at the Sight of them, whose Appearance was a Surprize to him, he hastened to his Club, which two strong Men could hardly lift from the Ground. Upon this the King drew his Sword, and guarding himself with his Shield, ran with all his speed to prevent his getting it. But the other, who was not ignorant of his Design, had by this Time snatched it up, and gave the King such a terrible Blow upon his Shield, that he made the Shores ring with the Noise, and perfectly stunned the Kings Ears with it. Arthur at this being fired with Rage, lifted up his Sword, and gave him a Wound in the Forehead, which was not indeed mortal, but yet such as made the Blood gush out over his Face and Eyes, and so blinded him; for he had partly warded off the Stroke from his Forehead with his Club, and prevented its being fatal. However his Loss of Sight, by Reason of the Blood flowing over his Eyes, made him exert himself with greater Fury, and like an enraged Boar against a Hunting-Spear, so did he rush in against Arthur's Sword, and grasping him about the Waist forced him down upon his Knees. But Arthur nothing daunted nimbly slid out of his Hands, and now so bestirred himself with his Sword, that
he gave the Giant no Respite till he had struck it up to the very Back within his Skull. At this the hideous Monster raised a dreadful Roar, and like an Oak torn up by the Roots by Force of Winds, so did he make the Ground resound with his Fall. Arthur bursting out into a Fit of Laughter at the Sight, commanded Bedever to cut off his Head, and give it to one of the Armour-Bearers, who was to carry it to the Camp, and there expose it to publick View, but with Orders for the Spectators of this Combat to keep Silence. He told them he had found none of so great Strength, since he killed the Giant Ritho upon the Mountain Aravius, who had challenged him to fight. This Giant had made himself Furs of the Beards of Kings he had killed, and had sent Word to Arthur carefully to flea off his Beard and send it to him; and then out of Respect to his Pre-eminence over other Kings, his Beard should have the Honour of the principal Place. But if he refused to do it, he challenged him to a Duel, with this Offer, that the Conquerer should have the Furs, and also the Beard of the vanquished for a Trophy of his Victory. In this Conflict therefore, Arthur proved victorious, and took the Beard and Spoils of the Giant; and, as he said before, had met with none that could be compared to him for Strength, till his last Engagement. After
After this Victory they returned at the second Watch of the Night to the Camp, with the Head; to the Sight of which there was a great Concours of People, all extolling this wonderful Exploit of Arthur, by which he had freed the Country from a most destructive and voracious Monster. But Hoel, in great Grief for the Loss of his Neice, commanded a Mausoleum to be built over her Body in the Mountain where she was buried, which taking the Damsels Name, is called Helena’s Tomb to this Day.

CHAP. IV.

Arthurs Ambassadors to Lucius Tiberius deliver Petreius Cotta, whom they took Prisoner, to Arthur.

As soon as all the Forces were arrived which Arthur expected, he marches from thence to Augustodunum, where he supposed the General was. But when he came to the River Alba, he had Intelligence brought him of his having encamped not far off, and that he was come with so vast an Army, as he could not be able to withstand. However this did not deter him from pursuing his Enterprize, but he pitch-
ed his Camp upon the Bank of the River, to facilitate the bringing up of his Forces, and to secure his Retreat, if there should be Occasion; And sent Bofo the Consul of Oxford, and Guerinus Carnotenlis, with his Nephew Walgan to Lucius Tiberius, requiring him either to retire from the Coasts of Gaul, or come the next Day, that they might try their Right to that Country with their Swords. The Retinue of young Courtiers that attended Walgan, highly rejoicing at this Opportunity, were urgent with him to find some Occasion for a Quarrel in the Commanders Camp, that so they might engage the Romans. Accordingly they went to Lucius, and commanded him to retire out of Gaul, or hazard a Battle the next Day. But while he was answering them, that he was not come to retire, but to govern the Country, there was present Caius Quintilianus his Nephew, who said; “That the Britains were better at boasting and threatening, than they were at fighting.” Walgan immediately took Fire at this, and ran upon him with his drawn Sword, wherewith he cut off his Head, and then retreated speedily with his Companions to their Horses. The Romans both Horse and Foot pursue, to revenge the Loss of their Countryman upon the Ambassadors, who fled with great Precipitation. But Guerinus Carnotenlis, just as one of them was come up
up to him, rallied on a sudden, and with his Lance struck at once through his Armour and the very middle of his Body, and laid him prostrate on the Ground. The Sight of this noble Exploit raised the Emulation of Bosb of Oxford, who wheeling about his Horse, struck his Lance into the Throat of the first Man he met with, and dismounted him mortally wounded. In the mean Time Marcellus Mutius, with great Eagerness to revenge Quintilian's Death, was just upon the Back of Walgan, and laid hold of him; which the other quickly obliged him to quit, by cleaving both his Helmet and Head to the Breast with his Sword. He also bid him, when he arrived at the infernal Region, tell the Man he had killed in the Camp; “That in this Manner the Britains were “full of their Boasting and Threatning.” Then having re-assembled his Men, he encouraged them to dispatch every one his Pursuer, in the same Manner as he had done; which accordingly they did not fail to accomplish. Notwithstanding the Romans continued their Pursuit with Lances and Swords, wherewith they annoy'd the others, though without Slaughter or taking any Prisoners. But as they came near a certain Wood, a Party of six thousand Britains, upon seeing the Flight of the Consuls, had hid themselves, to be in Readiness for their Assistance. Then falling forth they put X 4 Spurs
Spurs to their Horses, and rend the Air with their loud Shouts, and being well fenced with their Shields, on a sudden assault the Romans, and force them to fly. And now it was the Britains Turn to pursue, which they did with better Success, since they dismounted, killed, or took several of the Enemy. Petreius the Senator, upon this News, hastens to the Assistance of his Countrymen with ten thousand Men, and compelled the Britains to retreat to the Wood from whence they had sallied forth; though not without Loss of his own Men. For the Britains being well acquainted with the Ground, did in their Flight kill a great Number of their Pursuers. The Britains thus giving Ground, Hider with another Reinforcement of five thousand Men, advances with speed to sustain them; so that they now again face those, upon whom they had turned their Backs, and renew the Assault with great Vigour. The Romans also stand their Ground, and continue the Fight with various Success. The great Fault of the Britains was, that though they had been very eager to begin the Fight, yet when begun they were less careful of the Hazard they run. Whereas the Romans were under better Discipline, and had the Advantage of a prudent Commander, Petreius Cotta, to tell them where to advance, and where to give Ground, and by that Means did great Injury to
to the Enemy. When Bofo observed this, he drew off from the rest a large Party of those whom he knew to be the stoutest Men, and spoke to them after this Manner; "Since we have begun this Fight without "Arthur's Knowledge, we must take Care "that we be not defeated in the Enterprize. "For if we should, we shall both very "much endanger our Men, and incur the "Kings high Displeasure. Rouse up your "Courage, and follow me through the "Roman Squadrons, that with the Favour "of good Fortune we may either kill or "take Petreius Prisoner." With this they put Spurs to their Horses, and piercing through the Enemies thickest Ranks, reached the Place where Petreius was giving his Commands. Bofo hastily run in upon him, and grasping him about the Neck, fell down with him to the Ground, according to the Design he had formed. The Romans here-upon ran to his Delivery, as did the Britains to Bofo's Assistance; which occasioned on both Sides great Slaughter, Noise and Confusion, while one Party strove to rescue their Leader, and the other to keep him Prisoner. So that this proved the sharpest Part of the whole Fight, and wherein their Spears, Swords and Arrows had the fullest Employment. At length the Britains joining in a close Body, and sustaining patiently the Assaults of the Romans, retire to the main
main Body of their Army with Petreius: Which they had no sooner done than they again attack them, being now deprived of their Leader, very much weakened, dispirited, and just beginning to fly. They therefore eagerly pursue, beat down, and kill several of them, and as soon as they had plundered them pursued the rest: But they took the greatest Number of them Prisoners, as being desirous of presenting them to the King. When they had at last sufficiently harassed them, they returned back with their Plunder and Prisoners to the Camp; where they gave an Account of what had happened, and presented Petreius Cotta with the other Prisoners before Arthur, with great Joy for the Victory. Arthur congratulated them upon it, and promised them Advancement to greater Honours, for behaving themselves so gallantly when he was absent from them. Then he gave his Command to some of his Men, to conduct the Prisoners the next Day to Paris, and deliver them to be kept in Custody there till further Orders. The Party that were to undertake this Charge, he ordered Cador, Bedver, and the two Consuls Borellus and Richerius with their Servants, to conduct so far, till they should be out of all Fear of Disturbance from the Romans.
The Romans attack the Britains with a very great Force, but are put to Flight by them.

But the Romans happening to get Intelligence of their Design, at the Command of their General chose out fifteen thousand Men, who that Night were to get before the others in their March, and rescue their Fellow Soldiers out of their Hands. They were to be commanded by Vulteius Catellus, and Quintus Carutius Senators, as also Evander King of Syria, and Sertorius King of Libya. And accordingly they begun the March appointed them that very Night, and possessed themselves of a Place convenient for their lying in Ambuscade, through which they supposed the others would pass. In the Morning the Britains set forward along the same Road with their Prisoners, and were now approaching the Place, in perfect Ignorance of the cunning Stratagem of the Enemy. No sooner were they entered it, than the Romans to their great Surprise sprung forth and fell furiously upon them. Notwithstanding the Britains at length recovering from their Consternation, assemble together, and prepare for a bold Oppo-
Opposition, by appointing a Party to guard the Prisoners, and drawing out the rest in Order of Battle against the Enemy. Richerius and Bedver had the Command of the Party that were set over the Prisoners; but Cador Duke of Cornwall, and Borellus headed the others. But all the Romans had made their Sally without being placed in any Order, and cared not to form themselves, that they might lose no Time in the Slaughter of the Britains, whom they saw busied in marshell ing their Troops and preparing only for their Defence. By this Conduct the Britains were extremly weakened, and would have shamefully lost their Prisoners, had not good Fortune hastened to their Assistance. For Guitard Commander of the Pictavians, happened to get Knowledge of the designed Stratagem, and was come up with three thousand Men, by the Help of which they at last got the Advantage, and repaid back the Slaughter upon their insolent Affailants. Notwithstanding the Losse they sustained at the Beginning of this Action was very considerable. For they lost Borellus the famous Conful of the Cenomanni, in an Encounter with Evander King of Syria, who struck his Lance into his Throat; besides four Noblemen, viz. Hirelgas Deperirus, Mauricius Cadorcanensis, Aliduc of Tintagol, and Hider his Son, than whom braver Men were hardly to be found. But yet neither did this Losse dispirit the Britains, but
but rather made them more resolute to keep the Prisoners, and kill the Enemy. The Romans now finding themselves unable to maintain the Fight any longer, on a sudden quitted the Field, and made back towards their Camp; but were pursued with Slaughter by the Britains, who also took many of them, and allowed them no Respite till they had killed Vulteius Catellus, and Evander King of Syria, and wholly dispersed the rest. Which done, they sent away their former Prisoners to Paris, whither they were to conduct them, and returned back with those newly taken to the King; to whom they gave great Hopes of a compleat Conquest of their Enemies, since very few of the great Number that came against them, had met with any Success.

C H A P. VI.

Lucius Tiberius goes to Lengriae.
Arthur designing to vanquish him, by a Stratagem possesses himself of the Valley of Suecia.

These repeated Disasters wrought no small Disturbance in the Breast of Lucius Tiberius, and made him hesitate with anxious and fluctuating Thoughts, whether
to bring it to a general Battle with Arthur, or to retire into Augustodunum, and stay till the Emperor Leo with his Forces could come to his Assistance. At length giving way to his Fears, he enters Lengria with his Army, intending to reach the other City the Night following. Arthur finding this, and being desirous to get before him in his March, leaves the City on the left Hand, and the same Night enters a certain Valley called Sueia, through which Lucius was to pass. There he divided his Men into several Bodies, commanding one Legion, over which Morvid Consul of Glocester was appointed General, to attend hard by, that he might retreat to them if there should be Occasion, and from thence rally his broken Forces for a second Battle. The rest he divided into seven Parts, in each of which he placed five thousand five hundred and fifty five Men, all compleatly armed. He also appointed different Stations to his Horse and Foot, and gave Command, that just as the Foot should advance to the Attack, the Horse keeping close together in their Ranks, should the same Moment march up obliquely, and endeavour to put the Enemy into Disorder. The Companies of Foot were after the British Manner drawn out into a Square, with a right and left Wing; one of which was commanded by Augustel King of Albania, and Cador Duke of Cornwall, the one prefi-
ding over the right Wing, the other over
the left. Over another Party were placed
the two famous Consuls, Guerinus Carnoten-
sis, and Boso of Richiden, called in the Saxon
Tongue Oxineford: Over a third were Aeschil-
lius King of the Dacians, and Lot King of the
Norwegians: The fourth being commanded
by Hoel Duke of the Armoricans, and Walgan
the Kings Nephew. After these were four
other Parties placed in the Reer; the first
commanded by Caius the Sewer, and Bed-
ver the Butler; the second by Holdin Duke
of the Ruteni, and Guitard of the Pictavi-
ans; the third by Vigenis of Leicester, Jon-
thal of Dorchester, and Cursalem of Caiceter;
the fourth by Urbgenius of Badon. Behind
all these Arthur, for himself and the Legion
that was to attend near him, made Choice
of a Place, where he set up a Golden Dra-
gon for a Standard, whither the wounded
or fatigued might in Case of Necessity re-
treat as into their Camp. The Legion that
was with him, consisted of six thousand six
hundred and sixty six Men.
AFTER he had thus placed them all in their Stations, he made the following Speech to his Soldiers. "My brave Countrymen, who have made Britain the Mistress of thirty Kingdoms, I congratulate you upon your late Noble Exploit, which to me is a Proof that your Valour is so far from being impaired, that it is increased rather. Though you have been five Years without Exercise, where-in the softning Pleasures of an easy Life, had a greater Share of your Time, than the use of Arms; yet all this has not made you in the least degenerate from your natural Bravery, which you have shewn in forcing the Romans to fly. The Pride of their Leaders has animated them to attempt the Invasion of your Liberties. They have tried you in Battle, with Numbers Superiour to yours, and have not been able to stand before you; but have bailey withdrawn themselves into that City, from whence they are now ready to march out, and to pass through this Valley in their Way to Augustodunum; so that you may have an Opportunity of falling upon them unawares like a "Flock
Book X.  The British History.  337

"Flock of Sheep. Certainly they expected
to find in you the Cowardice of the
Eastern Nations, when they thought to
make your Country Tributary, and you
their Slaves. What have they never heard
of your Wars with the Dacians, Norwegians,
and Princes of the Gauls, whom
you reduced under my Power, and freed
from their shameful Yoke? We then that
have had Success in a greater War, need
not doubt of it in a less, if we do but en-
deavour with the same Spirit to vanquish
these Poltrons. You shall want no Re-
wards of Honour, if as faithful Soldiers
you do but strictly obey my Commands.
For as soon as we have routed them, we
will march straight to Rome, and take it;
and then all the Gold, Silver, Palaces,
Towers, Towns, Cities, and other Riches
of the vanquished shall be yours." He
had hardly done speaking, before they all
with one Voice declared, that they were
ready to suffer Death, rather than quit the
Field while he had Life.
BUT Lucius Tiberius discovering the Designs that were formed against him, would not fly as he had at first intended, but taking new Courage, resolved to march to the same Valley against them; and calling together his principal Commanders, spoke to them in these Words. "Venerable Fathers, to whose Empire both the Eastern and Western Kingdoms owe Obedience, remember the Virtues of your Ancestors, who were not afraid to shed their Blood, when the vanquishing of the Enemies of the Commonwealth required it; but to leave an Example of their Courage and military Virtues to their Posterity, behaved themselves in all Battles with that Contempt of Death, as if God had given them some Security against it. By this Conduct they often triumphed, and by triumphing escaped Death. Such was the Reward of their Virtue from Divine Providence, which overrules all Events. The Increase of the Commonwealth, and of their own Va-
lour, was owing to this; and all those Virtues that usually adorn the Great, as Integrity, Honour, and Munificence, flourishing a long Time in them, raised them and their Posterity to the Empire of the whole World. Let their noble Examples animate you; rouse up the Spirit of the ancient Romans, and be not afraid to march out against our Enemies that are lying in Ambush for us in the Valley, but boldly with your Swords demand of them your just Rights. Do not think that I retired into this City for fear of engaging with them; but I thought that as their Pursuit of us was rash and foolish, so we might hence on a sudden intercept them in it, and by dividing their main Body make a great Slaughter of them. But now since they have altered the Measures we supposed they had taken, let us also alter ours. Let us go in quest of them, and bravely fall upon them; or if they shall happen to have the Advantage in the Beginning of the Battle, let us only stand our Ground during the Fury of their first Assault, and the Victory will undoubtedly be ours; for in many Battles this Manner of Conduct has been attended with Victory." As soon as he had made an end of speaking these and other Things, they all declared their Assent, promised with an Oath to stand by him, and hastened
haftened to arm themselves. Which when they had done, they marched out of Lengria to the Valley where Arthur had drawn out his Forces in Order of Battle. Then they also began to marshal their Army, which they divided into twelve Companies, and according to the Roman Manner of Embattling, drew out each Company into the Form of a Wedge, consisting of six thousand six hundred and sixty-six Men. Each Company also had its respective Leaders, who were to give Direction when to advance, or when to be upon the Defensive. One of them was headed by Lucius Catellus the Senator, and Alifantinam King of Spain; another by Hortacius King of the Parthians, and Marius Lepidus a Senator; a third by Bocceus King of the Medes, and Caius Metellus a Senator; a fourth by Sertorius King of Libya, and Quintus Milvius a Senator. These four Companies were placed in the Front of the Army. In the Rear of these were four others, whereof one was commanded by Serfes King of the Itureans; another by Pandrasus King of Egypt; a third by Polytetes Duke of Bithynia; a fourth by Teucer Duke of Phrygia. And again behind all these four others, whereof the Commanders were Quintus Carucius a Senator, Lelius Hostiensis, Sulpiius Subaculas, and Mauricius Sylvanus. As for the General himself, he was sometimes in one Place, sometimes another, to encourage
Book X. The British History.

encourage and direct as there should be Occasion. For a Standard he ordered a Golden Eagle to be firmly set up in the Center, for his Men to repair to, whenever they should happen to be separated from their Company.

CHAP. IX.

A Battle between Arthur and Lucius Tiberius.

And now did the Britains and Romans stand presented with their Arms before each other; when forthwith at the sounding of the Trumpets, the Company that was headed by the King of Spain and Lucius Catellus, boldly rushed forward against that which the King of Scotland and Duke of Cornwall led up, but were not able to make the least Breach in their firm Ranks. So that while these stood their Ground, up came Guerinus and Bofo with a Body of Horse upon their full Speed, broke through the Party that began the Assault, and met with another which the King of the Parthians was just leading up against Aschillius King of Dacia. After this first Onset, immediately followed, a general Engagement of both Armies with great Violence, and several
several Breaches made on each Side. The Shouts, the Slaughter, the vast Quantity of Blood spilled, and the Agonies of the dying, made a dreadful Scene of Horror. At first the Britains sustained a great Loss, by having Bedver the Butler killed, and Caius the Sewer mortally wounded. For as Bedver met Boccus King of the Medes, he fell down dead by a Stab of his Lance amidst the Enemies Troops. And Caius in endeavouring to revenge his Death, was surrounded by the Median Troops, and there received a mortal Wound; yet as a brave Soldier he opened himself a Way with the Wing which he led, killed and dispersed the Medes, and would have made a safe Retreat with all his Men, had he not happened to meet with the King of Libya with the Forces under him, who put his whole Company into Disorder; yet not so great, but that he was still able to get off with a few, and fly with Bedvers Corps to the Golden Dragon. The Neu- strians grievously lamented at the Sight of their Leaders mangled Body; and so did the Andegaviacs, when they beheld their Consul wounded. But there was now no room for mournful Complaints, when the furious and bloody Shocks of both Armies made it more necessary to provide for their own Defence. Therefore Hireg as the Nephew of Bedver, being extremely enraged at his Death, calls up to him three hundred Men, and
and like a wild Boar amongst a Pack of Dogs broke through the Enemies Ranks with his Horse, making towards the Place where he had seen the Standard of the King of the Medes; little regarding what might befall him, so he could but revenge the Loss of his Unkle. At length he reached the Place, killed the King, brought off his Body to his Companions, and laid it by that of his Unkle, where he mangled it in the same Manner. Then calling with a loud Voice to his Countrymen, he animated their Troops, and vehemently pressed them to exert themselves to the utmost, now when their Spirits were raised, and the Enemy disheartened; and especially as they had the Advantage of them in being placed in better Order, and so might the more grievously infest them. Encouraged with this Exhortation they began a general Assault upon the Enemy, which was attended with a terrible Slaughter on both Sides. For on the Part of the Romans, beside innumerable others, fell Alifantinam King of Spain, Micipsa of Babylon, as also Quintus Milvius, and Marius Lepidus Senators. On the Part of the Britains, Holdin King of the Ruteni, Leodegarus of Bolonia, and three Consuls of Britain, Curfaeum of Kaicester, Galluc of Salisbury, and Ubrgennius of Badon. So that the Troops they commanded being extremly weakned, retreated till they came to the Army of the Armorican
Armoricæ Britanniarum commanded by Hoel and Walgan. But these being inflamed at the Retreat of their Friends, encouraged them to stand their Ground, and caused them now with the Help of their own Forces to put their Pursuers to Flight. While they continued this Pursuit, they beat down and killed several of them, and gave them no Respite, till they came to the very Generals Troop; who seeing the Distreß of his Companions hastened to their Assistance.

CHAP. X.

Hoel and Walgan signalize their Valour in the Fight.

And now in this latter Encounter the Britains are worsted, by the Loss of Ki-marcoæ Consul of Trigeria, and two thousand with him; beside three famous Noblemen, Richomarcæus, Bloccovius, and Turgivius of Bod-loan, who had they but enjoyed the Dignity of Princes, succeeding Ages would not have failed to celebrate their Valour. For during this Assault which they made in Conjunction with Hoel and Walgan, there was not an Enemy within their Reach that could escape the Fury of their Sword or Lance. But upon their falling in among Lucius's Party,
Party, they were surrounded by them, and suffered the same Fate with the Consul and the other Men. The Loss of these Men made those brave and matchless Hero’s, Hoel and Walgan, much more eager to infest the Generals Ranks, and to try on all Sides where to make the greatest Impression. But Walgan, whose Valour was never to be foiled, endeavoured to gain Access to Lucius himself, that he might encounter him, and with this View beat down and killed all that stood in his Way. And Hoel, not inferior to him, did no less Service in another Part, by spiriting up his Men, and giving and receiving Blows among the Enemy with the same undaunted Courage. It was hard to determin, whether of them was the stout-er Soldier.

C H A P. XI.

Lucius Tiberius being killed, the Britains obtain the Victory.

B U T Walgan by forcing his Way thro’ the Enemies Troops, as we said before, found at last (what he had wished for) Access to the General, and immediately encountred him. Lucius being then in the Flower of his Youth, and a Person of great
great Courage and Vigour, desired nothing more than to engage with such a one as might put his Strength to its full Trial. Puring himself therefore into a Posture of De-fence, he received Walgan with Joy, and was not a little proud to try his Courage with one of whom he had heard very great Things. The Duel continued between them a long Time, with great Force of Blows, and no less Dexterity in warding them off, each being resolved upon the others Destruction. During this sharp Conflict between them, the Romans on a sudden recovering their Courage, made an Assault upon the Armot-icans, and having relieved their General, repulsed Hoel and Walgan, with their Troops, till they found themselves unawares met by Arthur and the Forces under him. For he upon hearing of the Slaughter that was a little before made of his Men, had speedi-ly advanced with his Legion, and drawing out his Caliburn, spoke to them with a loud Voice after this Manner. "What are "you doing Soldiers? Will you suffer these "effeminate Wretches to escape? Let not "one of them get off alive. Remember "the Force of your Arms, that have reduc-ed thirty Kingdoms under my Subjection. "Remember your Anceffors, whom the "Romans, when at the Height of their "Power, made tributary. Remember your "Liberties, which these pitiful Fellows, "that
"that are much your Inferiors, attempt to deprive you of. Let none of them escape alive. What are you doing?"

With these Expostulations, he rushed in upon the Enemy, made terrible Havock among them, and not a Man he met but at one Blow he either laid him or his Horse dead upon the Ground. They therefore in Astonishment fled him, as a Flock of Sheep do a fierce Lion, whom raging Hunger provokes to devour whatever happens to come near him. Their Arms were no manner of Protection to them against the Force with which this most valiant Prince weilded his Caliburn. Two Kings, Sertorius of Libya, and Polytenes of Bithynia, unfortunately felt its Fury, and had their Heads cut off by it.

The Britains, when they saw their King performing such Wonders, take Courage again. With one Consent they assault the Romans, keep close together in their Ranks, and while they infest the Foot in one Part, endeavour to beat down and pierce through the Horse in another. Notwithstanding the Romans make a brave Defence, and at the Instigation of Lucius labour to repay back their Slaughter upon the Britains. Such was the Eagerness and Force that was now shewn on both Sides, as if it was just the Beginning of the Battle. Arthur continued to do great Execution with his own Hand, and encouraged the Britains to maintain
tain the Fight; as Lucius Tiberius did the Romans, and made them perform many memorable Exploits. He himself in the mean Time was very active in going from Place to Place, and suffered none to escape with Life, that happened to come within the Reach of his Sword or Lance. The Slaughter that was now made on both Sides was very dreadful, and the Turns of Fortune various, sometimes the Britains prevailing, sometimes the Romans. At last while this sharp Dispute yet continued, Morvid Conful of Glocefter with his Legion, which as we said before was placed between the Hills, came up with speed upon the Rear of the Enemy, and to their great Surprize assaulted, broke through, and dispersed them with a great Slaughter. This last and decisive Blow proved Fatal to many thousands of Romans, and even to the General Lucius himself, who was killed among the Crowds with a Lance by an unknown Hand. But the Britains by long maintaining the Fight, with very great Difficulty gained the Victory.
One Part of the Romans fly; and the other of their own Accord surrender themselves for Slaves.

The Romans being now therefore dispersed, betake themselves through Fear, some to the By-Ways and Woods, some to the Cities and Towns, and all other Places where they could be most safe; but were either killed or taken and plunder'd by the Britains pursuing: So that a great Part of them voluntarily and shamefully held forth their Hands, to receive their Conquerers Chains, in order to prolong for a while a wretched Life. In all which the Justice of Divine Providence was very visible; considering how unjustly the Ancestors of the Britains were formerly harassed and intested by those of the Romans; and that these stood only in Defence of that Liberty, which the others would have deprived them of; and refused the Tribute, which the others had no Right to demand.
C H A P. XIII.

The Bodies of the Slain are decently buried, each in their respective Countries.

ARTHUR, after he had compleated his Victory, gives Orders for separating the Bodies of his Nobility from those of the Enemy, and preparing a pompous Funeral for them; and that when ready they should be carried to the Abbies of their respective Countries, there to be honourably buried. But Bedver the Butler was with great Lamentation of the Neufrians carried to his own City Bajoce, which Bedver the First, his Great Grandfather, had built. There he was with great Solemnity laid close by the Wall, in a Burying-Place in the South Part of the City. But Cheudo was carried grievously wounded to Camus, a Town which himself built, where in a short Time he died of his Wounds, and was buried, as became a Duke of Andegavia, in a Convent of Hermits, which was in a Wood not far from the Town. Also Holdin Duke of Rusteni, was carried to Flanders, and buried in his own City Terivana. The other Consuls and Noblemen were conveyed to the neighbouring Abbies, according to Arthur's Orders.
Out of his great Clemency also he ordered the Country People to take Care of the Burial of the Enemy, and to carry the Body of Lucius to the Senate, and tell them, That was the only Tribute Britain ought to pay them. After this he staid in those Parts till the next Winter was over, and employed his Time in reducing the Cities of the Allobroges. But at the Beginning of the Summer following, as he was upon his March towards Rome, and beginning to pass the Alps, he had News brought him that his Nephew Modred, to whose Care he had entrusted Britain, had by tyrannical and treasonable Practices set the Crown upon his own Head; and that Queen Guanhumara, in Violation of her first Marriage, was wickedly married to him.
Modred makes a great Slaughter of Arthurs Men, but is notwithstanding beaten, and flies to Winchester.

If the Matter now to be treated of, most Noble Consul, Jeffrey of Monmouth shall be silent; but will, though in a mean Stile, yet briefly relate what he found in the British Book above-mentioned, and heard from that most learned Historian Walter Archdeacon of Oxford, concerning the Wars which this renowned King upon his Return to
to Britain after this Victory, waged with his Nephew. As soon therefore as the Report of this flagrant Wickedness reached him, he immediately desisted from his Enterprise against Leo King of the Romans; and having sent away Hoel Duke of the Armoricans with the Army of Gaul, to restore Peace in those Parts, returned back with speed to Britain, attended only with the Kings of the Islands, and their Armies. But the wicked Traitor Modred had sent Cheldric the Saxon Leader into Germany, there to raise all the Forces he could find, and return with all speed: And in Consideration of this Service, had promised him all that Part of the Island, which reaches from Humber to Scotland, and whatever Hengist and Horsus had possessed of Kent in the Time of Vortegirn. So that he in Obedience to his Commands, had arrived with eight hundred Ships fraught with Pagan Soldiers, and had entred into Covenant to obey the Traitor as his Sovereign; who had also drawn to his Assistance the Scots, Picts, Irish, and all others whom he knew to be Enemies to his Unkle. His whole Army, taking Pagans and Christians together, amounted to eighty thousand Men; with the Help of whom he met Arthur just upon his landing at the Port of Rutupi, and joining Battle with him made a very great Slaughter of his Men. For the same Day fell Augustel Z King
King of Albania, and Walgan the Kings Nephew, with innumerable others; Augusel was succeeded in his Kingdom by Eventus his Brother Urians Son, who afterwards performed many famous Exploits in those Wars. After they had at last with much Difficulty got ashore, they repaid back the Slaughter, and put Modred and his Army to Flight. For by a long Practice of War, they had learned an excellent Way of ordering their Forces; which was so, that while their Foot were employ'd either in an Assault or upon the Defensive, the Horse would come in upon a full speed obliquely, break through the Enemies Ranks, and so force them to fly. Notwithstanding this perjur'd Usurper got his Forces together again, and the Night following entred Winchester. As soon as Queen Guanhumara heard this, she immediately despairing of Success, fled from York to the City of Legions, where she resolved to lead a chaste Life among the Nuns in the Church of Julius the Martyr, and enter herself one of their Order.
Book XI. The British History. 355

CHAP. II.

Modred after being twice besieged and routed is killed. Arthur being wounded gives up the Kingdom to Constantine.

But Arthur, whose Anger was now much more inflamed, upon the Loss of so many hundreds of his Fellow Soldiers, after he had buried his Slain, went on the third Day to the City, and there besieged the Traitor; who notwithstanding was unwilling to desist from his Enterprise, but used all Methods to encourage his Adherents, and marching out with his Troops prepared to fight his Unkle. In the Battle that followed hereupon, great Numbers lost their Lives on both Sides; but at last his suffered most, so that he was forced to quit the Field shamefully. From hence he made a precipitate Flight, and without taking any Care for the Burial of his Slain, marched in haste towards Cornwall. Arthur being inwardly grieved that he should so often escape, forthwith pursued him into that Country as far as the River Cambula, where the other was expecting his Coming. And Modred, as he was the boldest of Men, and always the quickest at making an Attack, so he now imme-
immediately placed his Troops in Order, resolving either to conquer or die, rather than continue his Flight any longer. He had yet remaining with him sixty thousand Men, out of whom he composed three Bodies, which contained each of them six thousand six hundred and sixty six Men: But all the rest he joined in one Body; and having assigned to each of the other Parties their Leaders, he took the Command of this upon himself. After he had made this Disposition of his Forces, he endeavoured to animate them, and promised them the Estates of their Enemies if they came off with Victory. Arthur on the other Side also marshalled his Army, which he divided into nine square Companies, with a right and left Wing; and having appointed each of them their Commanders, exhorted them to make a total Rout of those Robbers and perjured Villains, who being brought over into the Island from foreign Countries at the Instance of the Arch-traitor, were attempting to rob them of all their Honours. He likewise told them that such a mixt Army composed of barbarous People of so many different Countries, and who were all raw Soldiers and unexperienced in War, would never be able to stand against such brave veteran Troops as they were, provided they did their Duty. After this Encouragement given by each General to his Fellow Soldiers, the Battle
Battle on a sudden begins with great Fury; wherein it would be as well grievous as tedious to relate the Slaughter, the cruel Havock, and the excess of Rage that was to be seen on both Sides. In this manner they spent a good part of the Day, till Arthur at last made a Push with his Company, consisting of six thousand six hundred and sixty Men, against that in which he knew Modred was, and opening a Way with their Swords, pierced quite through it, and made a most grievous Slaughter. For in this Assault fell the wicked Traitor himself, and many thousands with him. But notwithstanding the Loss of him, the rest did not fly, but running together from all Parts of the Field, maintained their Ground with an undaunted Courage. The Fight now grew more furious than ever, and proved almost fatal to all the Commanders and their Forces. For on Modred's Side fell Chelmeric, Elafius, Egbert, and Bunignus, Saxons: Gillapatric, Gillamor, Gillafel, and Gillarius, Irish: Also the Scots and Picts, with almost all their Leaders; On Arthur's Side, Olbriect King of Norway, Aschillius King of Dacia, Cador Limenic Cassibellaun, with many thousands of others, as well Britains as Foreigners, that he had brought with him. And even the renowned King Arthur himself was also mortally wounded; who being carried thence to the Isle of Avalon to be cured of
his Wounds, gave up the Crown of Britain to his Kinsman Constantine, the Son of Cador Duke of Cornwall, in the five hundred and forty second Year of our Lords Incarnation.

C H A P. III.

Constantine meets with Disturbances from the Saxons and Modred's Sons.

Upon Constantine's advancement to the Throne, the Saxons with the two Sons of Modred made Insurrection against him, though without Success; for after many Battles fought they fled, one to London, the other to Winchester, and possessed themselves of those Places. Then died St. Daniel the most devout Prelate of the Church of Bangor, and Theon Bishop of Gloucester was elected Archbishop of London. At the same Time also died David the most pious Archbishop of Legions, at the City of Menevia in his own Abbey; which he loved above all the other Monasteries of his Diocess, because St. Patrick, who had prophetically foretold his Birth, was the Founder of it. For during his Residence there among his Friars, he was taken with a sudden Illness of which he died, and at the Command of Malga King
King of the Venedotians was buried in that Church. He was succeeded in the Metropolitan See by Kinodius Bishop of the Church of Lampatern, who was thereby promoted to a higher Dignity.

CHAP. IV.

Constantine after having murdered the Sons of Modred, is himself killed by Conan.

But Constantine pursued the Saxons, and reduced them under his Yoke. He also took the two Sons of Modred, and one of them, who had fled for Sanctuary to the Church of St. Amphibalus in Winchester, he murdered before the Altar. The other had hid himself in a Convent of Friars at London, but at last was found out by him before the Altar, and there put to a cruel Death. Three Years after this he himself, by the Vengeance of God pursuing him, was killed by Conan, and buried close by Uther Pendragon within the Structure of Stones, which was set up with wonderful Art not far from Salisbury, and called in the English Tongue Stanheng.
AFTER him succeeded *Aurelius Conan*, a Youth of wonderful Valour, and his Nephew; who as he had gained the Monarchy of the whole Island, so he would have been worthy the Crown of it, had he not delighted in civil War. His Unkle, who ought to have reigned after *Constantine*, he raised Disturbances against; and cast into Prison; and then killing his two Sons obtained the Kingdom, but died in the second Year of his Reign.

Wortiporius being declared King conquers the Saxons.

AFTER Conan succeeded *Wortiporius*, against whom the *Saxons* made Insurrection, and brought over their Countrymen from *Germany* in a very great Fleet. But he gave them Battle, and came off with Victory; so that he obtained the Monarchy of
of the whole Kingdom, and governed the People carefully and peaceably four Years.

C H A P. VII.

Malgo King of Britain, and a most graceful Person, adds himself to Sodomy.

He succeeded Malgo one of the handsomest Men in Britain, a great Scourge of Tyrants, a Man of great Strength, extraordinary Munificence, and matchless Valour, but addicted very much to the detestable Vice of Sodomy, by which he made himself abominable to God. He also possessed the whole Island, to which, after a cruel War, he added the six provincial Islands, viz. Ireland, Ifeland, Godland, the Orkneys, Norway and Dacia.
Britain, in the Flame of a Civil War under King Careticus, is miserably wasted by the Saxons and Africans.

After Malgo succeeded Careticus, a Lover of Civil Wars, and hateful to God and to the Britains. The Saxons discovering his fickle Disposition, went to Ireland for Gormund King of the Africans, who had arrived there with a very great Fleet, and had subdued that Country. From thence, at their traiterous Instigation, he failed over into Britain, which the perfidious Saxons in one Part, in another the Britains by their continual Wars among themselves, were wholly laying waste. Entring therefore into Alliance with the Saxons, he made War upon King Careticus, and after several Battles fought drove him from City to City, till at length he forced him to Cirecester and there besieged him. Here Isembard the Nephew of Lewis King of the Franks came to him, made a League of Amity with him, and out of Respect to him renounced the Christian Faith, on Condition he would assist him to gain the Kingdom of Gaul from his Unkle; by whom he said he
he was forcibly and unjustly expelled out of it. At last after the taking and burning of the City, he had another Fight with Caretious, and made him fly beyond the Severn into Wales. This done he made an utter Desolation in the Countries, set Fire to the adjacent Cities, and continued these Outrages, till he had almost burnt the whole Surface of the Island from the one Sea to the other; so that the Tillage was every where destroyed, and both with Fire and Sword a general Destruction made of the Husbandmen and Clergy. This terrible Calamity made the rest to fly whithersoever they had any Hopes of Safety.

C H A P. IX.

The Author upbraids the Britains.

"Why foolish Nation, oppressed with the Weight of thy abominable Wickedness, why didst thou in thy insatiable Thirst after civil Wars, so much weaken thy self by domestick Confusions, that whereas formerly thou broughtest distant Kingdoms under thy Yoke, now like a good Vineyard degenerated and turned to Bitterness, thou canst not defend thy Country, nor Wives, nor
"nor Children, against thy Enemies? Go
on, go on in thy civil Diffensions, little
understanding the Saying in the Gospel,
"Every Kingdom divided against itself shall
be brought to Desolation, and a House divid-
ed against itself shall fall. Since then thy
Kingdom was divided against itself; since
the Rage of civil Discord, and the Fumes
of Envy, have darkened thy Mind; since
thy Pride would not suffer thee to pay
Obedience to one King; thou seest there-
fore thy Country made desolate by most
impious Pagans, and thy Houses falling
one upon another; which shall be the
"Cause of lasting Sorrow to thy Posterity.
"For the barbarous Lionesses shall see their
"Whelps enjoying the Towns, Cities and
"other Possessions of thy Children; from
"which they shall be miserably expelled,
"and hardly if ever recover their former
"flourishing State.
Loegria is again inhabited by the Saxons. The Britains with their Bishops retire into Cornwall and Wales.

But to return to the History; after the inhuman Tyrant with many Thousands of his Africans had made a Devastation almost over the whole Island, the greater Part of it called Loegria, he yielded up to the Saxons, whose Villany had been the Occasion of his Arrival. Therefore the Remainder of the Britains retired into the Western Parts of the Kingdom, that is, Cornwall and Wales; from whence they continually made frequent and fierce Irruptions upon the Enemy. The three Archbishops, viz. He of Legions, Theon of London, and Thaddeus of York, when they had beheld all the Churches subject to their Jurisdiction, lying level with the Ground, fly with all the Clergy that remained after so great a Destruction, to the Coverts of the Woods in Wales, carrying with them the Reliques of the Saints, for Fear the sacred Bones of so many holy Men of old might be destroyed by the Barbarians, if they should leave them in that imminent Danger, and themselves instantly suffer Martyrdom.
tyrdom. Many more went over in a very great Fleet into Annand-Britain; so that the whole Church of the two Provinces, Loegria and Northumberland, had its Convents destroyed. But these Things I shall relate elsewhere, when I translate the Book concerning their Banishment.

CHAP. XI.

The Britains lose their Kingdom.

For a long Time after this the Britains lost the Crown of the Kingdom, and the Monarchy of the Island, and made no Endeavours to recover their ancient Dignity: But even that Part of the Country which yet remained to them, being subject not to one King, but three Tyrants, they often wasted by civil Wars. But neither did the Saxons as yet obtain the Crown, but were also subject to three Kings, and infested sometimes one another, sometimes the Britains.
Augustin being sent by Pope Gregory into Britain, preaches the Gospel to the Angles.

In the mean time Augustin was sent by Pope St. Gregory into Britain, to preach the Word of God to the Angles, who being blinded with Pagan Superstition, had entirely extinguished Christianity in that Part of the Island which they possessed. But among the Britains, the Christian Faith yet flourished, and never failed among them from the Time of Pope Eleutherius, when it was first planted here. But after Augustin came, he found in their Province seven Bishopricks and an Archbishoprick, all filled with most devout Prelates, and a great Number of Abbies; by which the Flock of Christ was still kept in good Order. Among the rest there was in the City of Bangor a most noble Church, in which it is reported there was so great a Number of Monks, that when the Monastery was divided into seven Parts, each having their Priors over them, not one of them had less than three hundred Monks, who all lived by the Labour of their own Hands. The Name of their Abbot was Dinoot, a Man admirably
admirably skilled in the liberal Arts; who, when *Augustin* required the Subjection of the *British* Bishops, and would have persuaded them to undertake the Work of the Gospel with him among the *Angles*, answered him with several Arguments, that they owed no Subjection to him, neither would they preach to their Enemies; since they had their own Archbishop, and because the *Saxon* Nation persisted in depriving them of their Country. For this Reason they esteemed them their mortal Enemies, reckoned their Faith and Religion as nothing, and would no more communicate with the *Angles* than with Dogs.

---

**CHAP. XIII.**

*Edelfrid* kills a great Number of the *British* Monks, but is at last routed by the *Britains*.

**Therefore** Hedelbert King of Kent, when he saw the *Britains* disdaining Subjection to *Augustin*, and that they despised his Preaching, was highly provoked, and stirred up *Edelfrid* King of the *Northumbrians*, and the other petty Kings of the *Saxons*, to raise a great Army, and march to the City of *Bangor*, to destroy
ftroy the Abbot Dinppt, and the rest of the Clergy who held them in Contempt. At his Instigation therefore they Assembled a prodigious Army, and in their March to the Province of the Britains, came to Legeceter, where Brocinail Consul of the City was expecting their Coming. To the same City were come innumerable Monks and Hermits from several Provinces of the Britains, but especially from the City of Bangor, to pray for the Safety of their People. Whereupon Edelfrid King of the Northumbrians, collecting all his Forces joined Battle with Brocinail, who having a less Army to withstand him, at last quitted the City and fled; though not without having made a very great Slaughter of the Enemy. But Edelfrid, when he had taken the City, and understood upon what Occasion the Monks were come thither, commanded his Men to turn their Arms first against them; and so two hundred of them were honoured with the Crown of Martyrdom, and admitted into the Kingdom of Heaven that very Day. From thence this Saxon Tyrant proceeded on his March to Bangor; but upon the News of his outrageous Madnefs, the Leaders of the Britains, viz. Blederio Duke of Cornwall, Margadud King of the Demetians, and Caduan of the Venedotians, came from all Parts to meet him, and joining Battle with him, wounded him, and forced A a him
him to fly; and besides killed of his Army to the Number of ten thousand and sixty six Men. On the Britains Side fell Blederic Duke of Cornwall, who was their Commander in those Wars.
FTER this all the Princes of the Britains met together at the City of Legecestre, and consented to make Caduan their King, that under his Command they might pursue Edelfrid beyond the Humber. Accordingly as soon as he was crowned, they flocked together from all Parts and passed the Humber; Of which when Edelfrid had Intelligenc
gence, he entered into a Confederacy with all the Saxon Kings, and went to meet Caduan. At last as they were forming their Troops for a Battle, their Friends came, and made Peace between them on these Terms; That Caduan should enjoy that Part of Britain which lies on this Side the Humber, and Edelfrid that which is beyond it. As soon as they had confirmed this Agreement with an Oath made to their Hostages, there commenced such a Friendship between them, that they had all Things common. In the mean Time it happened, that Edelfrid banished his own Wife and married another, and bore so great a Hatred to her that was banished, that he would not suffer her to live in the Kingdom of Northumberland. Whereupon she being with Child went to King Caduan, to desire that by his Mediation she might be restored to her Husband. But when Edelfrid could by no Means be brought to consent to it, she continued to live with Caduan, till she was delivered of the Son which she had conceived. A little Time after her Delivery, Caduan also had a Son born to him by the Queen his Wife, she having been big at the same Time. Then were the two Boys brought up together in a Manner suitable to their royal Birth, one of which was called Cadwalla, the other Edwin. When they were come up near to Mens Eftate, their Parents sent
sent them to Salomon King of the Armorican Britains, that in his Court they might learn the Discipline of War, and other Princely Qualifications. This Prince therefore received them graciously, and admitted them to an Intimacy with him; so that there was none of their Age in the whole Court, that had a freer Access to, or could more familiarly discourse with the King than they. At last he himself was an Eye-witness of their Exploits against the Enemy, in which they very much signalized their Valour.

CHAP. II.

Cadwallo breaks the Covenant he had made with Edwin.

IN Process of Time when their Parents were dead, they returned to Britain, where they took upon them the Government of the Kingdom, and began to Practice the same Friendship their Fathers had done. Two Years after this, Edwin asked Leave of Cadwallo to wear a Crown, and to celebrate the same Solemnities, as had been used of old in the Parts of Northumberland. And when they had begun a Treaty upon this Subject by the River Douglas, that the
Matter might be adjusted according to the Advice of their wise Counsellors; it happened that Cadwallo was laying on the other Side of the River in the Lap of a certain Nephew of his, whose Name was Brian. While Ambassadors were negotiating between them, Brian wept, and shed Tears so plentifully, that the Kings Face and Beard was wet with them. The King imaginating that it rained, lifted up his Face, and seeing the young Man overflowing with Tears, asked him the Occasion of so sudden Grief. "Good Reason, said he, have I and the whole British Nation to weep continually, which has groaned under the Oppression of Barbarians ever since the Time of Malgo, and has not yet got a Prince, to restore it to its ancient flourishing State. And even the little Honour that it had left, is lessened by your Indulgence; since the Saxons, who are only Strangers, and always Traitors to our Country, must now be permitted to wear the same Crown as you do. For when once they shall attain to regal Dignity, it will be a great Addition to their Glory in the Country from whence they came; and they may sooner invite over their Countrymen, for the utter Extirpation of our Race. For they have been always accustomed to Treachery, and never to keep Faith with any: Which I think should be a Reason for
for our keeping them under, and not for exalting them. When King Vortegern first retained them in his Service, they made a shew of living peaceably, and fighting for our Country, till they had an Opportunity of practising their Wick-edness; and then they returned Evil for Good, betray’d him, and made a cruel Massacre of the People of the Kingdom. Afterwards they betray’d Aurelius Ambro-sius, to whom, even after the most tre-mendous Oaths of Fidelity, at a Banquet with him they gave a Draught of Poison. They also betray’d Arthur, when setting aside the Covenant by which they were bound, they joined with his Nephew Modred, and fought against him. Lastly they broke Faith with King Caretius, and brought in upon him Gormund King of the Africans, by whose Disturbances our People were robbed of their Coun-try, and the King scandalously driven out.
A Quarrel between Cadwallo and Edwin.

At the mentioning of these Things by him, Cadwallo repented of his entring upon this Treaty, and sent Word to Edwin, that he could by no Means induce his Counsellors to consent to his Petition. For they alledge, that it is contrary to Law and the ancient Establishment, that an Island, which has always had no more than one Crown, should be now under Subjection to two Crowned Heads. This Message incensed Edwin, and made him break off the Conference, and retire into Northumberland, saying, he would be crowned without Cadwallo's Leave. When Cadwallo was told this, he declared to him by his Ambassadors, that he would cut off his crowned Head, if he presumed to wear a Crown within the Kingdom of Britain.
C H A P. IV.

Cadwallo being vanquished by Edwin is driven out of the Kingdom.

This proved the Occasion of a War between them, in which after several Engagements between their Men, they at last met together themselves beyond the Humber, and had a Battle, wherein Cadwallo lost many thousand of his Followers, and was put to Flight. From hence he marched with Precipitation through Albania, and went over to Ireland. But Edwin after this Victory, led his Army through the Provinces of the Britains, and burning the Cities before him, grievously tortured the Citizens and Country People. During this Exercise of his Cruelty, Cadwallo never ceased endeavouring to return back to his Country in a Fleet, but without Success; because to whatever Port he steered, Edwin met him with his Forces, and hindered his landing. For there was come to him from Spain a very skilful Southsayer named Pollitus, who by the Flight of Birds, and the Courses of the Stars, foretold him all the Disasters that would happen. By this means Edwin getting Knowledge of Cadwallo's Return, prepared to meet him, and shattered his Ships so that he
he drowned his Men and beat him off from all his Ports. Cadwallo, not knowing what Course to take, was almost in Despair of ever returning. At last it came into his Head, to go to Salomon King of the Armori-can Britains, that he might desire his Assistance and Advice, to enable him to return to his Kingdom. And so as he was steering his Course towards Armorica, a very strong Tempest rose on a sudden, which dispersed the Ships of his Companions, and in a short Time left no two of them together. The Pilot of the Kings Ship was seized immediately with so great a Fear, that quitting the Stern, he left the Vessel to the Disposal of Fortune; so that all that Night it was tossed up and down in great Danger by the raging Waves. The next Morning they arrived at a certain Island called Garnareia, where with very great Difficulty they got ashore. Cadwallo was forthwith seized with such Grief for the Loss of his Companions, that for three Days and Nights together he refused to eat, but lay Sick upon his Bed. The fourth Day he was taken with a very great longing for some Venison, and causing Brian to be called, made him acquainted with it. Whereupon Brian took his Bow and Quiver, and went through the Island, that if he could light on any wild Beast, he might get a Repast of it. And when he had walked over the whole Island,
Island, without finding what he was in Quest of, he was extremely concerned that he could not gratify his Masters Desire; and was afraid his Sickness would prove Mortal, if his Longing were not satisfied. He therefore fell upon a new Device, and cut a piece of Flesh out of his own Thigh, which he roasted upon a Spit, and carried to the King for Venison. The King thinking it to be real Venison, began to eat of it to his great Refreshment, admiring the Sweetness of it, which he fancied exceeded any Flesh he ever had tasted before. At last when he had fully satisfied his Appetite, he became cheerfuller and brisker, and in three Days Time was perfectly well again. Then the Wind standing fair, he gets ready his Ship; and hoisting Sails they pursue their Voyage, and arrive at the City Kidaleta. From thence they go to King Salomon, by whom they are received kindly and with all suitable Respect; And as soon as he had learned the Occasion of their Coming, he made them a Promise of Assistance, and spoke to them as follows.
The Speech of Salomon King of Armorica to Cadwallo.

"It is a Grief to Us, Noble Youths, that the Country of your Ancestors is oppressed by a barbarous Nation, and that you are ignominiously driven out of it. But since other Men are able to defend their Kingdoms, it is a Wonder your People should lose so fruitful an Island, and not be able to withstand the Nation of the Angles, whom our Countrymen have in Contempt. While the People of this Country lived together with yours in your Britain, they bore sway over all the provincial Kingdoms, and never could be subdued by any Nation but the Romans. Neither did the Romans do this by their own Power, as I have been lately informed, but by a Dissension among the Nobility of the Island. And even the Romans, though they held it under their Subjection for a Time, yet upon the Loss and Slaughter of their Rulers, were driven out with Disgrace. But after the Britains came into this Province under the Conduct of Maximian and Conan, those that remained never had the Happines afterwards of holding an uninterrupted Possession of the Crown. For though
though many of their Princes maintained the ancient Dignity of their Ancestors; yet their weak Heirs that succeeded, and which were more in Number, entirely lost it, upon the Invasion of their Enemies. Therefore I am grieved for the Weakness of your People, since we are of the same Race with you, and the Name Britains is common to you, and to the Nation that bravely defends their Country, which you see at War with all its Neighbours.

C H A P. VI.

Cadwallo's Answer to Salomon.

When he had concluded his Speech, Cadwallo, who was a little put to the Blush, answered him after this Manner: Royal Sir, whose Descent is from a Race of Kings; I give you many Thanks for your Promise of assisting me to recover my Kingdom. But what you say is a Wonder, that my People have not maintained the Dignity of their Ancestors, since the Time that the Britains came to these Provinces, I am far from thinking to be such. For the noblest Men of the whole Kingdom followed those Leaders, and there remained only the baser Sort to enjoy their Honours; who being raised to a high Quality,
Quality, on a sudden were puffed up above what their Station required; and grown wanton with Affluence of Riches, gave themselves up to commit such Fornication, as is not so much as named among the Gentiles; and (as Gildas the Historian testifies,) were not only guilty of this Vice, but of all the Enormities that are incident to humane Nature. And that which chiefly prevailed, to the entire Overthrow of all Goodness, was the Hatred of Truth with its Assertors, the Love of a Lye with the Inventors of it, the embracing of Evil for Good, the Veneration of Wickedness for Grace, the receiving of Satan for an Angel of Light. Kings were anointed, not for the sake of God, but such as were more cruel than the rest; and were soon after Murdered by their Anointers, without Examination, having chosen others yet more cruel in their Room. But if any of them shewed any Mildness, or seemed a Favourer of Truth, against him, as the Subverter of Britain, was all their Malice and their Weapons bent. In short, Things pleasing to God or displeasing, with them had the same Weight, if the worse were not the weightier. Therefore were all Affairs managed contrary to publick Safety, as if the true Physician of all had left them destitute of Cure. And thus was every Thing done
done without Discretion, and that not only by Secular Men, but by the Lords Flock, and its Pastors. Therefore it is not to be wondered, that such a degenerate Race, so odious to God for their Vices, left a Country which they had so heinous-ly corrupted. For God was willing to execute his Vengeance upon them, by suf-fering a Foreign People to come upon them, who were to drive us out of our Possessions. Notwithstanding it would be a worthy Act, if God would permit it, to restore our Subjects to their ancient Dignity, to prevent the Reproach that may be thrown upon our Race, that we were weak Ru-lers, who did not exert ourselves in our own Defence. And I do the more freely ask your Assistance, as you are of the same Blood with us. For the great Mal-go, who was the fourth King of Britain after Arthur, had two Sons, named En-nianus and Runo. Ennianus begot Belin, Belin Jago, Jago Caduan who was my Father. Runo, who after his Brothers Death was driven out by the Saxons, came to this Province and bestow'd his Daughter on Duke Hoel, the Son of that great Hoel who shared with Arthur in his Conquests. Of her was born Alan, of Alan Hoel your Father, who while he lived was a Terroure to all Gaul.
Brian kills Edwins Magician.

In the mean Time while he was spending the Winter with Salomon, they entered upon a Resolution, that Brian should pass over into Britain, and take some Method to kill Edwins Magician, lest he might by his usual Art inform him of Cadwallo's coming. And when with this Design he had arrived at Hamo's Port, he took upon himself the Habit of a poor Man, and made himself a staff of Iron sharp at the End, with which he might kill the Magician, if he should happen to meet with him. From thence he went to York, where Edwin then resided; and when entered that City joined himself to the poor People, that waited for Alms before the Kings Gate. But as he was going to and fro, it happened that his Sister came out of the Hall, with a Basin in her Hand, to fetch Water for the Queen. She had been taken by Edwin at the City of Worcester, when after Cadwallo's Flight he was acting his Hostilities upon the Provinces of the Britains. As she was therefore passing by Brian, he immediately knew her, and breaking forth into Tears, called to her with a low Voice; at which
the Damfel turning her Face, was in Doubt at first who it should be, but upon a nearer Approach discovered it to be her Brother, and was near falling into a Swoon, for Fear he might by some unlucky Accident be known and taken by the Enemy. She therefore forbore Saluting him; or entering into familiar Discourse with him, but told him in short, as if she was talking upon some other Subject, the State of the Court, and shew'd him the Magician he was enquiring for, who as it happened was at that very Time walking among the poor People, while the Alms was a Distributing among them. Brian, as soon as he had taken Knowledge of the Man, ordered his Sifter to Steal out privately from her Apartment the Night following, and come to him hard by an old Church without the City, where he would conceal himself in Expectation of her. Then dismissing her, he thrust himself in among the Crowd of poor People, in that Part where Pellitus was placing them. And the same Moment he got Access to him, he lifted up his Staff, and at once gave him such a Stab under the Breast as killed him. This done, he threw away his Staff, and passed undistinguished among the rest, and unsuspected by any of the Bystanders, and by good Providence got to the Place of Concealment which he had appointed. His Sifter, when Night came on, endeavoured what
what she could to get out, but was not able; because Edwin, being terrified at the Killing of Pellitus, had set a strict Watch about the Court, who making a narrow Search refused to let her go out. When Brian found this, he retired from that Place and went to Exeter, where he called together the Britains, and told them what he had done. Afterwards having dispatched away Messengers to Cadwallo, he fortified that City, and sent Word to all the British Nobility, that they should bravely defend their Cities and Towns, and joyfully expect Cadwallo's coming to their Relief in a short Time, with auxiliary Forces from Salomon. Upon the spreading of this News over the whole Island, Peanda King of the Mercians with a very great Army of Saxons came to Exeter, and besieged Brian.

C H A P. VIII.

Cadwallo takes Peanda, and routs his Army.

In the mean Time arrived Cadwallo with ten thousand Men, whom King Salomon had delivered to him; and with them marched straight to the Siege against King Peanda. But as he was going, he divided his
his Forces into four Parts, and then made no Delay to advance and join Battel with the Enemy, wherein Peanda was forthwith taken, and his Army routed. For finding no other Way for his own Safety, he surrendered himself to Cadwallo, and gave Hostages, with a Promise that he would assist him against the Saxons. Cadwallo after this Success against him, summoned together his Nobility that had been a long Time in a decaying State, and marched to Northumberland against Edwin, and made continual Devastations in that Country. When Edwin was informed of it, he assembled all the petty Kings of the Angles, and meeting the Britains in a Field called Hevefeld, presently gave them Battle, but was killed, and almost all the People with him, together with Offrid his Son, and Godbold King of the Orkneys, who had come to their Assistance.

C H A P. IX.

Cadwallo kills Ofric and Adan in Fight.

HAVING thus obtained the Victory, Cadwallo marched through the Provinces of the Angles, and committed such Outrages upon the Saxons, that he neither spared Age not
nor Sex: For his Resolution being to extirpate the whole Race out of Britain, all that ever he found he put to extreme Tortures. After this he had a Battel with Osric Edwins Successor, and killed him together with his two Nephews, who ought to have reigned after him. He also killed Adan King of the Scots, who came to their Assistance.

CHAP. X.

Oswald Routs Peanda in Fight, but is killed by Cadwallo coming in upon him.

Their Deaths made Room for Oswald to succeed to the Kingdom of Northumberland; but Cadwallo drove him with the rest that had given him Disturbance, to the very Wall, which the Emperor Severus had built of old between Britain and Scotland. Afterwards he sent Peanda King of the Mercians, and the greatest Part of his Army to the same Place, to give him Battel. But Oswald, as he was Besieged one Night by Peanda in the Place called Hevesfeld, that is, the heavenly Field, set up there our Lords Cross, and commanded his Men to speak with a very loud Voice these Words; “Let us all kneel down, and pray...”
"the Almighty, living and true God, to defend us from the proud Army of the King of Britain, and his wicked Leader Peanda. For he knows how justly we wage this War for the Safety of our People." They all therefore did as he commanded them, and advanced at Break of Day against the Enemy, and by the Merit of their Faith gained the Victory. Cadwallo upon hearing this News, being inflamed with Rage, assembled his Army, and went in pursuit of the holy King Oswald; and in a Battel he had with him at a Place called Burne, Peanda broke in upon him and Killed him.

CHAP. XI.

Ofwin submits to Cadwallo. Peanda desires leave of Cadwallo to make War against him.

Oswald with many thousands of his Men being killed, his Brother Ofwin succeeded him in the Kingdom of Northumberland, and by making large Presents of Gold and Silver to Cadwallo, who was now possessed of the Government of all Britain, made his Peace and Submission to him. Upon this Alfred his Brother and Eidwald his Brothers Son began an Insurrection; but being
being not able to hold out against him, they fled to Peanda King of the Mercians, desiring him to assemble his Army and pass the Humber with them, that he might deprive Oswn of his Kingdom. But Peanda fearing to break the Peace, which Cadwallo had settled through the Kingdom of Britain, deferred beginning any Disturbance without his Leave, till he could some Way work him up, either to make War himself upon Oswn, or allow him the Liberty of doing it. At a certain Pentecost therefore, when Cadwallo was celebrating that Festival at London, and for the greater Solemnity wore the Crown of Britain, all the Kings of the Angles, excepting only Oswn, being present, as also all the Dukes of the Britains; Peanda went to the King, and enquired of him the Reason, why Oswn alone was wanting, when all the Princes of the Saxons were present. Cadwallo answered, That his Sickness was the Cause of it; to which the other reply'd, That he had sent over to Germany for more Saxons, to revenge the Death of his Brother Oswald upon them both. He told him further, that he had broke the Peace of the Kingdom, as being the sole Author of the War and Distension among them; since Edelfrid King of Northumberland and Oidwald his Brothers Son, had been by him harassed with a War, and driven out of their own Country. He also
also desired Leave, either to kill him, or banish him the Kingdom.

CHAP. XII.

Cadwalla is advised to suffer Peanda to make an Insurrection against Ofwin.

THIS Matter made the King enter upon various Thoughts, and hold a private Consultation with his intimate Friends, what Course to take. Among the rest that offered their Proposals, Margaud King of the Demetians, spoke as follows; " Royal Sir, since you have proposed to expel the Race of the Angles from the Coasts of Britain, why do you alter your Resolution, and suffer them to continue in Peace among us? At least you may permit them to fall out among themselves, and let our Country owe its Deliverance to their own civil Broils. No Faith is to be kept with one that knows nothing but Treachery, and is continually laying Snares for him to whom he owes Fidelity. Such have the Saxons always been to our Nation, from the very first Time of their coming among us. What Faith ought we to keep with them? Let Pean-
“... immediately have Leave to go against Oswine, that by this civil Distension and Destruction of one another, our Island may get rid of them.

C H A P. XIII.

Peanda is killed by Oswine: Cadwallo dies.

By these and other Words to the same Effect, Cadwallo was prevailed upon to grant Peanda the Leave he desired: Who thereupon assembling together a vast Army went to the Humber, and by laying waste that Country, began a fierce War upon the King. Oswine was at last reduced to such Extremity, that he was forced to promise him innumerable Royal Ornaments, and other Presents more than one would believe, to make him desist from ruining his Country, and return home without committing any more Hostilities. But when the other could by no Entreaties be prevailed upon to do it, the King in Hopes of Divine Assistance, though he had a less Army, however gave him Battle near the River Winned, and having killed Peanda and thirty other Commanders, gained the Victory. Peanda being killed, Wulfred his Son, by a Grant from Cadwallo,
wallo, succeeded to the Kingdom, and joining with Eba and Edbert two Leaders of the Mercians, rebelled against Oswin; but at last by Cadwallo's Command made Peace with him. At length after forty eight Years were expired, that most noble and potent King of the Britains Cadwallo, being grown infirm with Age and Sickness, departed this Life upon the fifteenth of the Calends of December. The Britains embalmed his Body, and placed it with wonderful Art in a brazen Statue, which was cast according to the Measure of his Stature. This Statue they set up with complete Armour, upon an admirable beautiful brazen Horse, over the Western Gate of London, for a Monument of the abovementioned Victory, and for a Terrow to the Saxons. They also built under it a Church in Honour of St. Martin, in which Divine Obsequies are celebrated for him and the faithful decea-

C H A P. XIV.

Cadwallader succeeds Cadwallo.

H e was succeeded in the Kingdom by Cadwallader his Son, whom Bede calls the Youth Elidualda. At first he maintained
ned the Government with Peace and Honour, but after twelve Years Enjoyment of the Crown, he fell into a Fit of Sickness, and a Civil War broke out among the Britains. His Mother was Peanda's Sister, by the same Father but a different Mother; descended from the noble Race of the Genuifjeans. For Cadwallo, after his Reconciliation with her Brother, made her the Partner of his Bed, and had Cadwallader by her.

CHAP. XV.

The Britains are compelled by Pestilence and Famine to leave Britain. Cadwalladers Lamentation.

During his Sickness, the Britains (as we said before) quarrelling among themselves, make a wicked Destruction of a rich Country; and this again was attended with another Misfortune. For this besotted People was punished with a grievous and memorable Famine; so that every Province was destitute of all manner of Sustenance, but what could be taken in Hunting. After the Famine followed a terrible Pestilence, which in a short Time destroyed
destroyed such Multitudes of People, that the Living were not sufficient to bury the Dead. Those of them that remained, flying their Country in whole Troops together, went to the Countries beyond Sea, and while they were under Sail they with a mournful howling Voice Sung; Thou hast given us, O God, like Sheep appointed for Meat, and hast scattered us among the Heathen. Also Cadwallader himself, in his Voyage with his miserable Fleet to Armorica, made this Addition to the Lamentation. "Wo to us Sinners, for our grievous Impieties, wherewith we have not ceased to provoke God, while we had space for Repentance. Therefore does the Revenge of his Power lye heavy upon us, and extirpate us out of our native Soil; which neither the Romans of Old, nor the Scots or Picts afterwards, nor yet the Treacherous Saxons with all their Craft were able to do. But in vain have we recovered our Country so often from them; since it was not the Will of God, that we should perpetually hold the Government of it. He who is the true Judge, when he saw we were by no means to be reclaimed from our Wickedness, and that no humane Power could expel our Race, was willing to chastife our Folly himself; and has turned his Anger against us, by which we are driven out in Crowds from

our
our native Country. Return therefore ye Romans; return Scots and Picts; return Ambrons and Saxons: Behold, Britain lays open to you being now by the Wrath of God made desolate, which you were never able to do. It is not your Valour that expells us; but the Power of the supreme King, whom we never ceased to provoke.

CHAP. XVI.

Cadwallader with his People goes to Alan: The Saxons jeize all Britain.

With these dolorous Complaints he arrived at the Armorican Coast, and went with his whole Company to King Alan the Nephew of Salomon, by whom he was honourably received. So that Britain being now defitute of its ancient Inhabitants, excepting a few in Wales that escaped the general Mortality, became a frightful Place even to the Britains themselves for eleven Years after. Neither was it at the same Time any kinder to the Saxons, who died in it without Intermission. Notwithstanding the Remainder of them, after this raging Plague was ceased, according to their old
old Custom sent Word over to their Countrymen, that the Island of Britain was now free'd of its native Inhabitants, and lay open to them, if they would come over to inhabit it. As soon as they had received this Information, that obdious People, gathering together an innumerable Multitude of Men and Women, arrived in the Parts of Northumberland, and inhabited the Provinces that lay desolate from Albania to Cornwall. For there was now no Body to hinder them, excepting the wretchedly poor Remains of the Britains, who continued together in the Thickets of the Woods in Wales. From that Time the Power of the Britains ceas'd in the Island, and the Angles began their Reign.

C H A P. XVII.

Cadwallader is by the Voice of an Angel deterred from returning to Britain.

After some space of Time, when the People had recovered Strength, Cadwallader being mindful of his Kingdom, which was now free from the Contagion of the Pestilence, desired Assistance of Alan towards the recovering of his Dominions.
The King granted his Request; but as he was getting ready a Fleet, he was commanded by the loud Voice of an Angel to desist from his Enterprize. For God was not willing the Britains should Reign any longer in the Island, before the Time came which Merlin prophetically foretold Arthur of. It also commanded him to go to Rome to Pope Sergius, where after doing Penance he should be inrolled among the Saints. It told him withal, that the Britains by the Merit of their Faith should again recover the Island, when the Time decreed for it was come. But this would not be accomplished, before they should be possessed of his Reliques, and transport them from Rome into Britain. At the same Time also should the Reliques of the other Saints be found, which had been hid on Account of the Invasion of Pagans; and then at last would they recover their lost Kingdom. When the holy Prince had received the heavenly Message, he went straight to King Alan, and gave him an Account of what had been told him.
Book XII. The British History.

CHAP. XVIII.

Cadwallader goes to Rome and dies.

Then Alan had Recourse to several Books, as the Prophesies of the Eagle that prophesied at Shaftesbury, and the Verles of Sibyl and Merlin; and made diligent search in them, to see whether the Revelation made to Cadwallader agreed with those written Oracles. And when he could find nothing contradictory to it, he admonished Cadwallader to submit to the Divine Dispensation, and laying aside the Thoughts of Britain, perform what the Angelical Voice had commanded him. But moved him withal, to send his Son Ivor and his Nephew Ini over into the Island, to govern the Remainder of the Britains; for Fear a Nation, that was descended of so ancient a Race, might lose their Liberty by the Incursions of Barbarians. Then Cadwallader renouncing worldly Cares for the sake of God and his everlasting Kingdom, went to Rome, and was confirmed by Pope Sergius: And being seized with a sudden Illness was upon the twelfth of the Calends of May, in the six hundred and eighty ninth Year of our Lords Incarnation, free’d from the Corruption of the Flesh, and admitted into the Glories of the heavenly Kingdom.
CHAP. XIX.

The two Britains Ivor and Ini in vain infest the Nation of the Angles. Adelstan the first King of the Angles.

As soon as Ivor and Ini had got together their Ships, they with all the Forces they could raise arrived in the Island, and for forty nine Years together cruelly infested the Nation of the Angles, but to little Purpose. For the abovementioned Mortality and Famine, together with the inveterate Spirit of Faction that was among them, had made this proud People so much degenerate, that they were not able to gain any Advantage of the Enemy. And being now also overrun with Barbarity, they were no longer called Britains, but Gualenses, Welsemen; a Word derived either from Gualo their Leader, or Guales their Queen, or from their Barbarity. But the Saxons managed Affairs with more Prudence, maintained Peace and Concord among themselves, tilled their Grounds, rebuilt their Cities and Towns, and so throwing off the Dominion of the Britains, bore sway over all Loegria, under their Leader Adelstan, who first wore a Crown amongst
amongst them. But the Welshmen, being very much degenerated from the Nobility of the Britains, never after recovered the Monarchy of the Island; on the contrary, what by Quarrels among themselves, what by Wars with the Saxons, their Country was a perpetual Scene of Misery and Slaughter.

CHAP. XX.

Jeffrey of Monmouth's Conclusion.

But as for the Kings that have succeed-ed among them in Wales, since that Time, I leave the History of them to Karedoc of Luncarvan my Contemporary; as I do also the Kings of the Saxons to William of Malmesbury, and Henry of Huntington. But I advise them to be silent concerning the Kings of the Britains, since they have not that Book writ in the British Tongue, which Walter Archdeacon of Oxford brought out of Britain, and which being a true History published in Honour of those Princes. I have thus taken Care to Translate.

FINIS.
An EXPLICATION of the ancient Names of Countries, Cities, Rivers, Mountains, &c. mentioned in this History.

N. B. Those Names are here omitted, which the History itself explains wherever it mentions them: As also those, concerning which we have now no certain Knowledge, or probable Conjecture.

MOUNT Aged or Maidens Castle, now Edinburgh Castle.

Akalon. Milton conjectures the Author means the Achelous, or the Acheron, both Rivers in Greece.

Alba, in Book I. Chap. 3. it means the City of Albano in Italy, but elsewhere the River Aube in France.

Albania, Scotland.

Aklud, Dunbritton in Scotland.

Cec 2 Allobroges,
The Explication of

Allobroges, the ancient Inhabitants of a Part of Savoy and Switzerland.
Mountain of Ambrius, Ambresbury in Wiltshire.
Andegavia, the Duchy of Anjou in France.
Aquitain, the Province of Guienne in France.
Armorica, Britain in France.
Isle of Avalon, Glassenburg in Somersetshire.
Augustodunum, Autun in France.

B.

B A D O N, Bath in Somersetshire.
Bajoce, Bayeur in France.
Bangor, Banchor or Bonium in Flintshire, and not the City of this Name in Caernarvonshire.
Bolonia, Bologna in France.

C.

C A L A T E R I U M, the Forest of Galtres in the North-Riding of Yorkshire.
Wood of Caledon, according to Higdens Polychronicon, means in B. IX. Ch. 3. Celidon Wood near Lincoln; though perhaps in some other Places of this Book, particularly in Merlin's Prophecy, it may mean the Caledonian Wood in Scotland.
Cambula, the River Camel or Alan in Cornwall.
Names of Places.

Camus, no doubt the Author intends by it Cadmus, now Caen in Normandy.
Carguit or Warguit, probably Warwick.
Cenomania, the Country of Maine in France. Cirencester, Cirencester in Gloucestershire. City of Claudius, Gloucester. Cloarius, a Hill upon the Banks of the River Wye in Herefordshire: Its modern Name I do not find. See Genoreu.

D.

DACIA, our ancient English Historians commonly mean by it Denmark. Daneian Wood, Dean's Forest in Gloucestershire.

E.

EPIFFROD, by Nennius and other Historians called Epifford, thought by Camden to be Alesford in Kent. Erir, Snowdon-Hill in Wales.

Cc 3 GANIA,
The Explication of G.

GANIA, the River in Herefordshire. Garnareia, the Name is unknown, tho' the Author probably means the Isle of Guernsey. Genoreu, according to Archbishop Usher, is a Village upon the Wye in Herefordshire, that still retains the same Name. Godland, the Isle of Gothland in the Baltic Sea.

H.

HAMO's Port, Southampton. Hergin, Herefordshire. Hervelfeld, supposed to be Haledon in Northumberland.

K.

Names of Places.

L.

**LAMGOEMAGOT**, the Hau near Plymouth.

Lampatern, Llan-Badarn-Uator in Cardiganshire, anciently an Episcopal See.

Leicester, Chester.

Lengria, Langres in France.

Lindesia, Lincolnshire.

Loegria, England.

Londonesia, it means no doubt Lodonesia, now Lothian in Scotland.

Lake Lumond, Lough-Lomond in Scotland.

M.

**MALVA**, a River in Africa, called by our modern Geographers Malvia, rising in Mount Atlas, and running through the Kingdom of Argiers into the Mediterranean Sea.

Malvernia, Malvern in Worcestershire.

Mauritania, Barbary in Africa.

Menevia, St. Davids in Pembrokeshire.

Mercia, one of the Kingdoms of the Saxon Heptarchy.

Mount of Michael, still called Mount St. Michael, on the Coast of Normandy.

Morines, the ancient Inhabitants of the Boullognois in France.

Mureif, probably Murray in Scotland.
The Explication of

N.

NAVUTGALLIM or Gallemborne, Walbrook in London.
Neuftria, Normandy in France.

P.

MOUNT Paladur, Shaftsbury in Dorsetshire.
Philenian Altars, two Altars erected between Carthage and Cyrenaica or Barca.
V. Sallust. de Bello Jugurthino.
Pictavia, Poictou, a Part of the Province of Orleans in France.
Portcefire, formerly a famous Haven near Portsmouth.

R.

REDONUM Rennes in France.
Rufcicada, some Geographers call it now Stora or Estora, in the Kingdom of Tunis in Africa.
Ruteni, the ancient Inhabitants of Robergue, a Part of the Province of Guienne in France; also the City of Rhodes in France.
Rutupi, by some supposed to be Richborough in Kent.

SALINAE,
Names of Places.

S.

SALINE, probably Salines in the Kingdom of Tripoli in Africa.
Senones, the ancient Inhabitants of the Senonois, a Part of the Province of Champagne in France.
Stanhenge, Stonehenge in Wiltshire.

T.

TERIVANA; Terouanne formerly a great City, now a small Village in the Netherlands.
Tintagol, Tindagel in Cornwall.
Trigeria, it is uncertain whether the Author means Tréguier in the Province of Britain in France.
Trinovantum, London.
Tyrrenian Sea, the Author can hardly be supposed to mean by it the Sea now so called upon the Coast of Italy. Some conjecture it ought to be read the Pyrenean Sea; at least it ought to be some Part of the Sea that lies between the Straits of Gibraltar and the Mouth of the Loire in France.

V.

VENEDOTIA, North Wales.
Verolam, an ancient Town now in Ruins near St. Albans in Hertfordshire.
WINNED, suppos’d to be the River Arc in Yorkshire.

Wisseants, the same I conjecture as the Author in some Places calls Gewissens; and these were perhaps the Wiccis, who inhabited Worcestershire, and some adjoining Counties.
THE INDEX.

A.

AARON a British Martyr in Diocletians Persecution. Book V. Chap. 5.

Adan King of the Scots in assisting the Saxons is killed by Cadwallo. XII. 9.

Adelstan the first King of the Angles that wore a Crown. XII. 19.

Æneas the Trojan, gains the Kingdom of Italy and marries Lavinia. I. 3.

Aganippus King of the Franks marries Cordeilla Daughter of King Leir. II. 11.

Agned M. by whom built. II. 7.

Alan King of Armorica consults old Prophecies about Cadwalladers Revelation. XII. 18.

'Alban, his Charity to his Confessor Amphibalus, and Martyrdom. V. 5.
### The INDEX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albanacla, Son of Brutus, killed by Humber</td>
<td>II. i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albania called so from him</td>
<td>II. i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albion, the ancient Name of Britain</td>
<td>I. 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alclud, by whom built</td>
<td>II. 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aldroen, King of Armorica, his Answer to Archbishop Guethelins Petition</td>
<td>VI. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alfred and Oidwald, begin an Insurrection against Oswin</td>
<td>XII. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alisantinam, King of Spain, is slain in a Battle with Arthur</td>
<td>X. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allectus, having killed Carausius, tyrannizes over the Britains</td>
<td>V. 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is routed in Battle and killed by Asclepiodotus</td>
<td>Ibid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambrius, Founder of a famous Monastery near Salisbury</td>
<td>VI. 15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anacletus, is taken Prisoner by Brutus</td>
<td>I. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is compelled by him to betray the Grecian Camp</td>
<td>I. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andragius, one of the ancient Kings of Britain</td>
<td>III. 19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Androgeus, is made Duke of Trinovantum by Caffibleuna</td>
<td>III. 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his Quarrel with Caffibleuna</td>
<td>IV. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his Letter to Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>Ibid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lies in Ambush for Caffibleuna</td>
<td>IV. 9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his Answer to Caffibleuna's Messengers</td>
<td>Ibid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obliges Cæsar to a Reconciliation with Caffibleuna</td>
<td>IV. 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes to Rome with Cæsar</td>
<td>IV. 11.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antigonus, Brother of Pandrasus, is taken Prisoner by Brutus</td>
<td>I. 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archflamens in Britain made Archbishops</td>
<td>IV. 19.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Arthgallo is depofed by the Britains: III. 17. his good Government after his Re
tfauration. Ibid.
Arthmail one of the ancient Kings of Bri
tain. III. 19.
Arthur is conceived in Adultery by his Mo
ther Igera being imposed upon, VIII. 19. succeeds Uther Pendragon in the
Kingdom and is Crowned by Dubricius.
IX. 1. his Munificence and other great Qualities. Ibid. defeats Colgrin and be
sieges him in Tork. Ibid. is advised by his
Council to raise the Siege. Ibid. sends for
Assistance to Hoel King of Armorica. IX. 2.
forces the Saxons to raise the Siege of
Lincoln. IX. 3. besieges them in the
Wood of Caledon, and makes them Tri
butaries. Ibid. executes their Hostages for
Breach of Treaty, and marches to Badon
against them. Ibid. his Speech to his Sol
diers before the Battle of Badon. Ibid.
A Description of his Armour. IX. 4. kills
with his own Hand 470 Men, and over
throws the Saxons. Ibid. marches into
Albania to relieve Hoel. IX. 5. after
thrice defeating the Scots and Picts, be
sieges them in the Lake Lumond. IX. 6.
repulses Guilamurius King of Ireland.
Ibid. pardon the Scots and Picts at the
Request of their Clergy. Ibid. relates the
wonderful Nature of some Ponds. IX. 7.
restores Tork to its ancient Beauty. IX. 8.

The I N D E X.
The INDEX.
disposes of several great Preferments. IX. 9. marries Guanhumara a Lady of a Roman Family. Ibid. reduces Ireland and the Provincial Islands. IX. 10. invites to his Court all Persons famed for Chivalry. IX. 11. subdues Norway and Dacia. Ibid. his Expedition into Gaul and great Success there. Ibid. besieges Follo in Paris and kills him in a single Combat. Ibid. reduces all Gaul, and divides it among his Princes. Ibid. summons his great Men from all Countries to a solemn Assembly at Legions. IX. 12. his Coronation and pompous Solemnity there described. IX. 13, 14. his Speech to his Princes upon the Romans demanding Tribute. IX. 16. his Answer to the Roman Ambassadors. IX. 20. commits to Modred and Queen Guanhumara the Government of Britain. X. 2. his Dream at Hamo's Port. Ibid. kills a Spanish Giant on M. Michael. X. 3. his Message to L. Tiberius. X. 4. marshals his Army for a general Battle with the Romans. X. 6. his Speech to his Soldiers before the Battle. X. 7. his great Exploits in this Battle and total Overthrow of the Romans. X. 11. gives Orders concerning the Burial of the Slain. X. 13. upon the News of Modred's Practices against him returns to Britain. XI. 1. his first Victory over Modred. Ibid. his second Victory and Pursuit of him to Cornwall.
The INDEX.

Cornwal. XI. 2. his third Victory. Ibid. he is mortally wounded and retires to the Isle of Avallon. Ibid. gives up the Crown to Constantine. Ibid.

Ascanius Son of THESEUS builds Alba upon the Tyber. I. 3.

Aschillius K. of Dacia slain in Battle XI. 2.

Asclepiodotus frees the Britains from the Roman Yoke. V. 4. is made K. of Britain. V. 5. is killed in Battle by Coel. V. 6.

Affaracus joins with Brutus against the Grecians. I. 3.

Affaracus Son of Ebraucus obtains the Kingdom of Germany. II. 8.

Arviragus by Policy gains a Victory of Claudius Cæsar. IV. 13. kills L. Hamo. Ibid. by Advice of his Council makes his Submission to Claudius. IV. 14. his Fondness for his Wife Genuissa Daughter of Claudius. IV. 15. revolt from the Romans. IV. 16. his Battle with Vespasian, and Reconciliation with him. Ibid. his Character and Death. Ibid.

Augustel is made by Arthur K. of Albania. IX. 9. his Speech to Arthur. IX. 18. is killed in Battle with Modred. XI. 1.

Augustin is sent to preach the Gospel to the Angles. XI. 12.

Aurelius Ambrosius and Uther Pendragon fearing the Cruelty of Vortegern fly into Armorica. VI. 8. Aurelius returns to Britain and is made King. VIII. 2. goes against Vortegern,
Vortegirn. Ibid. his Refentment to Eldol of Vortegirn's wicked Practices. Ibid. burns him shut up in a Tower. Ibid. his noble Character. VIII. 3. twice defeats Hengist and the Saxons. VIII. 5. pardons Oeta and Eofa upon their surrendering themselves. VIII. 8. his Care in repairing the Ruins made in Britain, and in restoring Things to their ancient State. VIII. 9. consults with Merlin about erecting a Monument for the massacred Britains. VIII. 10, 11. with great Solemnity sets up the Stones of the Giants Dance for their Monument. VIII. 12. is poisoned by the Treachery of Eopa a Saxon. VIII. 14. is buried by the British Clergy within the Giants Dance. VIII. 16.

BALDOULPH in his March to relieve Colgrin is routed by Cador Duke of Cornwall. IX. 1. by putting on a Disguise gets Access to Colgrin besieged in Torc. Ibid. is killed at the Battle of Badon. IX. 4. Bangor, its famous Church and Monastery. XI. 12.

Bassianus having killed his Brother Geta succeeds in the Kingdom. V. 2. is slain in Battle by the Treachery of the Picts. V. 3. Bedver is by Arthur made Governor of Neustria. IX. 11. performs the Office of Butler.
The INDEX.

- Arthurs Solemnity at Legions. IX. 13.
- is sent in Quest of a Spanish Giant. X. 3.
- is killed in the Battle by Boccus King of the Medes. X. 9.
- Belinus gains the Crown by Right of Inheritance. III. 1. seizes upon Northumberland. III. 2. routs his Brother Brennius in Battle. III. 3. makes Dacia tributary to him. III. 4. confirms the Molmutine Laws. III. 5. makes several High-Ways. Ibid. his Reconciliation with Brennius. III. 7. affists Brennius in the Conquest of Gaul. III. 8. makes the Romans Tributaries. III. 9. surprizes the Romans in their March with a great Slaughter. Ibid. affists Brennius in the taking of Rome. Ibid. his Return to Britain. III. 10. his publick Buildings. Ibid. his Death and Burial. Ibid.
- Belinus General of Caffibellauns Army. IV. 3.
- Bladud King of Britain builds Caerbadus, and makes the Baths there. II. 10. being a famous Magician he attempts to fly, but falls down dead. Ibid.
- Blederic Commander of the Britains killed in Battle by Edelfrid. XI. 13.
- Bleduno one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
- Blegabred King of Britain a famous Musician. III. 19.

D d Boccus
The INDEX.

Boccus King of the Medes having slain Bedver is killed by Hirelgas. X. 9.
Borellus Consul of the Cenomanni killed by Evander King of Syria. X. 5.
Boso's Gallant Behaviour against the Romans. X. 4. takes Petreius Cotta, a Roman Commander, Prisoner. Ibid.
Brennius quarrels with his Brother Belinus. III. 1. marries the King of Norway's Daughter. Ibid. invades Britain III. 3. is defeated by Belinus and flies into Gaul. Ibid. is made King of the Allobroges. III. 6. his Return to Britain and Reconciliation with Belinus. III. 7. assists Belinus in the Conquest of Gaul. III. 8. and in the taking of Rome. III. 9. his Tyranny in Italy. III. 10.
Britain a King of Demetia and Attendant on Caftibellaun. IV. 3.
Britain described I. 2. its Inhabitants. Ibid. when divided under the Power of five Kings. II. 16. its Grandeur in K. Arthurs Time. IX. 13. during a Famine and Pestilence lays desolate for eleven Years. XII. 16.
Britain destroy the Giants that first Inhabited this Island. I. 16. their Valour praised by
by Lucan. IV. 9. revolt from the Romans upon the Death of Lucius. V. 1. being distressed by the Picts are relieved by a Roman Legion. VI. 1. their Distress caused by the Folly of Maximian. VI. 2. they are most grievously infected by Guanius and Melga. VI. 3. their Letter to Agius a Roman Consul Ibid. being relieved by Constantine they make him King. VI. 5. are betray'd by the Saxons, and great Numbers of them massacred. VI. 15. make Aurelius Ambrosius King. VIII. 2. keep up the Custom of Troy at their publick Entertainments. IX. 13. their gallant Behaviour against the Romans. X. 4, 5. are upbraided for their Degeneracy by the Historian. XI. 9. retire in great Distress into Cornwall, Wales and Armorica. XI. 10. they lose the Kingdom for a long Time. XI. 11. being punished with Famine and Pestilence they fly into Armorica. XII. 15. the End of their Government in the Island. XII. 16. the Time of their Restauration foretold by an Angel. XII. 17. the Reason of their Name being changed into that of Welshmen. XII. 19.

Brocmail Commander of the Britains routed by Edelfrid. XI. 13.

Brutus by his Birth causes his Mothers Death. I. 3. undesignedly kills his Father in hunting. Ibid. his Banishment into Greece, D d 2 and

C

ADOR Duke of Cornwall by a sudden Assault defeats Baldulf. IX. 1. pursues the Saxons after the Battle of Badon, and forces them to surrender. IX. 5. his Speech to
to Arthur upon the Romans demanding Tribute. IX. 15.

Caduan being made King, by a Treaty with Edelfrid possessess all Britain on this Side the Humber. XII. 1.

Cadwallader after a peaceable Enjoyment of the Crown falls into a Fit of Sickness. XII. 14. his Lamentation in his Voyage to Armorica. XII. 15. is forbid by an Angel to return to Britain. XII. 17. goes to Rome to be confirmed, and there dies. XII. 18.


Julius Caesar's Speech concerning the Britains. IV. 1. his first Invasion of Britain and Defeat by Caffibellaun. IV. 3. his Encounter with Nennius. Ibid. his abject Behaviour to the Gauls. IV. 5. the Difficult of
The INDEX.

Androgeus D. of Trinovantum. Ibid. is by Reason of the Revolt of Androgeus defeated by Cæsar. IV. 9. his Meilage to Androgeus in his Distress. Ibid. his Reconciliation with Cæsar. Ibid.
Catellus, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Catigern and Horsus in an Encounter kill each other. VI. 13.
Cheldric brings over a vast Fleet from Germany. IX. 1. is killed by Cador. D. of Cornwall. IX. 5.
Cheldric a Saxon Leader assists Modred against Arthur. XI. 1. is killed in Battle with him. XI. 2.
Cherin one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Cheulphus General of the Morines repulsed by Brennius. III. 1.
Claudius Cæsar invades Britain. IV. 12. is defeated by Arviragus. IV. 13. besieges Winchester. IV. 14. is reconciled to Arviragus. Ibid. conquers the Orkney and other Islands. Ibid. builds Gloucester. IV. 15. returns to Rome. Ibid.
Cledaucus one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Cletonus, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Cligueillus K. of Britain, his good Character. III. 19.
Cloten K. of Cornwall. Father of Dunwallo Molmutius. II. 17.
The INDEX.

Coel makes Insurrection against Asclepiodotus. 5, 6. his Submission to Constantius and Death. Ibid.

Coillus one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Coillus K. of Britain his Amity with the Romans, and good Character. IV. 18.

Colgrin a Saxon Commander defeated by Arthur and besieged in York. IX. 1. killed at the Battle of Badon. IX. 4.

A Comet of wonderful Magnitude and Brightness appears at the Death of Aurelius Ambrosius. VIII. 14.

Conan kills Constantine, and succeeds to the Crown X. 5.

Conan Meriadoc being ready to fight Maximian, grants him Peace at the Instance of Caradoe. V. 10. his War with Maximian, and Reconciliation with him. V. 11. is made K. of Armorica by Maximian. V. 12. vanquishes the Gauls and Aquitans. V. 15.

Constans a Monk is by Vortegirn made K. of Britain. VI. 6. his Incapacity for Government makes him the Instrument of Vortegirn's Ambition. VI. 7. is by Vortegirn's Contrivance assassinated by some Pictish Soldiers. VI. 8.

Constantine the Great, K. of Britain, his noble Character. V. 6. is desired by the Romans to assist them against the Tyranny of Maxentius. V. 7. gains the Roman Empire. V. 8. sends Traherm to reduce Britain. Ibid.

Constantine
Confiantine the Armorican having routed the Enemies of the Britains is made King. VI. 5. is assassinated by a Piçt. Ibid. Constantine Arthur's Successor is disturbed by Modred's Sons. XI. 3. he puts them to Death in their Sanctuaries. XI. 4. is killed by Conan. Ibid. Constantius made King of Britain by the Marriage of Helena. V. 6. Convenna's Speech to her Son Brennus. III. 7. Cordeilla loses her Father Leirs Affection for her Sincerity. II. 11. is married to Aganippus K. of the Franks. Ibid. her great Kindness to her Father in his Distress. II. 12, 13. succeeds him in the Kingdom. II. 14. for Grief at the Loss of her Kingdom kills herself. II. 15. Corineus his Character. I. 12. kills Imbertus the Ambassador of Goffarius Pictus. Ibid. his great Bravery against the Aquitans. Ibid. kills Subardus and many others. I. 13. his Stratagem against the Gauls. I. 15. chooses Cornwall for his Share of the Island. I. 16. his Encounter with Goemagot a monstrous Giant. Ibid. his Resentment against Locrin for Breach of Covenant. II. 3. Cornish People so called from Corineus their Leader. I. 12. Cridious, K. of Albania and Attendant on Caffibellaun. IV. 3.
The INDEX.

Corcea mors, the Name of J. Casars Sword. IV. 4.
Cunedagius kills his Brother Margan, and gains the Monarchy of the whole Island. II. 15.

D.

DABUTIUS reproaches Merlin with her Birth. VI. 17.
Dacia made Tributary to Belinus. III. 4.
Danius one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 14.
David Arthurs Unkle, made Archbishop of Legions. IX. 15. his Death. XI. 3.
Diana's Answer to Brutus. I. 11.
Dianotus K. of Cornwal sends Ursula and her Virgins for Wives to the Armorican Britains. V. 16.
Dioclesian's Persecution of the Christians. V. 5.
Dinoot Abbot of Bangor, his Answer to Augustin the Apostle of the English. XI. 12. occasions great Troubles to the Britains by it. XI. 13.
Doldavius K. of Godland makes his Submission to Arthur. IX. 9.
Dubricius is made Archbishop of Legions. VIII. 12. at the Instance of the British Nobility Crowns Arthur. IX. 1. his Speech to the British Army before the Battle of Bandon. IX. 4. the Efficacy of his Prayers towards
towards curing the Sick. IX. 12. has the Ordering of Arthur's Solemnity at Legions. IX. 13. resigns his Archbishoprick and turns Hermit. IX. 15.

Dunwallo Molmutius kills Timner K. of Loegria. II. 17. by a Stratagem defeats the Kings of Cambria and Albania. Ibid. makes himself a Golden Crown, and reduces the Island again to a Monarchy. Ibid. institutes the famous Molmutine Laws. Ibid. Dunwanus sent with Faganus to preach the Christian Faith to the Britains. IV. 19.

A

N Eagle is said to have spoken at the Building of the Walls of Shaftsbury.

Ebraucus K. of Britain his Conquests in Gaul. II. 7. builds several Towns. Ibid. his twenty Sons and thirty Daughters. II. 8.

Edelfrid K. of Northumberland having routed the Britains kills two hundred Monks at Lecester. XI. 13. is in another Battle defeated and wounded by the Britains. Ibid. by a Treaty with Caduan poifes all Britain beyond the Humber. XII 1. divorces his Wife and marries another. Ibid.

Edwin is educated by Salomon K. of Armovrica. XII. 1. desires leave of Cadwallo to wear a Crown. XII. 1. upon his Refusal joins Battle with him and routs him.
XII. 4. is killed in the Battle of Hevedfeld. XII. 8.
Eldad Bishop of Gloucester buries the British Nobility massacred by the Saxons. VI. 15. advises the Britains to kill Hengist when taken Prisoner. VIII. 7. and to shew Mercy to Offa upon his surrendering himself, VIII. 8.
Eldadus one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Eldol D. of Gloucester, his noble Exploit against the Saxons upon their massacring the Britains. VI. 16. his Speech to Aurelius Ambrosius before the Battle with Hengist. VIII. 5. after a sharp Encounter with Hengist takes him Prisoner. VIII. 6. and after Consultation beheads him. VIII. 7.
Eldol one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Euetherinus (Pope) at the Request of Lucius, sends Faganus and Duwanus into Britain to preach the Christian Faith. IV. 19.
Elisaures named the Pious reigns the Crown to his deposed Brother Arthgalo. III. 17. is a second Time made K. of Britain, and then Imprisoned by his Brothers. III. 18. his Advancement to the Throne the third Time. Ibid.
Eliud one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Elsingius K. of Norway, his Daughter married to Brennius. III. 1.
Enniaunus K. of Britain deposed for Tyranny. III. 19.
Estrildis Concubine of Locrin, her great Beauty. II. 2. is with her Daughter Sabre drowned in the Severn by Gaendolena's Command. II. 5.
Evander. K. of Syria is killed in Battle by the Britains. X. 5.
Euchipus Nephew of Androgens kills Hireglues. IV. 8.
Evantes succeeds Augusel in the Kingdom of Albania. XI. 1.

F.
Faganus is sent with Duvenus to convert Britain to the Christian Faith. IV. 19.
Ferrex is killed by his Brother Porrex. II. 16.
Flamens in Britania made Bishops. IV. 19.
Fallo a Roman Tribune besieged in Paris by Arthur. IX. 11. he challenges Arthur to a single Combat, and is killed by him. Ibid.
Friday io called from the Saxon Goddess Frea. VI. 10.
Fulgenius one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Fulgenius carries on a War against Severus. V. 2. goes to Scythia to raise Forces. Ibid. is mortally wounded in a Battle with Severus. Ibid.
G

G A B I U S a Roman Consul taken Prisoner by Belinus and Brennius. III. 9.
Livius Gallus and the Romans besieged in London by the Britains, and killed without Quarter to any. V. 4.
Genuissa Daughter of Claudius married to Arviragus. IV. 15. procures a Reconciliation between Arviragus and Vespasian.
IV. 16.
Gerion the Augur that attended Brutus. I. 11.
St. German and Lupus restore the Christian Faith that had been corrupted in Britain. VI. 13.
Geruntius one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Geta Son of Severus killed by his Brother Bassianus. V. 2.
A Giant from Spain having stolen Helen is killed by Arthur. X. 3.
Gillumanius K. of Ireland is defeated by Uther Pendragon. VIII. 12. enters into Confederacy with Pascentius and invades Britain. VIII. 14. but is a Second Time defeated by Uther Pendragon. VIII. 16.
Gloucester by whom built and on what Occasion. IV. 15.
Godbold K. of the Orkneys killed at the Battle of Hevefeld. XII. 8.
The INDEX.

Goemagot a monstrous Giant killed in an Encounter with Corineus. I. 16.

Goffarius Pittus K. of Aquitain makes War against the Trojans. I. 12. is routed by them. I. 13. his Second and third Battle with them. I. 15.

Gombert K. of Norway. V. 18.

Gonorillas flattering Answer to her Father Leir. II. 11. her barbarous Ingratitude to him. II. 12.

Gorbogudo one of the ancient Kings of Britain. II. 16.

Gorhunian a very just King of Britain. III. 16.

Gorlois D. of Cornwall advises the Britains to fall upon the Saxon Camp by surprize. VIII. 18. upon Others falling in Love with his Wife retires from Court, and prepares for War. VIII. 19. is killed by Others-Men at the Siege of Dimilioc. VIII. 20.

Gormund K. of the Africans drives Careticus into Wales, and grievously nsefts Britain. XI. 8. gives Loegria to the Saxons. XI. 10.

Gratian Municeps forces Guanius and Melga to fly over to Ireland. V. 16. seizes the Crown of Britain, and is for his Tyranny murdered by the common People. VI. 1.

Guanhumara the Wife of Arthur. IX. 9. has in Conjunction with Modred the Government of Britain in Arthurs Absence. XI. 20.
20.  her wicked Marriage with Modred.

X. 13. upon Modred's Defeat retires into a Monastery. XI. 1.

Guanius K. of the Huns and Melga, their Cruelty to the Virgins that accompanied Ursula. V. 16. they invade and grievously oppress Britain. Ibid. are forced by Gratian Municeps to fly over to Ireland. Ibid. they a second Time oppress Britain, and are driven out by a Roman Legion. VI. 1. they a third Time most grievously oppress Britain. VI. 3.

Guendolauen' Wife of Locrin being divorced, makes War against him and kills him. II. 5. her Cruelty to Estrildis, Ibid.

Guerthaeth K. of Venedotia, an Attendant on Caffibellaun. IV. 3.

Guethelin Archbishop of London, his Speech to the Britains. VI. 2. desires Succours for the Britains of Aldroen K. of Armorica. VI. 4. his Expressions of Joy upon his Success. Ibid.


Guiderius refusing to pay Tribute to the Romans occasions the Invasion of Claudius Caesar. IV. 12. is killed in Battle by the Treachery of L. Hamo. IV. 13.

Guillumurius K. of Ireland attempting to relieve the Scots and Picts is repulsed by Arthur.
Arthur. IX. 6. is again Defeated by him and taken Prisoner. IX. 10.

Guitard, Commander of the Pittavians, is Defeated by Hoel. IX. 11. sustains the Britains against the Romans. X. 5.

Guitbelin one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 13.

Gursfasius K. of the Orkneys makes his Submission to Arthur. IX. 10.

Gurgintius, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Gurgint Brabtruc K. of Britain, his Character. III. 17. he reduces Dacia that had refused to pay him Tribute. Ibid. his Kindness to Partholoin and other Spaniards. III. 12.

Gurgulfius one of the ancient Kings of Britain. II. 16.

Hamo Commander of Claudius Caesar's Army besieges Porteous. IV. 12. treacherously Kills Guiderius. IV. 13. is killed by Arviragus at Hamo's Port, Ibid.

Hedelbert K. of Kent stirs up the Saxon Kings against the Britains. XI. 13.

Helena a most accomplished British Lady, Wife of Constantius and Mother of Constantine the Great. V. 6.

Helena Neice of Hoel is stolen away by a Spanish.
The INDEX.

nish Giant. X. 3. has a Mausoleum erected for her upon M. Michael. Ibid.

Heli K. of Britain Father of Lud, Caffibellaun and Nennisus. III. 20.

Hengist and Horsus arrive with the Saxons in Britain. VI. 10. Hengist gives Vortegirn an Account of the Occasion of their coming, and of the Religion of their Countrymen. Ibid. by a crafty Petition gets Leave of Vortegirn to build a Castle. VI. 11. in Consideration of giving him his Daughter Rowen, obtains the Province of Kent. Ibid. by his Authority over him invites over more and more Saxons, to the Terour of the Britains. VI. 13. brings from Germany a vast Army of them. VI. 15. by his Treachery causes a Maffacre of the Britains. Ibid. encourages his Men to stand a Battle with Aurelius Ambrosius. VIII. 4. being overthrown by him he flies to Caerconian, where he loses a second Battle, and is taken Prisoner by Eldol. VIII. 5, 6. is beheaded by Eldol. VIII. 7.

Henninus D. of Cornwall joins with Maclaunus to Depose Leir their Father in Law. II. 12.

Hider sustains the Britains when pursued by the Romans. X. 4.

Hirelgas Bedver's Nephew revenges his Death on Boccus K. of the Medes. X. 9.
The INDEX.

Hireglas Nephew of Cassibellaun killed by Evelinus. IV. 8.

Hoel K. of Armorica brings Forces to assist Arthur against the Saxons. IX. 2. by Arthur’s Command reduces Aquitain and Gascony. IX. 11. his Speech to Arthur upon the Romans demanding Tribute. IX. 17. Sustains the Britains when near vanquished by the Romans. X. 9.

Holdin K. of the Ruteni killed in Battle by the Romans. X. 9.

Horfus Brother of Hengist killed by Catigern in an Encounter. VI. 13.

Hudibras K. of Britain composes a civil Dissension, and builds several Towns. II. 9.

Humber K. of the Huns kills Albanaet. II. 1. is defeated by Locrin and drowned in the River that bears his Name. II. 2.

I.

Jago one of the ancient Kings of Britain. II. 16.

Idwallo a just K. of Britain. III. 19.


F f 2

Igerna
The INDEX.

Igerna a Wife of Gorlois, her Beauty captivates Uther Pendragon. VIII. 19. being deceived by the false shape he put on, she admits him to her Embraces. Ibid. Marries him after the Death of Gorlois. VIII. 20.

Ignoqe Daughter of Pandrasus is married to Brutus. II. 11. her sorrow at departing from Greece. Ibid.

Imbertus Ambassador of Goffarius Pictus is killed by Corineus. I. 12.

Inbaltus Commander of the Gauls killed in Battle with Maximian. V. 12.

Isembard joins with Gormund and renounces the Christian Faith to gain the Kingdom of Gaul. XI. 8.

Julius a British Martyr in Dioclesian’s Persecution. V. 5.

Ivor and Ini in vain attempt the Restoration of the Britains. XII. 19.

K.

KAERBADUS built by Bladud, its Baths and wonderful Fire. II. 9.

Kamber Son of Brutus gives Name to Cambria. II. 1.

Kimarus, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 14.

Kinmarctts, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. II. 16.

Kinocus
Kinocus is made Archbishop of Legions.

Kymbelinus K. of Britain maintains Friendship with the Romans. IV. 11. in his Time our Blessed Saviour was Born. Ibid.

LABIENVS a Roman Tribune killed by Nennius. IV. 3.

Legions made an Archiepiscopal See. IV. 19. the great Magnificence of that City. IX. 12. it is chosen by Arthur for the Place of his great Solemnity. Ibid.

Leil a good K. of Britain builds Kaerleil.

II. 9.

Leir K. of Britain builds Kaerleir. II. 11. having no Male Issue he divides his Kingdom between his two Eldest Daughters. Ibid. his Refentment of his Daughter Cordeilla's plain Dealing. Ibid. is depos'd by his two Sons in Law, and ungratefully used by his Eldest Daughters. II. 12. his grievous Distress and Complaint. Ibid. he is honourably received by Cordeilla. II. 13. regains his Kingdom. II. 14.

Marius Lepidus, a Roman Senator killed in Battle with Arthur. X. 10.

Linligwan, the Wonders of that Pond. IX. 6.
Loerin Eldest Son of Brutus gives Name to
Loegria. II. 1. defeats Humber K. of the
Huns. II. 2. falls in Love with Estrildis
his Beautiful Captive. Ibid. Marries Guen-
dolana, but carries on a private Amour
with Estrildis. II. 4. is killed in Battle
with Guendolana. I. 5.
London so called from Lud by whom it was
Beautified. III. 20. is made an Archiepiscopal See. IV. 19.
Lot commands the British Army against the
Saxons with various Success. VIII. 21. is
made Consul of Londonesia by Arthur.
IX. 9. is advanced by him to the King-
dom of Norway. IX. 11.
Lucius the first K. of Britain that embraced
the Christian Faith IV. 19. is a Benefactor
to Churches. V. 1.
Lucius Tiberius's Letter to Arthur. IX. 15.
Summons all the Eastern Kings to his
Assistance against Arthur. X. 1. for Fear
of Arthur enters Lengria with his Army.
X. 6. his Speech to his Commanders be-
fore his Battle with Arthur. X. 8. draws
out his Army in Order of Battle. Ibid.
his Encounter with Walgan. X. 11. is
slain in a great Battle with Arthur, by an
unknown Hand. Ibid.
Lud Beautifier of London, and Builder of other
Cities, is Buried at Ludgate. III. 20.
Lumond, the Wonders of that Lake.
IX. 6.
The INDEX.

Lupus Bishop of Troyes restores the Purity of Faith when corrupted in Britain. VI. 13.

M.

MADDA N is advanced to the Throne by his Mother Guendolana. II. 6.
Magicians foretell the Birth and Success of Brutus. I. 3. advise Vortegirn to build a Tower for his Security. VI. 17.
Maglaunus Duke of Cornwal assists in depo- sing Leir his Father in Law. II. 12.
Malgo a K. of Britain of great accomplish- ments, but guilty of Sodomy. XI. 7.
Malim is Treacherously Murdered by his Brother Menpricius. II. 6.
Marcellus Mutius killed by Walgan. X. 4.
Margadud K. of Demetia, his Advice to Cadwaltlo. XII. 12.
Margan and Cunedagus take Cordeilla Prisoner. II. 5. they divide the Kingdom be- tween them. Ibid. Margan is routed and killed by Cunedagus. Ibid.
Margan K. of Britain, his good Reign. III. 19.
Marius K. of Britain defeats and kills Ro- dric K. of the Piats. IV. 17. his good Character. Ibid.
Martia Queen of Britain, Author of the Martian Law. III. 13.

Maugantius
The INDEX.

Maugantius a Philosopher, his Speech to Vortegirn concerning Merlin's Birth. VI. 18.

Mauritius is sent to Maximian to offer him the Kingdom. V. 9. his Advice to Maximian when in Fear of the Britains, V. 10. his Apology for Mauritius to Conan Meriadoc. Ibid.

Maxentius's Tyranny over the Romans. V. 7.

Maximian is invited to take the Crown of Britain. V. 9. his Policy to prevent a War with the Britains. V. 10. is made K. of Britain. V. 11. his War and Reconciliation with Conan Meriadoc. Ibid. conquers Armorica and gives it to Conan. V. 12. subdues Gaul and Germany and gains the Empire from Gratian and Valentinian. V. 14. is killed at Rome by Gratian's Friends. V. 16.

Maximianus Herculius a Persecutor of the Christians in Britain. V. 5.

Mempricius advises the Trojans to depart from Greece. I. 10.

Mempricius Murders his Brother Malim and obtains the Government. II. 6. his Tyrannical Reign and untimely End. Ibid.

Merianus one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Merlin's wonderful Birth. VI. 17, 18. his Conference with Vortegirn and his Magicians.
gicians. VI. 18. he discovers the Reason why Vortegirn's Tower would not stand. *Ibid.* his Prophecy. VII. 3, 4. he foretells Vortegirn his sad Fate. VIII. 1. his Discourse with Aurelius Ambrosius concerning the Giants Dance in Ireland. VIII. 10, 11. by his wonderful Skill in Mechanicks, he removes and brings to Britain the Giants Dance. VIII. 12. prognosticates Uther's Success by the Appearance of a Comet. VIII. 15. transforms Uther Pendragon into the Shape of Gorlois to gain him Access to Igerne. VIII. 19.

Micipsa K. of Babylon killed in Battle with Arthur. X. 9.

Quintus Milvius a Roman Senator killed in Battle with Arthur. X. 9.

Modred Arthur's Nephew is made Governor of Britain by him, during his Wars with the Romans. IX. 20. he usurps the Crown and marries Guanhuma-ra in Arthur's Absence. X. 13. being defeated by Arthur he flies to Winchester. XI. 1. he is a second Time defeated by him and flies into Cornwall. XI. 2. loses a third Battle and is killed *Ibid.*

Molmutine Laws first instituted by Dunwal-lo Molmutius. II. 17. are revived by Belinus. III. 5. are translated into English by K. Alfred. *Ibid.*
The INDEX.

Morvid Conful of Gloucester, his great Service to Arthur towards the total Defeat of the Romans. X. 11.
Morvidus a most cruel Tyrant of Britain is devoured by a Monster. III. 15.

N.

Nennius quarrels with Lud for changing the Name of Trinovantum. I. 17. encounters with J. Cesar and wrefts his Sword from him. IV. 3. kills Labienus and many others. Ibid. his Death and pompous Funeral. IV. 4.

O.

Octa Son of Hengist, after his Fathers Defeat retires to York. VIII. 6. being besieged there he surrenders himself to the Mercy of Aurelius. VIII. 8. raises fresh Disturbances and besieges York, where he gains a Victory over the Britains. VIII. 18. is afterwards defeated by a Stratagem of Uther Pendragon, and taken Prisoner. Ibid. He and Eosa escaping out of Prison, they renew the War with the Britains. VIII. 21. by their Contempt of the Britains they let them gain great Advantages over them. VIII. 23. are at last totally defeated and killed by Uther Pendragon. Ibid.

O. Tavius
The INDEX.

Octavius rebels against the Roman Proconsuls, and gains the Kingdom. V. 8. his War with Trahern. Ibid. consults about his Successor in the Kingdom. V. 9. bestrays his Kingdom and Daughter on Maximian. V. 11.

Oemus, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Olbrict K. of Norway killed in Battle with Modred. XI. 2.

Ofric K. of Northumberland killed in Battle with Cadwallo. XII. 9.

Oswald K. of Northumberland routs Peanda at the second Battle of Hevesfeld. XII. 10. but is afterwards killed by him in a Battle with Cadwallo. Ibid.

Osuin Successor of Oswald makes his Submission to Cadwallo. XII. 11. kills Peanda in Battle. XII. 13.

PANDRASUS K. of Greece is by Surprize routed by Brutus. I. 5. besieges Sparatinum. I. 6. is taken Prisoner by Brutus. I. 5. his Speech to the Trojans. I. 11. Furnishes them with Necessaries for their Voyage, and is set at Liberty. Ibid.

Partholoim a Spaniard by Leave of Gurgiunt Brabtruc settles in Ireland III. 12.
Pacentius Son of Vortegirn brings in the Saxons and is defeated. VIII. 13. enters into Alliance with Gillomanius K. of Ireland, and again infects Britain. VIII. 14. encourages Epia to Poison Aurelius Ambrosius. Ibid. is routed by Uther Pendragon and killed. VIII. 16.

St. Patrick Founder of an Abbey at Menevia. XI. 3.

Peanda K. of the Mercians besieges Exeter. XII. 7. being routed by Cadwallo he becomes his Auxiliary. XII. 8. is defeated by Osvald in the Battle of Hevefeld, but kills him in another Battle. XII. 10. endeavours to incense Cadwallo against Oswin. XII. 11. is Slain in Battle by Oswin.

XII. 13.

Pelagian Heresy destroy'd in Britain by the Preaching and Miracles of German and Lupus. VI. 13.

Pellitus a Southfayer gives Edwin Notice of Cadwallo's Attempts against him. XII. 4. is killed by Brian in the Habit of a Beggar. XII. 7.

Peredure and Vigenius depose Elidure, and divide the Kingdom between them. III. 13. by the Death of Vigenius, Peredure gains the whole Kingdom. Ibid.

Petreius Cotta forces the Britains to retreat when in Pursuit of the Romans. X. 4. is taken Prisoner by Boso. Ibid.
The INDEX.

Picts by Permission of Marius inhabit Albania. IV. 17. their Treachery to Baf- sianus. V. 3. they endeavour to revenge the Injury of their Countrymen on Vortegern. VI. 9. they are defeated by him. VI. 10.

Pir one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Polytetes K. of Bithynia killed in Battle by Arthur's own Hand. X. 11.

Porrex K. of Britain procures Aid of Suard and kills his Brother Ferrex. II. 16. is tore to Pieces by his Mother Widen. Ibid.

Porrex, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Porfena a Roman Consul killed in Battle with Belinus and Brennius. III. 9.

Princes, their Names that attended at Arthur's Solemnity at Legions. IX. 12.

Priven, the Name of Arthur's Shield. IX. 4.

Pyramus Arthur's Chaplain made Archbishop of York. IX. 8.

Q:

C. Quintilianus for reflecting on the Britains is killed by Walgan. X. 4.
Rederchius, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Redion, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
Redonum, taken by Maximian. V. 13.
Regan's flattering Answer to her Father Leir. II. 11. her Barbarous Ingratitude to him. II. 12.
Riculf K. of Norway defeated and slain by Arthur. IX. 11.
Ritho the Giant, a ridiculous Story of his Encounter with Arthur. X. 3.
Rivallo K. of Britain, a great Mortality happened in his Reign. II. 16.
Rodric K. of the Picts invades Britain, and is defeated and killed by Marius. IV. 17.
Romans pay Tribute to Belinus and Brennius. III. 9. are twice defeated by them. Ibid. take their Farewel of the Britains. VI. 2. after a total Overthrow by Arthur, surrender themselves for Slaves. X. 12.
Rome taken by Belinus and Brennius. III. 9.
Ron, the Name of Arthur's Lance. IX. 4.
Rowen Daughter of Hengist, having captivated Vortegirn with her Beauty, is married to him. VI. 12. poisons Vortimer her Son.
The INDEX.

Son in Law. VI. 14. sends Intelligence to her Father of the Designs of the Britains VI. 15.

Rudaucus, K. of Kambria killed in Battle by the Policy of Dunwallo Molmuts. II. 17.

Runno one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

S

SABRE Daughter of Efrildis being thrown into the Severn gives Name to that River. II. 5.

Salomon K. of Armorica, his Speech to Cadwallo. XII. 5.

Samuilpenissel, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.

Sanxo made Archbishop of York. VIII. 12.

Saxons, their first Arrival in Britain and Reception by Vortegirn. VI. 10. they assist him in the Conquest of his Enemies. Ibid. more of them come over upon Vortegirn's Invitation. VI. 12, 13. after Loss of four Battles they are driven back by Vortimer into Germany. VI. 13. their Massacre of the Britains. VI. 15. they seize the Fortifications in Britain. VI. 16. retire beyond the Humber for Fear of Aurelius Ambrosius. VIII. 3. Treacherously Poison Uther Pendragon and many others. VIII. 24. are reduced to b.
be Tributaries to Arthur. IX. 3. break Treaty with him, and cruelly infest the Britains. Ibid. are overthrown by Arthur at Badon. IX. 4. are defeated by Wortiporius. XI. 6. invite over Gormund K. of the Africans against the Britains. XI. 8. gain the Possession of Loegria. XI. 10. posses themselves of the Island when it was deserted by the Britains. XII. 16. their full Establishment in the Island. XII. 10.

Scæva Son of Androgeus sent Hostage to J. Cæsar. IV. 9.
Seginus D. of the Allobroges, his Kindness to Brennius. III. 6.
Sertorius K. of Libya killed by Arthur’s own Hand. X. 11.
Severus is sent to reduce Britain under the Roman Power. V. 2. his War with Fulgenius. Ibid. builds a Wall between Deira and Albania. Ibid. is killed in Battle with Fulgenius. Ibid.
Sisilius, three of this Name Kings of Britain. II. 16. III. 14. III. 19.
Sparatinum a Town in Greece besieged by Pandrasus. I. 6.
Staterius K. of Albania killed in Battle by the Policy of Dunwallo Molanitus. II. 17.
Suard K. of the Franks assists Porrex against his Brother Ferrex. II. 18.
The INDEX.

Sylvius Father of Brutus marries a Neice of Lavinia. I. 3. is accidentally Slain by Brutus in hunting. Ibid.
Syrens Surround the Trojan Ships. I. 12.

T

TENVANTIUS made D. of Cornwall by Cassibellum. III. 20. Succeeds Cassibellum in the Kingdom. IV. 11.
Thong-Castle in Lincolnshire, whence so called. VI. 11.
Tintagol in Cornwall, the great Strength of that Place: VIII. 19.
Totnes: the Place of Brutus's Arrival. I. 15.
Tours in France built by Brutus. I. 14.
whence so called. I. 15.
Trahern Uncle of Helena sent by Constantine to reduce Octavius. V. 8. is killed by a Conspiracy. Ibid.
Tremoimus Archbishop of Legions recommends Merlin to Aurelius Ambrosius: VIII. 16.
Triers made the Imperial Seat of Maximian. V. 14.
Trinovantium, the ancient Name of London, built by Brutus. I. 17.
**The INDEX.**

Turonus, Nephew of Brutus, kills in one Day six hundred Men with his own Hand. I. 15.

### V.

**VENEDOTIANS** make a general Slaughter of the Romans in London. V. 4.

Vespasian is sent to Britain against Arviragus. IV. 16. his Reconciliation with him. Ibid.

Vigenius and Peredure imprison their Brother Elidure, and divide the Kingdom between them. III. 17.

Ulfin of Ricaradoch's Advice to Uther Pendragon upon his Love to Igerne. VIII. 19.

Vortegern promotes Constans the Monk to be K. of Britain. VI. 6. his Management of him when King. VI. 7. with a Treasonable Design invites some Picts into his Service. Ibid. his crafty Speech to incense them against Constans. Ibid. is suspected to be the Contriver of his Assassination. VI. 8. upon the Murder of Constans he usurps the Crown, and is distressed with Fears on every Side. VI. 9. his Discourse with Hengist and the Saxons at their first Landing. VI. 10. defeats the Picts by
by the Assistance of the Saxons. Ibid.

after a Conference with Hengist gives him Leave to build a Castle. VI. 11.

being entertained at a Banquet by Hengist he falls in Love with his Daughter Rowen. VI. 12. displeases his Sons and Nobility by Marrying her. Ibid.

for adhering too much to the Saxons is deferred by the Britains. VI. 15. being restored again to his Kingdom he invites Hengist and the Saxons to return to Britain. VI. 15. is in a Treaty with Hengist betray'd and taken Prisoner. Ibid. retires into Cambria. VI. 16. by the Advice of Magicians builds a Tower for his Defence. VI. 17. discourses with Merlin's Mother concerning the Birth of her Son. VI. 18. enquires of Merlin the Time of his own Death. VIII. 1. is burnt in a Tower by Aurelius Ambrosius.

Vortimer. Son of Vortegirn gains four Victories of the Saxons, and forces them back to Germany. VI. 13. is Poisoned by his Stepmother Rowen. VI. 14. his Magnanimity at his Death. Ibid.

Urian is honoured by Arthur with the Sceptre of Mureis. IX. 9.

Urianus, one of the ancient Kings of Britain. III. 19.
**INDEX**

Ursula and the Virgins with her, in their Voyage to Armorica, are all Drowned, Murdered, or made Slaves. V.

Other Pendragon routs Gillomanius and brings to Britain the Giants Dance. VIII. 12. gains a complete Victory over Gillomanius and Pascentius. VIII. 16. is advanced to the Kingdom. VIII. 17. the Reason of his being Surnamed Pendragon. Ibid. after being defeated by Oeta and Eosa, he gains a Victory of them by surprizing their Camp. VIII. 18. his Severe Administration of Justice among the Scots.

VIII. 19. he summons his Nobility to a Festival at London, where he falls in Love with Igerne. Ibid. his Renentment at Gorlois her Husband, and Invasion of his Provinces. Ibid. by Merlin's magical Operations he is transformed into the Shape of Gorlois, and enjoys Igerne. Ibid. resumes his former Shape and returns to his Army. VIII. 20. Marries Igerne by whom he has Arthur. Ibid. falls into a lingering Distemper. VIII. 21. reproves his Nobility for their Pride and Cowardice. VIII. 22. is carried in a Horse-Litter to fight the Saxons. VIII. 23. besieges them in Verolam. Ibid. entire-
The INDEX.

J. defeats them and kills Offa and Eofa. Ibid. dies upon drinking Spring-Water Poisoned by the Saxons. VIII. 24.

Vulsteius Catellus a Roman Commander killed in Battle by the Britains. X. 5.

W.

WALGAN Arthur's Nephew by killing C. Quintilianus occasions a Skirmish between the Britains and Romans. X. 4. kills Marcellus Mutius. Ibid. his noble Exploits against the Romans. X. 9, 10. his Encounter with Lucius Tiberius. X. 11. is slain in Battle with Modred. XI. 1.

A Wall built between Deira and Alba-nia for the Defence of the Britains. VI. 1.

Walter Archdeacon of Oxford desires Jeffrey of Monmouth to translate the British History. I. 1. brought over this History from Armorica. XII. 20.

Wednesday, so called from the Saxon God Woden. VI. 10.

Westmarland whence so called. IV. 17.

Widen tears to Pieces her Son Porrex. II. 16.

Wulfred K. of the Mercians by Cadwallo's Command makes Peace with Oswin. XII. 13.

Wor-
The INDEX.

Wortiporius K. of Britain conquers the Saxons. XI. 6.

Y.

YMNER K. of Loegria killed in Battle by Dunwallo Molmutius. II. 17.

York is made an Archiepiscopal See. IV. 19.
Errata.

In the Preface.

PAGE VIII. line 26. read decisively. p. XXIII. l. 9.
p. LXXIX. l. 24. reasonably.

In the History.

p. 25. l. 9. to the Philenean. p. 121. l. 2. Claudius.
p. 127. l. 22. Receipt. p. 175. l. 1. for was r. were.
l. 29. marshalling. p. 272. l. 8. self without the. p. 301.
Pellius. p. 401. l. ult. Princes, I have.